

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

19579.   a

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

GIRALDI CAMBRENSIS

OPERA.

EDITED

BY

JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A.,

RECTOR OF BARNBURGH, YORKSHIRE.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

VOL. VI.

LONDON:

LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1868.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

GIRALDI CAMBRENSIS

ITINERARIUM KAMBRIÆ,

ET

DESCRIPTIO KAMBRIÆ.

EDITED

BY

JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A.,

RECTOR OF BARNBURGH, YORKSHIRE.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1868.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.

PREFACE

PART I.

MANUSCRIPTS.

§ (1). Manuscripts of the Itinerary.

Of the Welsh treatises of Giraldus, printed in the present volume, there are several manuscripts; but not nearly so many as of the Irish treatises of vol. v. A large number of the manuscripts, moreover, are late, and some of these very worthless. In the case of the *Descriptio Kambriæ*, indeed, I have found only one manuscript, fortunately a very correct and valuable one, written anywhere near Giraldus's time. In describing the manuscripts which I have used, I shall follow the plan which I adopted in my Preface to vol. v., and shall place them, not according to their date or value, but according to the several editions of these Welsh treatises issued by our author.

Three editions of the Itinerary.

The existing manuscripts of the *Itinerarium* give us three very distinct editions. I am inclined to think that there may have been at least one more; but, if so, no copy of it has survived to us, so far as I have been able to ascertain. I shall always, for convenience sake, speak of the first, second, and third editions without hesitation, though, perhaps, one or more other editions of the treatise may

have been issued by Giraldus, and moreover may still exist, though I have not succeeded in finding any manuscripts of them.

MSS. (R.), (B.), (F.)

Manuscripts of first edition.

The first edition of the Itinerary is given in the two excellent early manuscripts, Bib. Reg. 13 B. viii. of the British Museum, and Rawlinson B. 188 of the Bodleian Library, (R.) and (B.) of my notation; and again in the later manuscript Ff. 1, 27, of the University Library, Cambridge, (F.) of my notation, which is but a mere very accurate transcript of the far earlier manuscript (R.). These three manuscripts, as containing copies of the Irish treatises of Giraldus as well, have been sufficiently described in my

Vol. v. Preface, xx–xxii.

Preface to vol. v., and I need not here repeat what I there said. I may remark, however, that manuscript (B.), and (R.) without its marginal additions, which give us the third edition of the *Topographia Hibernica*, and

Ibid. xxxii.

the first of the *Expugnatio*, give us also the first edition of this *Itinerarium Kambriæ*. The original, therefore, from which these manuscripts were derived,—for I do not suppose that either of these manuscripts, early though they be, both written in much likelihood during Giraldus's lifetime, has any claim to be looked upon as Giraldus's autograph,—was probably written at the time of the first appearance of the Itinerary of Wales, or soon after, and some time after the first appearance of the Irish Topography in 1188. But there is no necessity for supposing that any long time must have elapsed after 1188. Giraldus was very proud of his Irish Topography, and was given continually to revise and add to it, and this especially, we may well suppose, while the subject was still fresh and warm with him; and the third edition of it may well have appeared within two or three years after the first. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* of these manuscripts gives no hint as to the probable date of their original, except that this cannot have

Ibid. lviii.

been written before the summer of 1189. This treatise

first appeared at that time, but no new edition was issued until about twenty years after.

As I shall have to say before long, it seems that the first edition of the Itinerary, as here given us, must have appeared in the spring or summer of 1191: and at this time, probably, or soon after, the original was written, from which the manuscript volumes (R.) and (B.) were copied. *Infra*, xxxiii, &c.

In the Irish treatises in (R.) there are large additions in the margin, in an early hand not much later than that of the text, if not in the hand of the text itself. But it has no such additions to the text of the Itinerary of Wales. Vol. v. Preface, xxii, xxxii.

I have seldom thought it necessary to record the readings of (F.). As with the Irish treatises, it is certainly here also a direct and faithful copy of the earlier manuscript (R.). I collated this treatise in it carefully, in large part, if not wholly, before I set to work on (R.) and (B.); but it has seemed to me perfectly unnecessary to be always repeating (F.) after (R.). Where (F.) is not recorded, as it generally is not, in the various readings at the feet of the pages, its reading is the same as that of (R.) Ibid. xxii, &c.

Manuscript of the second edition of the Itinerary; Harleian, 359.

MS. (Hc.)

Of the second edition of the Itinerary, which is dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln, and was probably written, as we shall see, about 1197, I have found no early manuscript. But a copy of it is preserved to us in a sixteenth century folio volume amongst the Harleian manuscripts of the British Museum (Harleian, 359). This is a paper volume of 216 leaves, containing the Irish and Welsh treatises of Giraldus, with two or three other small additional articles.[1] These are in several *Infra*, xxxvii.

[1] Viz., on ff. 1–8, an imperfect and strangely dislocated copy of the *Descriptio Kambriæ*; ff. 9, 10, extracts from the same; ff. 10 *b*–14, De successione episcoporum, &c., viz., Bernardi et David secund (Ex libro quodam veteri in quo continentur aliqua scripta Gyraldi

different hands, but none earlier than the latter half of the sixteenth century. The copy of the Itinerary is carefully written, with far fewer blunders than usual in sixteenth century transcripts of the works of earlier writers. But its great value lies not so much in the verbal readings it may give us, as in its telling us what were the additions and alterations made in this second edition of the treatise, and what also, by their absence here, were the further additions and alterations in the third edition.

MS. (T.) The prefaces to this treatise, which are contained in the *Symbolum Electorum* (Trin. Coll. Camb. R. 7, 11), were taken from a copy of this second edition, as is proved by the addresses to bishop Hugh of Lincoln.[1]

Additions in this second edition. The additions which Giraldus inserted in this second edition are many, and of considerable amount. The more noteworthy of them are as follows. The first preface,[2] *infra* 3, n. 1. A section about the canons of St. David's trying to persuade prince Rhys to forbid archbishop Baldwin's progress through South Wales, 15, n. 2. Five sections describing certain marvels in Elvael, Brecheiniog, &c., 18, n. 1. A section about William de Braose's piety, 22, n. 7. Two sections describing prodigies in Brecheiniog, 28, n. 4. A section describing marvels of Brecknock Mere, 35, n. 3. A section on the murderous excesses in Brecheiniog, 36, n. 6. A section about the healthy site of Llantoni abbey, 38, n. 2. More than half a chapter,

---

Cambrensis, et nunc in custodia magistri Price de Wallia); Retractationes, &c. (Ex quodam vetusto libro Jo. Price, post Descriptionem Cambriæ); ff. 15–67, *Expugnatio Hibernica*; ff. 68–124, *Topographia Hibernica*; and on ff. 126–216, the *Itinerarium Kambriæ*.

[1] See *infra*, 3, n. 1; 7, n. 3; and 13, n. 2.

[2] A large portion, however, of this Preface is added at the end of MS. (B.) of the first edition, with a dedication to William Longchamp, bishop of Ely, which would probably date in the spring or summer of 1191. Of this I shall have to say more, in the history of this treatise. See *infra*, xxxv.

mainly about a prophetic Welshman at Caerleon, and his familiar intercourse with evil spirits, 57, n. 1. Two sections, one a very long one, describing a marvellous visitation to Henry II. at Cardiff, 64, n. 2. Two sections on the nature of dogs, 71, n. 5. A section relating a witticism of one of archbishop Baldwin's attendant monks, 74, n. 4. Three sections giving instances of divination by the blade-bone of a shoulder of mutton, 88, n. 1. A long section about the son of an incubus demon, 96, n. 3. Two sections relating events about prince Rhys and his sons and Nevern castle, which took place in 1191–1194; 111, n. 3, 112, n. 3 and 4. Four sections about beavers, 116, n. 3. Half a chapter in which an event is related that occurred in 1194, 134, n. 1 and 9. Two sections about one-eyed mullets in Scotland and the fabulous eagle of Snowdon, 136, n. 1. A section about a handless clever sempstress at Chester, 141, n. 4. Greater part of a long section, about Henry II.'s expedition into Powys in 1165, 143, n. 7.

Of all these additions there is only one, the second, about the endeavour of the canons of St. David's to stop archbishop Baldwin's progress, that has any real bearing whatever upon the subject of this treatise. Many of them would not have been out of place in the *Descriptio Kambriæ;* but all, with that one exception,—and the same is true of two or three other instances which I have not recounted above,—are unworthy additions to this Itinerary of archbishop Baldwin. I had to say of the Irish Topography, that almost all that was of any value whatever, as regarded Ireland, was comprised in the short first edition of that treatise; and I may say the same of this Welsh treatise. The first edition was pretty well confined to the Itinerary, so far as Giraldus could keep his pen from extraneous matter; but the additions of this second edition are nearly all foreign to his subject, have nothing whatever to do with archbishop Baldwin's progress through Wales.

Vol. v. Preface, xiii.

Omission in this second edition.

There is a considerable omission in this second edition, of matter about a very famous man of those days, William de Braose, that is well worth noting. In the first edition Giraldus had described the treacherous massacre—the "detestanda "proditio" he calls it—of certain chieftains of Gwent, in the year 1175, in William de Braose's castle of Abergavenni, after having been gathered thither by him for pretended purposes of peace, with all full solemn pledges of security.[1] He further describes the disgrace with Henry II., and other misfortunes, which fell upon William de Braose in consequence, asserting positively, however, all the while, that he took no part in either planning or executing this massacre, and that his only guilt lay in his most unwillingly and sorrowfully, under strong compulsion,[2] allowing it to be perpetrated in his castle.[3] In the second edition all this almost wholly disappears. Giraldus now just mentions the enormous excess and bloody slaughter at Abergavenni castle, of which Henry II. was the author, and Ralph Poer the contriver; but deems it better to pass it over in silence, lest wicked men should follow the example;[4] and afterwards has two or three lines about William de Braose's guiltlessness in the matter, except in his not preventing the execution of it.[5]

Giraldus was wise in suppressing anything at all likely to give offence to William de Braose. With such a man as an enemy at Brecknock castle, for there William de Braose lorded it also, his residence at Llanduw would soon have been far too hot for him. But fear of giving offence, to however great a man, was not always a ruling motive of Giraldus's pen; gratitude, probably, led much

---

[1] *Infra*, 49, n. 2.

[2] Giraldus's words are: "Cum "lacrimis tamen, dolore maximo, "et anxietate, violenter ad hoc "compulsus, in castro suo id fieri "vix tandem et valde invitus ad-"misit." *Infra*, 51, n. 3.

[3] *Infra*, 51, n. 3; and 53, n. 1.

[4] *Infra*, 50, ll. 2–7.

[5] *Infra*, 53, n. 1.

to his endeavour to clear one, who, however treacherous a murderer he may have been, was to him a kind and powerful friend, from the guilt of so atrocious a massacre. He was befriended and supported, and belauded to his own vain heart's content, by William de Braose,[1] and by his excellent wife, Maud de St. Valery, the "mulier "mulierum perpaucarum," whom he so loudly extols.[2] And Giraldus was not the man not to belaud in return; and he was one who could easily persuade himself, at any rate could unscrupulously try his best to persuade others, that so great a friend of his could not possibly be guilty of so great a crime, whatever might be the universal belief, and certain proofs to the contrary.

In the third edition, however, of this treatise, published after the death of William de Braose, Giraldus very considerably modifies the former positive assertion of his guiltlessness in this Abergavenni massacre. Instead of the "non auctor, *nec executor*, sed executionis "non impeditor," of the first and second editions, we now have "non auctor, *sed vel executor*, vel executionis "non impeditor."[3] We may suppose, without much uncharitableness, that Giraldus was well assured, all the while, of William de Braose's active part in this massacre, though he chose to insist otherwise so long as William de Braose was alive.

Manuscripts of the third edition of the Itinerary. 1st, Domitian A. 1.

Of the third edition of the Itinerary MS. (D.) we have a most valuable copy in the manuscript quarto volume, Domitian A. 1, of the British Museum. This volume contains the following treatises of Giraldus, viz., *Itinerarium Kambriæ*, ff. 56–111; *Descriptio Kambriæ*, ff. 111 *b*–135 *b*; *Retractationes*, ff. 135 *b*–136 *b*;

---

[1] At least so we may gather, from what Giraldus says elsewhere. See the *De Invectionibus*, vol. iii. 88–93.

[2] *Infra*, 23; and vol. iii. 91.

[3] *Infra*, 53, l. 5; and note 1.

and *Cathalogus Librorum*,[1] ff. 136 *b*–137 *b*. These treatises are on vellum, in single columns of twenty-nine lines, and all in the same hand of about the second quarter of the thirteenth century. The writing is good and correct. There is but little ornamentation.

The first fifty-five leaves of this volume are occupied by treatises of Isidore and others, in a different but equally early, or rather still earlier hand or hands. At the foot of f. 2 is the following presentation note:— "Karissimo amico suo et domino A., Dei gratia abbati "Sancti Aug. Cant."[2] This note, which is in a hand of the early part of the thirteenth century, may very possibly only record the presentation from a friend of what had been for some time in his own hands, and therefore proves nothing as to at how early a date the volume presented may have been written; but it is very interesting, as proving conclusively that it cannot have been written later than the year 1220; for the "dominus "A." cannot possibly be any other than Alexander,[3] abbot of St. Augustine's Canterbury, 1213–1220. It is very possible that the treatises of Giraldus in this volume may have been penned as early as this, though I should rather think them of a few years later date; and I should be glad to be able to believe that this note gives us the latest limit of the date of their writing. But there is a circumstance connected with it that seems to me wholly to forbid this idea. The note follows directly on a table of the contents[4] of these first fifty-five leaves

[1] The *Retractationes* and *Cathalogus* are printed by Mr. Brewer from this Domitian manuscript, vol. i. pp. 425 and 421.

[2] And on the next page, f. 2 *b*, in a much later hand, is this: "Liber "Sancti Aug. Cant., Dist. V."

[3] An Alfricus became abbot of St. Augustine's in A.D. 956. After whom, except this Alexander, no other abbot occurs,—and we have a perfect list of them,—whose name began with A, up to after A.D. 1400. I have not thought it worth while to examine beyond these dates.

[4] Viz., "Isidorus de Naturis Re-"rum; Glosulæ quædam; Insti-"tutio Prisciani; Beda de Die "Judicii."

of the volume, and belongs certainly, I fear we must conclude, to these only. They formed a separate volume when thus presented to abbot Alexander.

Moreover, the latter part of the volume, ff. 138–155, contains a copy of the *Annales Cambriæ*,[1] in a hand of the last years of the thirteenth, or first of the fourteenth century,—certainly not before 1288, where the annals end. It is clear that this Domitian volume was at some time compacted, in Sir Robert Cotton's library probably, for convenience sake, from what originally were three distinct volumes or parts of volumes.

The copy of the Itinerary in this volume is dedicated to archbishop Stephen Langton, and, as I shall have to show in the history of this treatise, was written after the summer of 1213. It gives us, we may feel quite sure, very nearly, if not exactly, the last corrections and additions of the author; and closely to his time as it must have been written, if not written before his death, and the work as it is of a very correct scribe, it is no doubt a very authentic copy of probably his last revision of this treatise. I have therefore taken it as the basis of my text, noting carefully, however, where it differs from the earlier editions, and preferring their verbal readings occasionally, where it seems that its scribe, as must be the case sometimes with the very best scribes, was in error.

Infra, xxxviii.

It is D. of my notation.

MS. Bib. Reg. 13 B. xii.; in which late copies of the third edition of the Itinerary.

MS. (Rd.)

Another copy, or two other copies rather, of this third edition are in a manuscript of the Royal Library of the British Museum, Bib. Reg. 13 B. xii. This is a late sixteenth century paper manuscript. It contains two copies of the Itinerary, and of the Description of Wales; one on ff. 1–148, the other on ff. 150–205.

---

[1] This is used in the *Annales Cambriæ* of the present series; manuscript (C.) of that work, Preface, xxvii.

The latter is closely and not always very legibly written, and is considerably worn; the former, fresh and clean comparatively, occupying good way towards three times as many pages, with wide margins, and large spaces between the chapters, is a fairer specimen of manuscripts of the time than we often meet with. This seems to be somewhat the later of the two, and, as they agree very exactly, was probably transcribed from the other. The version in these generally agrees closely with that of (D.); they give, however, two or three additions of new matter,[1] one of which is due certainly I think, and others

[1] There are some nine or ten unimportant additions of a word or two, and two additions of several lines, viz., at p. 44, (n. 1), a quotation from St. Ambrose; and at p. 44 (n. 4), mention of the Parian stone, or freestone, of the hills round Llantoni, which had been used in the construction of the abbey church there, now not long since at length completed ("Ex "quibus ecclesia *jam* extat egregie "constructa," 45, l. 7). The term "Parii lapides" of this latter passage, a term, I believe, peculiar to Giraldus, proves it almost conclusively, I think, to have been an addition of Giraldus's own pen. Moreover, the ruins of Llantoni church show that it was built in Giraldus's life-time, and can have been completed but few years, if any, before the time (circa 1215) when this passage would be added by him to the last edition of the Itinerary. I have never seen the church myself, but I can state, on the far better authority of my good friend, Edward A. Freeman, Esq., that it is a very good example of the local transition from Romanesque to Early Gothic, and must have been built in the later years of the twelfth century, or at the very beginning of the thirteenth. The masonry is very good, fully deserving Giraldus's "egregie con"structa." An excellent description of this church, from Mr. Freeman's pen, will be found in the 1855 volume of the *Archæologia Cambrensis*, p. 82. This passage, therefore, about Llantoni and its Parian stones, I think we may safely conclude, was certainly added by Giraldus himself, though by some accident it escaped the scribe of the excellent early manuscript (D.), and only appears in the very late manuscript (Rd.); and as it is only separated from the other additional passage, the quotation from St. Ambrose, by a short intermediate section of a dozen lines, one and the same accident, perhaps, caused the non-insertion of both in the early copy of the third edition.

One of (Rd.)'s minor additions upon (D.), two words, on a very vulgar and nasty subject, is rather oddly in the second edition as given us in (Hc.); 88, n. 4. There was little nicety, on such a matter, in those days; but it may perhaps be

probably, to Giraldus's pen; but, as occurring only in so late a manuscript, while placing them in my text, I have enclosed them within brackets. I have thought it right to collate this manuscript carefully, and to record its readings; because, late though it be,[1] it is evidently a good transcript for its time, derived evidently from a good early manuscript distinct from (D.), and is the only manuscript besides (D.) that I have been able to find of Giraldus's last revision of these Welsh treatises.

New additions in this third edition.

There are very considerable additions in this third edition to the second edition as given us in manuscript (Hc). Many of them are of a mere explanatory word or two, but many also are additions of new matter. The more noteworthy of the latter are as follows:—A string of the reigning sovereigns in 1188,[2] when archbishop Baldwin itinerated

that the scribe of (D.) had too delicate a pen to repeat such an unclean and useless addition. Giraldus would have no scruple, because he had full authority from Horace, 1 S. viii. 47.

[1] It does not at all necessarily follow that a manuscript, because late, is therefore not valuable. It may be a faithful transcript from a good early manuscript that has perished; and if the only manuscript that has come down to us, it will be very valuable. For this reason I consider the copy of this treatise preserved in the late manuscript (Hc.), which I have already described (*supra*, xi.), to be very valuable. It is correctly written for its time; was no doubt taken from a good earlier manuscript; and is the only manuscript now in being, so far as I have been able to ascertain, that gives us Giraldus's very distinct second edition of this Itinerary of Wales.

[2] Giraldus is wrong in the first of his sovereigns. He makes Urban III., who died Oct. 19, 1187, to be pope in 1188. It is very probable that he added this string of sovereigns in imitation of the very similar string at the commencement of the first chapter of the *Itinerarium Regis Ricardi*, a work that Giraldus was well acquainted with, as he extracts largely from it in his *De Principis Instructione*. And hence would be his mistake about the pope. He follows the original which he is imitating, without thinking that its right pope Urban of 1187 might not be the right pope of 1188. William of Newburgh has a very similar string of sovereigns, when commencing his account of the crusade with the year 1187 (i. 248, *Engl. Hist. Society*). Professor Stubbs, in his very valuable preface to the *Itin. R. Ricardi* (p. lxix), thinks it not improbable that this work may have been seen

round Wales; *infra*, 13, n. 3. An addition to the account of Giraldus's taking the cross at Radnor; 14, n. 5. A clause about archbishop Baldwin's reading the Topography of Ireland; 20, n. 6. A section containing two quotations from Holy Scripture, and deductions from them; 22, n. 6. Three sections, describing miracles at Bury St. Edmund's, Howden, and Wincheombe; 24, n. 3. The account, from the *Topographia Hibernica*, of St. Patrick's horn, and the Welsh priest who dared to blow it; 26, n. 7. A section about master Fulke, and Richard I., and the three daughters; 44, n. 3. A clause about the marvellous effect of Giraldus's preaching at Haverford; 83, n. 1. A section about a Cistercian abbot and a French knight; 96, n. 2. A long section about an archbishop of Denmark and a demon clerk; 98, n. 1. A clause about Geoffrey's succession to the bishopric of St. David's in 1203; 104, n. 4. A long account, from the *Topographia Hibernica*, of Henry II., &c., at St. David's, on his return from Ireland in 1172; 107, n. 4. Quotations from Cicero, Juvenal, and Bernard, about the Castor; 117, n. 2. Clause about crossing the rivers Dysynwy and Artro, Merionethshire; 124, n. 3. Quotation from Trogus Pompeius; 137, n. 4. Clause about Robert de Belesme's importation of Spanish horses into Powys; 143, n. 4. Section about the more eminent Welsh princes of Giraldus's time; 145, n. 3. Clause about pope Urban's rebuke of archbishop Baldwin's re-

by Newburgh, and so followed. But may it not have been the other way, if there was any following at all? There is no proof that Newburgh used this history of the crusade; his work indeed was finished, certainly before this appeared in its full form, perhaps before any part of it appeared. Newburgh, in his string, gives only the sovereigns, Frederick of Germany, Philip of France, Henry of England, and pope Urban; to these the author of the *Itin. R. Ricardi* adds, Isaac of Constantinople and William of Sicily; and to these again Giraldus adds, Bela of Hungary and Guy of Palestine. This seems to make it look likely that Newburgh was imitated and added to, in the string of sovereigns, by the author of the *Itin. R. Ricardi*; and this writer again, in like manner, by Giraldus.

missness; 149, n. 1. And lastly, a long section about a death-bed dream of archbishop Richard of Canterbury, and about the good results of St. Thomas's struggles and martyrdom having been lost by the remissness of his two immediate successors; 150, n. 4.

A large part of these additions, in this third edition, have as little to do with the subject of the treatise as almost all the additions which Giraldus had before made, *Supra*, xiii in the second edition, to the work as first issued. But there are several of them that do bear directly on his subject, instead of the one only such instance amongst the insertions in the second edition. We may perhaps find a reason for this in the probable facts that the second edition was issued some time during Giraldus's stay at Lincoln, far away from Wales, and the third in the retirement of his later years in his Welsh home, where the circumstances of his peregrination through Wales with archbishop Baldwin would naturally be more in his memory. It still seems to me that, as in the case of the Irish Topography, Giraldus's literary character would have stood higher than it has any claim to do now, if the first edition only of this treatise also had come down to us. We may be thankful for his after additions, but we cannot applaud an author for loading his pages with such a mass of extraneous matter.

The above are all the manuscripts of the Itinerary that I have been able to examine. They are few in number; but the valuable copies of the first edition given us in manuscripts (R.) and (B.), and the equally good copy of the third edition in (D.), with the differences of the second edition supplied by (Hc.), leave perhaps little to be desired by an editor in forming his text. There is one other manuscript, however, described in Mr. Hardy's Catalogue as of the twelfth or thirteenth century, which I should have been very glad to see. It is No. 6914 of Sir Thos. Phillipps' collection, and I have not been able to gain access to it.

§ (2.) Manuscripts of the Description.

I now proceed to the manuscripts of the *Descriptio Kambriæ,* the second of the treatises of this volume.

Editions of the Descriptio Kambriæ.

Giraldus issued certainly two editions, if no more, of this treatise: one dedicated to his after adversary in the matter of St. David's, archbishop Hubert of Canterbury; and another, some twenty years afterwards, or nearly, dedicated to archbishop Stephen Langton. As will be seen, *Infra,* xl. there was very possibly an intermediate edition, dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln; but this is doubtful: the evidence which seems to prove it may perhaps only tell us of the presentation to the Lincoln saint of a copy of the same first edition not long before dedicated to archbishop Hubert. For convenience sake I shall speak without hesitation of the edition addressed to archbishop Hubert as the first edition, and of that addressed to Stephen Langton as the second; though there may have been an intermediate one addressed to bishop Hugh.

Manuscripts of the first edition.

I have found no early manuscript of the first edition, though I have searched and enquired anxiously. There are many late copies of it, but all, unhappily, derived from one common source, in which a considerable portion of the treatise had been lost. In 1691, when Wharton published his *Anglia Sacra,* there was what may have been an early copy of it—or of the possible second edition, for it was dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln—in the library at Westminster Abbey. This is not now to be found; it probably perished in the fire, three years afterwards, which was fatal to so much of the contents of that library.

MS. (V.) Vitellius C. x., British Museum.

Of the manuscripts of this first edition which I have used, I shall place first, because I imagine it to be the earliest, the copy in Vitellius C. x. of the Cotton manuscripts of the British Museum. This is a folio volume of 273 leaves. The

few leaves of it which contain the copy of the Description of Wales, ff. 4–9 of recent numbering, are of vellum; the writing in a hand of the second half of the fourteenth century, in double columns of fifty or fifty-one lines. The large remainder of the volume, of paper, consists of various pieces relating to Wales, in a seventeenth century hand, with many original documents pasted on the leaves. This no doubt has much valuable material for a Welsh historian.

This copy of the treatise is V. of my notation.

Nero D. viii., British Museum.

MS. (N.)

Of about the same, but probably of some few years later date, is another copy of the first edition of this treatise, in another Cotton volume, Nero D. viii., of the British Museum. This volume contains,[1] in one hand, on vellum, in double columns of forty-eight lines, the following treatises, viz.: *Giraldi Cambrensis Cambriæ Descriptio,* on ff. 176–183; *Disputatio inter Clericum et Militem,*[2] of William de Ockam, on ff. 183–186; *De origine Gigantum in Albion,* on ff. 186–187*b*; and Higden's *Polychronicon,* on ff. 188–344*b*.[3] This copy of Higden is a copy of his first edition, ending in 1327;[4] but a continuation is added to 1376.

[1] The first part of this volume contains, in a beautiful thirteenth century hand, the following works: Geoffrey of Monmouth, ff. 3–63; Nennii Historia Britonum, and De Mirabilibus Britanniæ, ff. 63–71; Dudo S. Quintini Decanus, de Ducibus Normanniæ, ff. 72–135 *b*; Willelmus Calculus Gemeticensis, ff. 135 *b*–159 *b*; and Vita Alexandri Magni, ff. 160–175.

[2] This is printed in *Goldasti Monarchia S. Rom. Imperii*, i. 13. The copy in this manuscript varies from Goldastus's text.

[3] At the end of the volume are two or three leaves of paper, on which, ff. 345–347, in a hand of the sixteenth or seventeenth century, but imitating an early hand, is the tract, Marianus de Monasterio Colecestrensi, printed in the *Monasticon*, (iv. 607, of last edition).

[4] This copy of Higden, up to 1327, seems to agree exactly with that of Mr. Babington's manuscript (C.), as described in his preface to the first volume of Higden in this series. With it the history ends at that year (f. 333 *b*) with "Scotia "concordiam, ecclesia libertatem;" and then also follow the six hexameters, "Scribitur ecce liber . . . "laudes benedicto" of that manuscript (Higden, i., Preface, l). After this our manuscript has the Index,

This portion, therefore, of the volume is certainly not earlier than 1376; it was perhaps written towards quite the end of the century, if not in the earlier part of the fifteenth century.[1] The copy of the Description agrees exactly as to contents, and very closely as to verbal readings as well, with the copy in (V.); but there are variations enough of readings to show that it was not transcribed from (V.). They agree, however, so closely that they were very probably transcribed from the same earlier manuscript. As they are, to some extent, independent copies, I have carefully collated both, and recorded their readings in my notes. There is no note whatever telling anything of the history of the volume, or of any part of it.

This copy is N. of my notation.

MS. (Rc.) Bib. Reg. 13 C. iii., British Museum.

There is another copy in a volume of the Royal Library of the British Museum, Bib. Reg. 13 C. iii., of about the same date; somewhat earlier perhaps than (N.), and later perhaps than (V.). This, carelessly and not very legibly written, agrees so exactly with (V.) that one is probably a mere transcript of the other. I collated it, in large measure at any rate, but I am not sure that I have in any instance thought it worth while to record its readings in my notes. If I have, it will be designated by Rc. It seemed to me amply enough t o givethe readings of (V.) and (N.).

Dislocation, and large deficiency, in these MSS.

The above are the only copies I have met with of this first edition of the Description of Wales, dedicated to archbishop Hubert, of an earlier date than the sixteenth century. In all three, a portion of the second preface is missing from its right place at the beginning of the first

occupying ff. 333 *b*–339 *b*; and then the continuation to the year 1376, on ff. 339 *b*–344 *b*; all in the same hand.

[1] In Mr. Hardy's *Catalogue*, ii. 466, it is described as of fifteenth century date.

book, and placed instead in the middle of the seventh chapter of the second book;[1] and good way towards half of the first book, from the middle of Cap. 8 to the middle of Cap. 17, is lost altogether.[2] In each case—of omission in right place, of after mis-insertion, and of entire loss—these manuscripts run coolly and continuously on, in the middle of pages, making utter nonsense at the points of omission and mis-insertion, without the slightest hint that their scribes had the slightest notion of anything being wrong. These copies must have been derived from an earlier manuscript, in which one leaf had got misplaced from the beginning of the first book to the middle of the second, and which had also lost altogether some dozen leaves, or thereabouts, from the middle of the first book. Medieval scribes cannot have been generally ignorant or illiterate men, at all events in the matter of medieval manuscripts; and such ignoring of things so evidently wrong may be a proof rather of their rigid accuracy, and of their ready faith, as in other marvellous things, so in anything strange about what was given them to copy.

Late like manuscripts.

Agreeing wholly with these manuscripts as to contents, with the same unnoted dislocation and deficiency, differing only in many scribal blunders, are many manuscript copies of this treatise, of the second half of the sixteenth century. Of such I have examined—some of them far more carefully than they deserved—the copies in the following manuscript volumes, viz., in Harleian 359 (Hc.,[3] already described), Harleian 1757, and Vitellius E. v, of the British Museum; in Ff. 1, 27 (F.)[4] of the University

Supra, xi.
Supra, x.

[1] *Infra*, 163, n. 1; 215, n. 4.

[2] *Infra*, 180, n. 5; 201, n. 2.

[3] This is the manuscript volume before described, which contains the valuable copy of the second edition of the Itinerary. The copy in it of the Description is in a different hand, and very worthless.

[4] This volume has been just mentioned before; it is described at p. xxii, &c., of my Preface to vol. v. It was one of archbishop Parker's

Library, and No. 400[1] of Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge. I believe that I have never once recorded the readings of any one of these manuscripts: it would have been mere useless waste of letter-press: except in their blundering verbal variations or omissions, they are merely copies of (V.) or (N.), or of some other exactly corresponding manuscript or manuscripts.

It is curious that so many copies of this mutilated first edition should be found, but no perfect copy of the treatise at all, of sixteenth century date, with the exception of the copy of the second edition in the manu-
Supra, xvii. script volume (Rd.), which I have already described as containing also a copy of the third edition of the Itinerary. It can hardly be supposed that no better manuscripts than such as (V.) and (N.) were then known. There were at hand the since lost Westminster manuscript containing the first edition, and the valuable
Supra, xv. manuscript (D.), the Cotton Domitian volume described above, containing the second edition of this treatise; and very possibly some, perhaps many others, of which we

gifts to the University. The copy of the Description, on paper, is inserted between the Expugnation of Ireland and the Itinerary of Wales, occupying pp. 473–491 of archbishop Parker's numbering. It was probably written by some scribe employed by him, and was no doubt bound up here under his directions with the earlier manuscripts, in order to complete the series of the Irish and Welsh treatises of Giraldus.

[1] This volume, which contains valuable early copies of the Irish Topography, and the treatise *De Jure et Statu Menevensis Ecclesiæ* of our author, will be found described at p. xiv of my Preface to vol. v. The Description of Wales, on paper, is placed between these early manuscripts. Its leaves have no paging, while the Topography has its folios numbered by an early hand, and the *De Jure*, &c., has the red paging (1–113) of archbishop Parker. The treatises, therefore, were probably separate when given by him to the college, and bound up together afterwards.

In Mr. Hardy's *Catalogue* (ii. 466, 467), there is a mistake about the Cambridge C. C. Coll. manuscripts of Giraldus. His reference under *Cambriæ Descriptio* belongs to the *Topographia Hibernica*, and that under the *Itinerarium Cambriæ* to the *Descriptio*. There is no copy of the Itinerary in the library.

now find no tidings. But even allowing that these were unknown to the sixteenth century transcribers, there was another perfect manuscript of the second edition, distinct from (D.), which most certainly was known to them, from which the sixteenth century transcript of (Rd.) was taken. And yet, with this one exception, so far as I have been able to see, all the sixteenth century scribes insisted on repeating copies of this mutilated first edition. It is perhaps scarcely uncharitable to suppose that archbishop Parker, and other then patrons of our English historical literature, paid some agreed-on sum for the transcription of this treatise, without specifying from what manuscript the transcript was to be made, very possibly without knowing the worth of the different manuscripts;[1] and that the scribes preferred, as paying them much better, the shorter manuscripts. But there

[1] It is to be hoped that archbishop Parker had little cognizance of how his scribes copied for him, or of how his editors manipulated the works published under his name. In the Preface to his edition of Asser's *Life of Alfred*, he solemnly declares that in all the works put forth by him he had strictly and faithfully adhered to the manuscript originals, with no addition or alteration whatever. To mention but one case,—there are others much of the same sort,—his edition of Matthew Paris, so far from faithfully representing the manuscripts, is simply a most infamously dishonest perversion of this writer's text, with sometimes, moreover, utterly unauthorised additions. This was exposed by Wats, in the reprint of 1640, but seems to have been little, if at all, believed. If any one be inclined to doubt its possibility, I advise him to turn to pp. xxxi–xxxvii of Sir Frederick Madden's most valuable Preface to vol. i. of the *Anglorum Historia* of Matthew Paris, lately published in this series. It is indeed hard to believe that such a man as archbishop Parker, one whom we have learnt to hold in such reverence, could possibly have been guilty of the atrocious falsifications that the works under his name most certainly display, or of so solemn an assurance of their truthfulness, if he had himself the least doubt about it. It may perhaps well be, that he only too honestly believed in the honesty of his scribes and editors; but he certainly was very unwise and wrong, if such were the case, in so confidently staking his own character, whether as a truthful man and honest editor, or as a foul liar and falsifier, on the truthfulness of what had not passed carefully under his own eyes.

may have been a more innocent cause of this: the sixteenth century transcribers, and editors of such a work, seem to me to have generally preferred, where they had any choice, the manuscripts nearest to their own time, because perhaps to them the most legible; and therefore these scribes of the sixteenth-century copies of this treatise may simply have followed the then usual custom, in their selection of the manuscripts to be copied. It is very difficult, however, to suppose that they were not well aware that there was something wrong in what they were transcribing.

MSS. (D.) and (Rd.), *supra*, xv., xvii.

Manuscripts of the second edition.

I have met with no other copies of the second edition of the Description of Wales, dedicated to archbishop Stephen Langton, besides those in the manuscripts (D.) and (Rd.), which I have already described as containing copies also of the third edition of the Itinerary. (D.) is so early and correct a manuscript, that perhaps no further manuscript would have much improved upon its text of the author's latest revision of this treatise. As in the Itinerary, I therefore take the copy in (D.) for the basis of my text; but not without preferring occasionally the readings of (Rd.), or of the manuscripts of the first edition,—late comparatively though the earliest of these be,—especially when they all concur in giving a reading different from the sole reading of (D.). Such instances do not very often occur; the scribe of (D.) was a very good one, though of course sometimes making mistakes.

Variations of these mauuscripts.

Supra, xix.

It is certain, as regards this treatise as well as the Itinerary, that (Rd.) was not derived from (D.), but from some early kindred manuscript. It has many variations from (D.); besides mere verbal variations, often an addition or omission of an unimportant word or two; of which all almost of the omissions seem mere scribal blunders, many certainly so. The only addition worth noticing is at 184, n. 1, "cujusmodi "in Veteri Instrumento lagana dici solent," which sounds

much like an interpolation from some commentator's marginal note. There are two or three alterations of the text to be remarked, because very probably giving us corrections of Giraldus's latest pen, that had somehow escaped the scribe of (D.). At 164, n. 3, (D.). ascribes to Seneca a quotation from Cicero : instead of Seneca, (Rd.) has, "moralis ille philosophus." At 167, n. 1, (D.) follows the first edition, and speaks of Rhys ab Gruffudd, who died in 1197, as still prince of South Wales : instead of (D.'s) "hodie præest," (Rd.) has "diebus nostris "præfuit." At 167, n. 2, in giving the genealogy of the princes of North Wales, (D.) again agrees with the first edition, and speaks of David ab Owain, who was expelled by his nephew Llywelyn in 1194, as if still the prince of North Wales : instead of (D.'s) "David filius Oenei," (Rd.) has, "Luelinus filius Iorwerth, Iorwerth filius "Oenei." At 208, n. 10, instead of (D.'s) "Maximus "ille," (Rd.) has "ille tam re Maximus quam nomine," an alteration so thoroughly Giraldic that it must be Giraldus's own. These altered readings in (Rd.)—and there are one or two other minor ones that might perhaps have been added—I believe to be, in all probability, corrections of Giraldus's own pen. Still I have thought it better in these cases to adhere to the text of the early manuscript (D.), and to be satisfied with recording in my notes these very probably better readings of a very late manuscript.

Additions in this second edition. The additions in this second edition are small and unimportant, compared with what Giraldus had meanwhile made to his other Welsh treatise, the Itinerary, and more fully still to the Irish Topography. The following list will, I think, comprise all the additions, except of a mere explanatory word or so:—A quotation of two lines from Horace, at 164, n. 2. One line explaining the word Cantrev, 169, n. 5. Six or seven lines containing three quotations about the Castor, from Cicero, Juvenal, and Bernard, 175, n. 2. A

bare mention of two rivers of Merionethshire, 176, n. 2. A quotation of two lines, 180 n. 2. [After this comes the large gap in all the copies of the first edition, during which we have no means of ascertaining what may have been the additions made in the second edition.] A section of sixteen lines of my text, describing the Welsh coracles, 201, n. 6. Two sections, comprising twenty-three lines of my text, about Maximus and his exhausting levies from Britain for his foreign wars, and about Gildas's history of Arthur, 208, n. 9. A quotation, four lines, from Micah, 212, n. 2. A quotation, four lines, from Proverbs, 215, n. 1. A quotation, eight lines, from Hosea, 216, n. 7. One line about the bad management of some lord-marchers, 223, n. 4. And a section, twelve lines of my text, about the three things ruinous to the Welsh nation, 225. This treatise, like the Irish *Expugnatio*, can have been taken but little notice of by Giraldus after its first issue, in comparison with his other Welsh and Irish treatises, to which he made such large additions and must have given so much labour; though it be a treatise, we may perhaps think, that he might easily have added to and much improved.

Omission in this second edition.

There is a very curious passage of the first edition, omitted in the second, which must not be passed over without notice.[1] It formed in the first edition the conclusion of the ninth chapter of the second book; in which, and in the previous chapter, Giraldus had been advising about the right way to thoroughly subdue and govern Wales. In this passage he coolly recommended the English monarch to drive bodily the whole Welsh race out of Wales, and to colonize the country with other people. He then added that, in the opinion of some, it would be still better and wiser, and more the part of a provident prince, to turn the whole land, rugged as it was and only

[1] *Infra*, 225, n. 4.

fit for rugged and rebellious inhabitants, into one vast forest, left entirely to wild beasts. It may be, we may hope, that when he suppressed this passage in the second edition,[1] he was heartily ashamed of ever having given such cold-blooded merciless advice of extermination of a whole race. Altogether it is a curious passage, as written by one who, though at the time devoted to the English interests, was still himself half a Welshman, and nearly related to the princes of South Wales ; and quite as curious, as written by the man who, very few years afterwards, was the earnest patriotic Welshman, in the cause of St. David's, and of his own election to this see.

The sixteenth century copies of this treatise which I have named, that of (Rd.) of the second edition, as well as the many imperfect copies of the first edition, all containing both books, were probably all written not later than 1585, when Powel's volume was printed. Powel however, I suppose from his Welsh patriotism, printed the first book only, *De Laudabilibus :* the second book, *De Illaudabilibus*, he utterly ignores, though no existing manuscript up to his time gives one without the other.

Supra, xxv.

Infra, liii.

[1] Very probably it was suppressed long before the issue of this new edition, dedicated to archbishop Langton. It seems not to have been in the copy in the lost Westminster manuscript used by Wharton, where this treatise was addressed, about the year 1197, to bishop Hugh of Lincoln. Wharton has a marginal note near the place, to the effect that the latter part of the chapter, as in the second edition, was not in the Westminster manuscript (*infra*, 224, n. 12), and he has not a hint of this having anything else instead. Had the Westminster manuscript contained so strange a passage, he must, one would think, have taken notice of it. But he edited so badly, that it is impossible to feel at all sure what he might notice or not notice. By the time, however, that this treatise was presented to bishop Hugh, Giraldus had begun to see how poor was his chance of finding, in the English court, any right recognition of his merits and services, and any such promotion as he deemed himself richly to deserve; and he was becoming the earnest patriotic Welshman that he soon afterwards showed himself. Very probably, therefore, this atrocious passage was suppressed in the copy of the treatise addressed to bishop Hugh, and accordingly was not in Wharton's Westminster manuscript.

Camden's volume does but repeat the treatise from Powel, and accordingly has no mention of the second book. This remained in manuscript until printed by
Infra, lviii. Wharton in the second volume of his *Anglia Sacra* in 1691. Copies, therefore, of this second book separately would naturally be written long after the first book had ceased to be transcribed. And such exist in the following manuscript volumes; viz., in O. 5, 24 of Trin. Coll. Library, Cambridge, with a note that it was tran-
Supra, xv. scribed from "Cod. Cott. Domit. A. 1," *i. e.* (D.) of my notation; and in Sloane 1691, and 4785, of the British Museum, to both of which copies is affixed the transcriber's note, "Ex Bibliotheca Regia." The note in the latter of these (4785), which was formerly Clarendon xxviii. is, "14° Martii 1641. Ex Bibliotheca Regia. "Communicavit Patricius Junius bibliothecarius re- "gius." These two Sloane copies agree exactly, barring blunders, with Bib. Reg. 13 B. xii., (Rd.) *supra*, and were no doubt copied from it.

PART II.

HISTORY, VALUE, PRINTED EDITIONS, &c., OF THESE TREATISES.

§ (1). History of the Itinerary.

I must now try to trace the history of the several editions of these Welsh treatises so far as there is any actual evidence, or mere hints, to guide us. Much of what I have to say will depend mainly upon the latter.

First edition of the Itinerary issued in 1191.

The Itinerary was the first published of the two. What I call the first edition was certainly not issued before the spring of 1191, because it mentions archbishop Baldwin's death before Acre, which took place in November 1190.[1] This would be just about three years after the progress through Wales in the spring of 1188, which it describes; and three years perhaps seem a long time for Giraldus's ready pen to have taken on a subject evidently of so great satisfaction and pride to himself. Moreover, the treatise seems often full of narration on the very spot and time of the circumstances it describes. It is perfectly possible that there may have been an earlier edition, of which no manuscript has come down to us. But, on the other hand, Giraldus tells us of three years' labour over the Irish Topography, and two over the

[1] *Infra*, 151.

Expugnation. There is evidence also that in 1189 and 1190 he was a busy follower of the court, and much employed in other than literary work. During the earlier part, too, of the three years after the Welsh progress, there were his near crusading expectations, which would largely demand his time and labour; and what literary leisure he may then have had, we may suppose, would be given to the Irish Expugnation, published hurriedly and incompletely in June, or very near to June, of 1189.[1] And his narrative of archbishop Baldwin's progress may very probably have been in much measure penned at the time, though not put into shape and published until three years afterwards. Anyhow, as we have now no tidings of an earlier edition, we can only take this, not issued before the spring of 1191, as the first edition.

And it was issued not later than the early autumn of 1191. In the excellent early manuscript (R.) there is no dedication preface. It seems odd that there should be no such preface to the first edition of this treatise, because, in every other of his early treatises,[2] except the

---

[1] See vol. v., Preface, lvi, &c.

[2] The Topography of Ireland was dedicated to Henry II. in 1188; the Expugnation to Richard, count of Poitou, in 1189; and the first edition of the Description of Wales to archbishop Hubert, circa 1194. Giraldus continued his dedications for some years afterwards. The second edition of the Itinerary is dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln; to whom also he addressed the Description of Wales, but this probably merely a copy of the first edition. The date of these would be, 1196–1199. By this time Giraldus seems to have found out the futility of such dedications, involving labour and cost to himself, with no worthy result. The *Symbolum Electorum*, the *Gemma Ecclesiastica*, the *De Invectionibus*, the *De Rebus, &c.*, the *Vita S. Hugonis* (yet in manuscript), all published between 1199 and 1213, invoke the auspices, and favour to the author, of no patron. But on archbishop Langton's triumphant return in 1213, Giraldus seems to have thought that there was now one whose patronage he would do well to cultivate. To him he dedicates the *Legenda Remigii* (a second edition, the only one that has come down to us), the third edition of the Itinerary, the second edition of the Description of Wales, and the *De Jure*, &c. The *De Principis Instructione*, in the shape in which we have it the last probably of Giral-

life of archbishop Geoffrey, which was published anonymously, Giraldus selects some potent patron, under whose auspices he wishes his work to be ushered into the world, or from whom he hoped to gain advancement. But in the nearly, if not quite, equally early and valuable manuscript (B) of this edition, there is, in the same hand, a large part of the dedicatory preface, as it appeared afterwards in later editions; not, however, in its proper place, at the beginning, but at the end, as if smuggled on accidentally. This is addressed to William, bishop of Ely, i.e. William de Longchamp, in whose hands Richard, on his departure for Palestine, placed all but kingly power; papal legate also; up to the autumn of 1191 the most powerful man in England. But in October 1191, Longchamp was most ignominiously driven out of England; and we may be very sure that Giraldus would never dedicate a work to him after his downfall from his high estate. Moreover, it is almost impossible to conceive that even Giraldus could have had the face,—after his horrible invective against Longchamp,[1] in the last chapter of the life of archbishop Geoffrey of York, written no doubt close upon Longchamp's expulsion,—to address a dedication to him in after years, when brought back by Richard to England, and restored in some part to his greatness. Giraldus, indeed, published this life of archbishop Geoffrey without actually affixing his name to it at the time; but no doubt it was well known who wrote it; Giraldus's own vanity would never rest without letting all his friends know that a new work had pro-

This first edition dedicated to Wm. de Longchamp.

dus's works, in the preface to which he speaks of his "ætas infirmior, et "metæ finalis cursus affinior," is addressed to no patron. There is a curious passage in this preface (p. 4, ed. Brewer, 1846), where he bewails the profitless dedications of his earlier works, in his ambitious days, to princes and prelates, and resolves to dedicate this and any future work to posterity only, who will no doubt worthily appreciate his labours.

[1] See vol. v., Preface, lxv, note.

ceeded from his eloquent scholastic pen,—and a work, too, so lauding archbishop Geoffrey, whose probably future powerful patronage we may well suppose he hoped to procure.

We may conclude, I think, pretty safely, that this first edition was issued somewhere about the middle of the year 1191,[1] with a dedication to William de Longchamp; that after Longchamp's downfall Giraldus did all he could to suppress the dedication, and instead of sounding the great man's praises, now vomited out, from the blackest region of his bile, bitter disgusting abuse of the man who seemed utterly fallen ; and that hence the dedication appears in one manuscript only of this edition, and there only in part, and out of its right place, by mere accident as it were, or stealth. It is, perhaps, worth remarking, that the dedication to Longchamp in (B) contains only the first part, in which is no mention of the patron whom he is addressing: it stops abruptly with an &c., at the quotation from Juvenal, as in p. 7 *infra*. It would seem as if in the earlier manuscript, from which the scribe of (B.) copied, this first part was not erased, or only so far erased as not to be illegible, but the latter part, which would contain Giraldus's high opinion of the abilities and virtues of his patron, had been carefully and thoroughly blotted out.

---

[1] There is one passage of the first edition that seems at first sight to point to a later date than 1191. It speaks of the expulsion from Anglesey of Rhodri, son of Owain Gwynedd, by his victorious nephews (*infra*, 127), which is only mentioned by the *Brut* under 1193; and this, I believe, is the date generally given by Welsh historians to this expulsion. But the *Brut* says that in 1193 Rhodri subjugated the island, and was driven from it the same year. It is clear therefore that the expulsion of 1193 was not the first expulsion : if Rhodri had held Anglesey up to that year, he would not have had then to subjugate it. His first expulsion no doubt was, as Giraldus says, shortly after ("in brevi postmodum," 127, l. 5) the archbishop's progress in 1188.

Presentation copy also to archbishop Hubert.

In the dedication of the first edition of the Description of Wales to archbishop Hubert, as given us in manuscripts (V.), (N.), &c., Giraldus speaks of having before addressed the Itinerary also to him.[1] This would be not earlier than the summer of 1193, when Hubert was promoted from Salisbury to the metropolitan throne of Canterbury. No copy of this treatise, so addressed, is now known to exist. It may have been a new edition, intermediate in contents between our first and second editions; but more probably, it was merely a presentation copy of the first edition, which had now found a worthy patron in the place of the discarded Longchamp, or would give a revision of the treatise so slightly altered as not to deserve the name of a new edition.

Second edition, dedicated to Hugh of Lincoln, circa 1197.

The very distinct new edition, dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln, was published after the year 1194; as, amongst its additions, it contains an account of the defeat and imprisonment of Rhys prince of South Wales by his sons,[2] and of the expulsion of David son of Owain Gwynedd from North Wales by his nephew Llywelyn ab Iorwerth;[3] both which events took place in that year. It appeared, no doubt, some time during Giraldus's three years' stay at Lincoln, in 1196–1199;[4] and probably soon after his arrival there. He would not be long, we may suppose, in thus expressing his devotion to Hugh of Lincoln, when brought into something like contact with him. About this time, indeed,

[1] *Infra*, 156, l. 1, and n. 2; and 155, notes 1, 2, 3.

[2] *Infra*. 111, n. 3; and 112, n. 4.

[3] *Infra*, 134, n. 1 and 9.

[4] Wharton says, very erroneously, that Giraldus went to Lincoln in 1192, and stayed there seven years; *Anglia Sacra*, ii. 374. It seems perfectly certain that he did not go there until after 1194; and almost equally certain that he went there in the spring or summer of 1196, and stayed there about three years. See vol v., Preface, liii, note 2.

Giraldus supposed himself to have been badly used by Hugh, in the matter of the church of Chesterton;[1] but bitter and fierce and unscrupulous as he was against all who in any way opposed him or his interests, he seems to have made an exception in the case of Hugh of Lincoln; he is always loud and warm in laudation of him, notwithstanding the ill-treatment he believed he had received. Hugh's final action, however, in the matter of Chesterton, may have been in Giraldus's favour, and previous to any of Giraldus's laudations.

Third edition, dedicated to Stephen Langton, circa 1214.

We shall not be far wrong in concluding that the third and last edition of this treatise, dedicated to archbishop Langton, made its appearance in the year 1214. Giraldus was not the man to dedicate a work to Langton so long as Langton was in exile, and in disgrace with his sovereign, and not yet archbishop of Canterbury as to profits and patronage. Moreover, the dedication speaks of Langton's righteous disposal of the benefices in his gift;[2] and this cannot well have been said to him until some months after his actual possession of the archbishoprick on his return to England in July 1213. It is true, indeed, that this dedication is but a repetition, word for word, of what had been many years before addressed to Hugh of Lincoln; still we can hardly suppose that Giraldus would again use such words in addressing Langton, if they were utter nonsense as applied to him, as they would be before about the end of the year 1213. This third edition, therefore, may have been issued by the end of the year 1213, but not before. That it was issued not later, at the furthest, than the early part of the year 1215, appears from this, that Geoffrey is spoken of as still bishop of St. David's, at any rate as the last bishop whom Giraldus could name.[3] Geoffrey died in 1214;

[1] See his objurgatory letter to Hugh, written in 1196, or soon afterwards, in the *Symbolum Electorum*, vol. i. 259.

[2] *Infra*, 8, l. 13.

[3] *Infra*, 104, l. 16.

and his successor Gervase, Iorwerth of *Brut*, was consecrated June 21, 1115.

Upon the whole, then, we are led to conclude, that the Itinerary first appeared, with a dedication to William de Longchamp, about the middle of the year 1191; that a new edition, dedicated to Hugh of Lincoln, was issued circa 1197; and the third edition, dedicated to Stephen Langton, in or very near to 1214.

§ (2). History of the Description.

Of the history of the two editions of the Description of Wales that have come down to us, I shall not have very much to say; but I think there is sufficient evidence to prove very nearly the time when each was issued.

First edition of the Description, dedicated to archbishop Hubert; in 1194 probably.

It seems that this treatise did not make its first appearance until about three years after that of the Itinerary. What is, so far as we know, the first edition, is dedicated to archbishop Hubert, and this after Giraldus had presented to him a copy of the Itinerary;[1] which presentation would probably be very soon after Hubert's promotion to Canterbury in the summer of 1193. But this first edition of the Description must have been addressed to Hubert not later than some time in 1194, because it speaks of David ab Owain, who was expelled in that year by his nephew Llywelyn, as still prince of North Wales.[2] We shall be near the truth in assigning the issue of it to about the beginning of the year 1194.

In the dedicatory preface Giraldus speaks of himself as still in his "rudis adhuc et viridis juventa."[3] At the end of his treatise *De Jure, &c.*, he says that these

[1] *Infra*, 156, n. 2.
[2] *Infra*, 167, n. 2.
[3] *Infra*, 157, l. 20.

Welsh treatises were issued when he was about forty years old.[1] So far as it is possible to fix a date, with only his loose words to depend upon, it would seem that he must have been born in 1147, or not far from this year;[2] and therefore now, in 1194, he was somewhere about forty-seven years old. This is quite near enough to the forty years statement of the *De Jure, &c.*, considering his utterly loose wide way of giving anything in the shape of a date or number; and even forty-seven years old is within the limit of what, in medieval usage of the word, was the age of a "Juvenis." In the second edition of this treatise, a full twenty years afterwards, Giraldus still retains this talk of his raw and green youthfulness; but he speaks in the past tense, and can only be now referring to the time when the treatise was first issued.

Supra, xxii.

Addressed also to Hugh of Lincoln.

I have already had occasion to observe, that a copy of this treatise was addressed to bishop Hugh of Lincoln. No such manuscript of the treatise is now known to be in being; but the preface so addressed is preserved in (T.), the *Symbolum Electorum* of Trin. Coll. Cambridge;[3] and the treatise in the lost Westminster manuscript, used by Wharton when publishing the second book, was also dedicated to Hugh.[4] It was presented to him after the presentation of the second edition of the Itinerary.[5] It may have been a new edition, but more probably was merely a copy of the first edition, little if at all altered.[6] The prefaces, as given in (T.), agree all but exactly, except of course where the patron is named, with the prefaces as before addressed to archbishop Hubert. But this proves nothing, because they agree equally

---

[1] Vol. iii. 372.

[2] Vol. v., Preface, lvi.

[3] *Infra*, 155, notes 1 and 2.

[4] *Anglia Sacra*, ii., Preface, xxii.

[5] *Infra*, 156, n. 2.

[6] One passage, however, was probably now suppressed in this copy presented to bishop Hugh. See *supra*, xxxi, n. 1.

closely with the prefaces of the edition addressed many years afterwards to archbishop Langton. Wharton's text is so very badly and uncritically edited, that it is impossible to gather from it, to anything like certainty, whether or no the lost Westminster manuscript, with the dedication to bishop Hugh, differed in any respect from the manuscripts of the earlier issue of the treatise with the dedication to archbishop Hubert. I shall have to say more on this point, when speaking of Wharton's edition of the second book of this treatise. *Infra*, lviii.

Second edition, dedicated to Stephen Langton.

What I consider the second edition of this treatise was dedicated to archbishop Langton after the dedication to him of the third edition of the Itinerary; and some time after, it would seem, as Giraldus now alters the "ante" of the first edition into "olim;"[1] but it cannot have been long after. The Itinerary, as we have seen, was dedicated to Langton not before the latter part of the year 1213, and perhaps somewhat later than this. This gives us a limit on one side to the time when the Description was presented to him. In the prologue to the *De Jure, &c.*, addressed to Langton soon after June 1215,[2] Giraldus speaks of having presented the Description of Wales to him some time before.[3] This gives us a limit on the other side. Thus it appears that this second edition of the Description must have been presented to Langton some time after the end of the year 1213, and some *Supra*, xxxviii.

---

[1] *Infra*, 156, l. 1, and n. 2. But I am not at all sure that, according to medieval usage of the word, "olim" expresses a longer time back than "ante." Both perhaps simply mean, some time before; weeks it may be, or months, or years.

[2] Bishop Geoffrey of St. David's, who died in 1214, is spoken of in the *De Jure, &c.*, as lately dead, ("Præsule Menevensi Gaufredo nu-"per rebus humanis exempto," vol. iii. 119). His successor, however, who was consecrated June 21, 1215, is spoken of as the new bishop; and Giraldus takes occasion to give him much good advice as to his new duties. *Ibid.*, 361, &c.

[3] "Libellus . . de Kambriæ De-"scriptione . . vobis olim exaratus "et præsentatus." *Ibid.*, 101.

time before the autumn of 1215. We cannot well be far wrong in saying that it was presented towards the end of the year 1214, or in the early part of 1215.

Of the two editions, therefore, of this treatise, which have come down to us, we may conclude that the first was presented to archbishop Hubert about the beginning of the year 1194, and the second to archbishop Stephen Langton twenty-one years afterwards, about the beginning of the year 1215.

§ (3). Value of these Treatises.

There is much, no doubt, that is valuable and interesting in these Welsh treatises. To the Itinerary, I think, is to be assigned the first place, in point of value, of all the treatises which Giraldus's prolific pen has transmitted to us; and next after this certainly, if not with it, or even before it, the Description of Wales. In one respect, that has much to do perhaps with our good opinion of these treatises, they stand in very forward and favourable contrast with much of what Giraldus has elsewhere written about himself and his own doings, and about the men and the things of his own days. They are written in an amiable good temper, and are comparatively quite free from all the bitter evil-speaking, lying, and slandering, that not unfrequently make others of his works absolutely repulsive.

Amiable tone of the Itinerary.

It would have been strange indeed if the Itinerary had been written otherwise than amiably: the weeks of this progress with archbishop Baldwin were, perhaps, the proudest and happiest weeks of Giraldus's life. High in favour, as he believed, with Henry II., with no bounds to his aspirations of lofty advancement, the chosen companion and conductor of the metropolitan of all England on an important and most solemn mission—and this through his own country, where he was a great man, and amongst his own friends, and his own princely relatives,—made much of, no doubt, by

Baldwin, because no doubt a really very useful and able auxiliary, and fussed up to his own fussy heart's content, he could only paint the progress in bright and happy colours. There never could have been any other same number of weeks of his life more continuously and thoroughly gratifying to his extremity of vanity. And he makes no secret of his self-satisfaction, and full appreciation of his own importance: Giraldus himself is the great hero of the progress: the archbishop and others may preach, and to some effect he allows, but it is Giraldus who, though preaching in an unknown tongue, miraculously as it were draws floods of tears from his auditors, and crowds of eager applicants for the signature of the cross.[1] The archbishop may give his monitions, but it is Giraldus who utters gracious and effective sermons.[2] Throughout, the archbishop seems a subordinate person, almost a mere puppet in the hands of his conductor: it is always We, *i.e.*, I Giraldus and my protégé the archbishop, who do anything of importance, even when one would think the archbishop must have been the sole actor, though very probably more or less acting often under Giraldus's instigation; it is We who order the removal from Bangor cathedral of the body of Owain Gwynedd, who had died under the ban of St. Thomas's excommunication;[3] it is We who excommunicate Owain Cyveiliog, because alone of the princes of Wales he failed to meet the archbishop.[4] But all such exhibition of vanity and self-satisfaction we can easily forgive, because free from the unscrupulous and atrocious vindictiveness displayed in others of his works.

Small space given by Giraldus to North Wales.

It was but natural that Giraldus should have much more to say about his own South Wales than about North Wales and Powys, with which principalities he would be com-

---

[1] *Infra*, 83.
[2] *Infra*, 144.
[3] *Infra*, 133.
[4] *Infra*, 144.

paratively unacquainted. His account of the progress through South Wales occupies 110 pages, 12–121, of this volume; while the progress round North Wales to Chester is comprised in 17 pages, 122–138; and Powys is scarcely mentioned at all. But there was a very large disproportion also between the times bestowed by the crusaders on the different provinces. Archbishop Baldwin crossed the river Dyvi into North Wales[1] on the 6th or 7th of April,—we will say the 6th,—after having spent probably somewhat over four weeks in South Wales. The next day's route was from Towyn, where he had passed the night, by Barmouth, to Llanfair near Harlech;[1] and on the following day, April 8th, traversing the Traeth Mawr and Traeth Bychan estuaries, and the promontory of Lleyn, he reached Nefyn, on the west coast of Carnarvonshire. Here they passed the night, Giraldus says, on the vigil of Palm Sunday,[2] which in the year 1188 was Saturday April 9th; and I suppose therefore that they had arrived at Nefyn the evening before. Thence they proceeded, by Carnarvon, to Bangor; thence into Anglesey, and back again to Bangor;[3] thence, by Conway, to Rhuddlan castle;[4] thence, by St. Asaph, to Basingwerk; and thence to Chester, where they arrived on April 14th, the Thursday before Easter.[5] It must have been a very hard week's work: besides the long distance travelled, there had been preachings and cross-

And small time given by archbishop Baldwin.

---

[1] *Infra*, 122.

[2] After crossing Traeth Mawr, &c., "ea nocte jacuimus apud Newein, vigilia videlicet Paschæ Floridi" (*infra*, 124, l. 5). It is from this we get the dates as to this part of the progress. I am perhaps wrong in supposing that these words mean the night between April 8 and 9. If they mean the next night, then Baldwin entered North Wales on Thursday, April 7. This, however, seems scarcely to leave sufficient time for the subsequent progress and doings, until his arrival at Chester on April 14.

[3] *Infra*, 133.

[4] *Infra*, 137

[5] "Feria tertia ante Pascha, die "videlicet absolutionis," *infra*, 139, l. 8.

enlistings, near Llanfair,[1] at Nefyn,[2] at Bangor,[3] in Anglesey,[4] at Rhuddlan,[5] and perhaps other less important ones not noticed by Giraldus, and two celebrations of mass by the archbishop, in the cathedrals of Bangor and St. Asaph.[6] Thus, after a full month's work in South Wales, a hurried eight days only at the furthest was given to North Wales. It is plain that this part of the progress was rapidly hurried over, in order to keep Easter at Chester.

After the due celebration of the solemn Easter festival at Chester, the archbishop proceeded, by Whitchurch, to Oswestry; where, on the confines of Powys, he was met by the princes and people of that province, of whom some few were induced to take the cross. This seems to have been about all that he did for the crusade as regards Powys; but this province had been already well worked, we are told, by the bishop of St. Asaph.[7] There were preachings afterwards, and successful ones, at Shrewsbury,[8] but these probably would be to Englishmen rather than Welshmen.

The large proportion, therefore, of the Itinerary, which Giraldus gives to South Wales, is to be attributed to the larger labours of archbishop Baldwin in South Wales, as well as to Giraldus's better acquaintance with his own province.

The archbishop's investiture of metropolitan authority in Wales.

The immediate and main object of archbishop Baldwin's progress through Wales was no doubt what it professed to be, simply to preach the crusade; but it would seem that he was politic enough to take advantage of the opportunity of striking a strong blow in favour of his own metropolitan authority. The metro-

[1] *Infra*, 123, l. 13.
[2] *Infra*, 124, l. 20.
[3] *Infra*, 125. l. 30.
[4] *Infra*, 126.
[5] *Infra*, 137, l. 13.
[6] *Infra*, 125, l. 28; and 137, l. 15.
[7] *Infra*, 142.
[8] *Infra*, 144.

politan jurisdiction of Canterbury over the Welsh bishopricks was a thing but as of yesterday, it had not been submitted to without resistance, and was still, in great measure, rather nominal than real. Baldwin, the first archbishop of Canterbury that ever entered Wales, celebrated mass, as Giraldus is careful to tell us, at the high altar of each of the four cathedral churches of Wales; while there is no mention of his doing this in any inferior church. This would be considered the exercise, on his part, of the power of primate over the Welsh bishops; and, if not resisted, as the acknowledgment on their part of his right to exercise such power. The primate of Canterbury was in fact reading himself in, as it were, in this late addition to his province: as Giraldus says, he celebrated mass in the several cathedral churches of Wales, "tanquam in investituræ cujusdam "signum."[1] This is simply stated by Giraldus, in the first edition of the treatise, without a word of protest as to there being at all any unjust exercise of power; but it is curious that the passage is omitted in the second edition,[2] issued about the time when Giraldus was becoming the earnest champion of the independence of the Welsh church; and restored in the third edition,[2] when he had become resigned to the conviction of the utter hopelessness, under present circumstances, of any further fighting for such independence.

Value of the Description. The description of Wales, given in the second treatise of this volume, is, of course, a far more complete and correct work than the description of Ireland in the *Topographia Hibernica* of Vol. V. With the one country Giraldus was well acquainted; of the other he knew personally very little, and the information about it which he derived from others is often very incorrect. His account of the land and the people of Wales will bear very honourable

[1] *Infra*, 105, l. 1.

[2] *Infra*, 105, n. 1.

comparison with any topographical attempt that had appeared up to his time, and with any that appeared for many ages afterwards. It is a treatise certainly of great value, and as clear perhaps as the Itinerary from all vicious evil-speaking. When in a good humour, with no offence rankling in his breast, and no opponent to chastise, and with a subject in hand which did not clash with his own interests or prejudices, Giraldus could write sensibly and well and honestly; and this treatise is one of the best specimens of his best style. Knowing indeed, as we do, how wild-running a tongue he had, and how unscrupulous a pen, we may perhaps think it likely that in the second book of this treatise, *De Illaudabilibus*, where he launches out against the vices of his countrymen, he has overcoloured and perhaps overstated the bad points of the then Welsh character. But his contemporary and friend, Walter Map, himself also, it would seem, more or less of Welsh descent, gives the Welsh much the same bad character.[1] And indeed their own annals sufficiently witness against them, that what Giraldus says in their disfavour cannot have been far wide of strict truth. One of his charges against them requires, perhaps, a word of notice. He continually denounces their incestuous marriages, *i.e.*, marriages within the prohibited degrees according to Roman law. But the Welsh did not yet believe in the entire sanctity of Roman law; the old British independency of Rome had not yet died out; and they married their cousins quite as readily as we do now, and with just as small a notion as we have of any necessity of first procuring a papal dispensation.

[1] Walter Map calls the Welsh, "compatriotæ nostri Walenses," *De Nugis Curialium* (Camden Society), p. 94. He says of them, "Omnino sunt infideles ad omnes "tam ad invicem quam ad alios; ". . . . . sola scilicet improbitate "probi," *ibid.* "In rapina et furto "gloria Walensium," p. 100. "Ecce "quam stulta quamque injusta est "ira Walensium, et quam in san-"guine proni sunt," p. 103.

Good advice about Wales.

In the last three chapters of the Description,[1] where Giraldus advises the English on the one hand how to subdue effectually, and how to govern Wales wisely, and the Welsh on the other hand how to rebel successfully against the English domination, there is much of sound wisdom and political sagacity that we should hardly have looked for in a man of Giraldus's education and literary pursuits. He must have had a strong natural genius for warlike matters: it all reads like the sagacious counsel of some well-worn warrior statesman, versed and skilled alike at the council-board and in the field of battle. He insists much upon the necessity of employing light-armed troops in Welsh warfare, in preference to the heavy-armed Norman soldiers; in this recommending the course adopted by Harold,[2] when he so signally showed how the Welsh were to be subdued. Giraldus had before given very similar advice, adapted to the different circumstances, when delivering his instructions as to the subjugation of Ireland.[3] Though on a subject, as we should have thought, so foreign to him, there is perhaps no page of all his writings, where he has displayed so much good sense and sound sagacity.

Testimony of these treatises to the prophecies of Merlin Silvester.

I shall here remark that these treatises afford a strong confirmation of what I maintained in the preface to Vol. V.,[4] about the prophecies of Merlin Silvester; viz., that the rejection of them from the *Expugnatio Hibernica*,—and, I might have added, the contemptuous mention of him as a prophet,[5]—as in late manuscripts of this Irish treatise, and in Camden's text of it, was not to be

---

[1] *Infra*, 218, &c.

[2] "Haroldus, pedes ipse, cumque "pedestri turba, et levibus armis, "victuque patriæ conformi, tam "valide totam Kambriam et circuivit et transpenetravit, ut in eadem "fere mingentem ad parietem non "reliquerit," *infra*, 217.

[3] Vol. v. 395, &c.

[4] Vol. v., Preface, xli, &c.

[5] Vol. v. 339, n. 1.

ascribed to Giraldus himself. The third edition of the Itinerary, as we have seen, was not published before about the beginning of the year 1214, and the second edition of the Description about a year after that. These not only cite, in full faith, two of Silvester's prophecies;[1] but in the Description he is defended as a true prophet, though "amens factus" when he uttered his prophecies, by the example in Holy Scripture of Saul at Naioth.[2] It seems certain, therefore, that up to 1215 Giraldus had lost no faith in Merlin Silvester as a prophet: it is most extremely unlikely that during the few after years of his life he should have completely altered his opinion, or that he should have had any potential pressure from the then ruling powers, compelling him, for safety sake, to repudiate Silvester's vaticinal authority, and to expunge his prophecies, in a last edition, from the Irish treatise.

Supra, xxxviii.

But after all, may it not possibly have been that he may have seen the wisdom of doing this, a year or two before 1215? The cruel fate of the poor hermit, Peter of Pontefract, and his son,[3] in Ascension-tide 1213, was a very significant warning of the danger of indulging in the matter of prophecy. But there could have been little chance of John taking dangerous offence at prophecies about his father, or himself, or Irish affairs, relating to events of some thirty years back or more,—prophecies, too, obscurely bearing upon John himself, and to be interpreted as much in his favour as otherwise: poor Peter of Pontefract's prophecy was a very different thing. Still, I suppose it may be possible, if Giraldus was in 1213 engaged in a new issue of the *Expugnatio Hibernica*,—of which, however, there is not the least evidence, and very great unlikelihood,—that he may have thought it safer and better to sup-

---

[1] *Infra*, 62, 196.
[2] *Infra*, 199.
[3] Wendover, iii. 240, 255.

press for the present the prophecies of Silvester. Before 1215, John had something far more serious than a prophet's words, demanding all his attention, and crying aloud for all his vengeance,—the drawn swords of his barons, threatening to drive him from his kingdom. And so now again, in the new edition of the Description of Wales, Giraldus, with all his heart on the barons' side, would drop all fear of John, and resume his full expression of confidence in Silvester's vaticinal authority. My full belief however is, until the evidence of early manuscripts yet to be found shall prove me wrong, that the subtractions, as in late manuscripts of the *Expugnatio Hibernica*, were never made by Giraldus; and therefore that, in placing them without hesitation in my text of that treatise, I have but given what he wrote, and never repudiated, and finally left to us.

§ (4). Reception of these Treatises.

I can say nothing as to the reception of these treatises by Giraldus's contemporaries, nor can I give any history of them for a hundred years, or thereabouts, after his death. He tells us nothing himself of any praise or dispraise, nor do I know of any use made of them, or any mention whatever of them, by any subsequent writer of the thirteenth century.

These treatises largely used by Higden.

Higden, however, writing in the first quarter of the fourteenth century,[1] gives, in the thirty-eighth chapter of the first book of the *Polychronicon*,[2] a long account of Wales and its people, derived almost wholly from these treatises. He had just before given, in chapters 32–36,[3] a much longer account of Ireland and its men and its marvels,

[1] The first edition of the *Polychronicon* ends with the year 1327.

[2] Vol. i. 394, &c. (Babington).

[3] *Ibid.*, 328–382.

condensed from the Irish Topography of our author.[1] This is in his usual plain prose. But, why I cannot say, when entering on Wales, he breaks out into merry rhyme. Was it that Wales, to the monk of Chester a near but little-known land, a subject of mystery but of much talk and curiosity, seemed to him worthy of poetry rather than prose?

In a rhyming description of Wales.

Which wrongly attributed to Walter Map.

This poetical description is included by Mr. Wright in his volume of the Latin Poems of Walter Map, where it is called *Cambriæ Epitome*.[2] He says it "is attributed to "Walter Mapes in the old lists of his works," but adds that it "has been preserved by having been inserted in "Ralph Higden's *Polychronica*." Walter Map, for what I know, may have written a metrical description of Wales; but the "old lists" must be close upon his own time, and of undoubted authenticity, and most clearly identifying this description of Wales with his description, before I could possibly believe it could possibly have been written by him. It is perfectly certain, it seems to me, that he could not have written it. There is more than one passage in it, additional to Giraldus, which tells of a time long after Map was dead and buried; of the results of Edward I.'s conquests and rule, not of the

[1] In my preface to vol. v., p. lxxviii, by a bit of stupid ignorant carelessness, I attributed this summary of the Description of Ireland to Bromton, with no suspicion of his having taken it bodily from Higden. As generally with him, he repeats word for word, and chapter for chapter, with no acknowledgment of from whom he is transcribing. In this case, indeed, by using Higden's words, who always honestly gives his authority, Bromton professes to be condensing directly from Giraldus's Topography. Twysden, 1071, l. 60.

[2] Camden Society, 1841, p. 131, &c. Mr. Babington does not seem to have been aware of Mr. Wright's previous editing. The manuscripts used by the one are different from those used by the other: but the two texts agree very closely,—a fact creditable alike to manuscripts and to editors.

state of Wales under Henry II., or Richard, or John,—for instance, where the rhymester speaks of its now being in vain for the Welsh to rebel, because their woods of refuge were cut down, and the maritime parts well fortified with castles;[1] and again, where he describes the changed habits of the Welsh, and their gradually becoming more like the English.[2] Moreover, if we compare these additional passages of the poetry with what Higden says in prose, after describing Edward's expedition into Wales in 1294, we shall see that the statements of the poetry so closely correspond with those of the prose, as almost necessarily to point to the same author.[3] At all events it seems certain that this rhyming description of Wales must have been written in Higden's time, if not by Higden himself; and there is every reason for supposing that Higden himself was the author.

These Welsh treatises, with the Irish Topography and the *De Principis Instructione*,[4] would now be well

---

[1] P. 404 (Babington), lines 3–6.

[2] P. 410, l. 7, to p. 412, l. 2.

[3] The

"Sed frustra his temporibus;
"Succisis jam nemoribus,
"Cum sint circa maritima
"Firmata castra plurima,"

of p. 404, is very close to the following, as in Higden under 1294:" "Quo in tempore succisa sunt nemora in Wallia, quæ in tempore "bellico præstabant indigenis latibula; firmataque sunt castra circa "loca maritima," Twysden, 2471, l. 40. Compare also what follows directly afterwards under 1294,—"A quo tempore guerræ in Wallia "quieverunt: Wallenses pene Anglorum more victitant, thesaurum "congregant, rerum dampna formi-"dant,"—with the more expanded rhythmical version of the same statements at p. 410, &c.

[4] In the second chapter of Lib. I. of the *Polychronicon*, Higden gives a list of the various writers whom he was using as authorities, amongst whom is, "Giraldus Cambrensis, "qui descripsit Topographiam Hi-"berniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et "Vitam regis Henrici secundi sub "triplici distinctione." Vol. i. 24 (Babington). He does not mention the Description of Wales, though he uses it largely: no doubt in his copy it was bound up in one volume after the Itinerary, which therefore served to express both. His "Vita "regis Henrici" is the *De Principis Instructione*.

known, so far as Higden's large use of them extends, after the publication of the *Polychronicon*. I am able to name no other writer, of the fourteenth or fifteenth centuries, who makes independent use of them. Up to the sixteenth century, if we may judge by the difference in the number of manuscripts remaining to us of an earlier date, the Description would seem to have been but little valued in comparison with the Itinerary. And to this paucity, no doubt, of earlier manuscripts of the Description, is owing the large number of sixteenth century copies of this treatise which now exist, rather than to its being then more in request than the Itinerary, of which there must have been comparatively many manuscripts.

§ (5). Printed Editions of these Treatises.

Powel's edition, in 1585.

These treatises first appeared in print[1] in the year 1585, edited, with prefaces and notes, by the then eminent Welsh antiquary David Powel. The dedication, to Sir Philip Sidney, is dated from Ruabon,[2] 3rd kal. July of that year. In it he says that an "exemplar pervetustum" of the Itinerary had been placed in his hands for publication by Sir Philip Sidney's father;[3] that he had collated this with two other copies, one supplied to him by the lord treasurer Burleigh, the other by William Awbrey; and that from the three he had formed his text.[4] One of these manuscripts of the Itinerary must

His Itinerary.

[1] In one volume with the Epitome of Geoffrey of Monmouth by Ponticus Virunnius; "Londini, apud "Edmundum Bollifantum, impen- "sis Henrici Denhami et Radulphi "Nuberii, 1585."

[2] Ruabon in Denbighshire, of which place Powel was vicar.

[3] Sir Henry Sidney, lord president of the marches of Wales, to whom Powel was chaplain (Williams' *Eminent Welshmen*, 410), and whom he so highly lauds in this preface.

[4] "Exemplar pervetustum ab eo "(Sir Henry Sidney) mihi ad pub- "licandum commissum est. Quod

have been a copy of the second edition, dedicated to
Supra, xi. bishop Hugh of Lincoln, as in (Hc.); the readings, and peculiar additions and omissions of which Powel often follows.[1] Another must have been a copy of the third edition, agreeing very closely with that given us in
Supra, xvii. (Rd.)[2] His text of the Itinerary, as reprinted in Camden's volume,[3] is very inaccurate, and most uncritical. He has not a word about the variations of text in the

"cum duobus aliis exemplaribus "contuli, quorum unum a claris-"simo viro D. Gul. Cecilio barone "Burghlensi, summo Angliæ the-"saurario, magno rei literariæ "patrono, et hujus reipublicæ "consiliario sapientissimo vigilan-"tissimoque, alterum a Gulielmo "Awbrey L. doctore, curiæque "audientiæ Cantuariensis judice "integerrimo accepi. Quorum om-"nium facta collatione, hanc edi-"tionem paravi." Camden, 816, l. 42.

[1] For instances of addition, see 74 *infra*, n. 1, where the words "provolutus et" are not in the first edition, and not in the third, but are in the second edition and in Powel's text; and again, 84, n. 4, where the same is the case with the words "apud castellum Radulphi." For instances of omission, see 57, n. 2, where the words "sicut forma "præferebat," of the third edition, are not in the second and not in Powel; and 130, n. 2, as to the words "filii Theodori;" and again, 136, n. 4, as to a clause about the fabulous eagle of Snowdon. The table of chapters, moreover, in the first and third editions, but not in the second as in (Hc.), are also not given by Powel, *infra*, 9. Less conclusive instances, where Powel follows the verbal readings of the second edition, in preference to those of the first and third, are very numerous.

[2] With one or two exceptions, Powel always gives the additions peculiar to (Rd.). For instance, see 44 *infra*, notes 1 and 4; 91, n. 2; 107, n. 2; 137, n. 2; 151, n. 4. Sometimes he so closely follows the readings of (Rd.), clause after clause, and page after page almost, that one is led to suspect that this may have been the very manuscript of the third edition that Powel used.

[3] I can only speak of Powel's text, as represented in the reprint in Camden's volume. I ought, perhaps, to have used Powel's own edition of 1585, instead of Camden's reprint of it in 1602. But Powel's volume is rare, and little known: the reprint in Camden's volume has been always the authority for these Welsh treatises. Moreover, to tell the honest truth, I had Camden's volume in my hands, and tried in vain to procure a copy of Powel's book. It is very possible that many of the blunders of Camden's text are due to the foreign editors and printers, and not to Powel's original. I cannot say that this is or is not the case: I have but very cursorily compared the two volumes.

manuscripts which he says he collated; and, so far as we can judge, adhered to no principle whatever in forming his text; sometimes following one manuscript, sometimes another, without any apparent reason whatever for his preference.

In his *Admonitio ad Lectorem*,[1] Powel says, that he once purposed to omit from his edition all the fables and absurd miracles; that his friends dissuaded him from this; and that he had consequently published his author in his integrity.[2] This is not exactly true. He gives, indeed, all the fables and miracles; but he omits a large portion of the last chapter of the second book, about St. Thomas of Canterbury, his righteous resistance to the insular tyranny and oppressions of the English sovereign, and his triumphant martyrdom.[3] This may have been very repulsive to Powel's good Protestantism; his soul, perhaps, sickened against lending his hand to transmit it to posterity; or it may have been but prudent policy, in the happy days of good queen Bess, to suppress matter so savouring of treason. But in any case it was not the part of an honest editor to do this, not only without notice, but while positively declaring that he had suppressed nothing at all.[4]

Omission of matter about St. Thomas of Canterbury.

Powel's Description of Wales; first book only.

Powel says not a word as to what manuscripts he used in his first book of the Description. They must have been

[1] Camden, 818.

[2] "Satius esse duxi illum (viz. "auctorem) integrum cum omni- "bus' suis ἀτόποις in lucem emit- "tere." *Ibid*, l. 18.

[3] *Infra* 149, n. 2; 150, n. 4. In the latter case, the portion omitted by Powel is in the third edition only, not in the first or second; but in the former case, in all the editions.

[4] Hooker, about the same time, omits a chapter about St. Thomas of Canterbury, in his translation of the *Expugnatio Hibernica*. But he honestly tells us that he was omitting it, because "it tendeth "wholly in extolling of one who "was a froward and obstinate "traitour against his sovereign." Vol. v. 259, n. 2.

very bad ones, if he at all decently executed the duties of an editor: his version of this treatise is fully as inaccurate as that of the Itinerary, or even somewhat more so.

It would seem as if, in two or three cases, he must have wilfully altered his author's text. One curious instance of this is his version of a passage where Demetia is spoken of as a portion only of South Wales.[1] It is plain, from his notes, that Powel took Demetia as the name of the whole principality of South Wales: it is the word that he generally if not always uses when speaking of this principality. But in however much wider a sense this word may have been used in earlier times, it is perfectly clear that Giraldus, with other Welsh writers of about his time,[2] uses it for Dyved, one of the six provinces only that were included in South Wales. In Powel's version of the passage, by an insertion in one place and an omission in another, the text of Giraldus is altered so as to concord with his own wider acceptation of Demetia.[3]

In another instance, when enumerating the rivers of Merionethshire, Giraldus very clearly, however incorrectly, applies the names Traeth Mawr and Traeth Bychan to the rivers running into these inlets of the sea. This seems to have puzzled Powel; and in his endeavour to make sense of what seemed to him nonsense, he makes these Traeths to be at the outlet of the river Maw,[4] that is, at Barmouth, instead of some twelve or fifteen miles further north.

---

[1] *Infra*, 166, l. 16; Camden, 882, l. 45.

[2] The *Annal. Camb.* for instance. See Glossary, *infra*, 243.

[3] Higden, in his metrical abstract of Giraldus on Wales, seems to use Demetia in the same wide sense for all South Wales. He speaks of the river Dyvi, Tiwy he erroneously calls it, as dividing North Wales from South Wales, and then adds (*Polychronicon*, i. 400, l. 3):

"Austrina pars Demetia,
"Secunda Venedotia."

[4] *Infra*, 176, l. 4; Camden, 886, l. 9.

There are, perhaps, one or two other minor instances worth mentioning, where Powel seems to have altered his author's text. In a quotation from Cæsar, given probably from memory, at any rate incorrectly,—as very usual with Giraldus,—Powel supplies some missing words, and gives Cæsar's words correctly.[1] In another instance he omits two lines of English,[2] because, perhaps, unintelligible to him, in the bad corrupt manuscripts, or manuscript[3] perhaps, which he was using.

Second book of the Description ignored by Powel.

Powel printed the first book only of the Description: he gives not the least hint of his having been aware that there was such a thing as a second book of this treatise in existence, or ever had been. It seems simply impossible that he could have been ignorant of its existence: there is no manuscript to be found, which gives the first book without the second. I can only suppose that he was so patriotic a Welshman, as to refuse to perpetuate in print the *De Illaudabilibus* of the second book. How he can have reconciled his conscience, in this omission, with his assertion of having given his author in full integrity, will not be a point of so very much wonder, to any who know what was sometimes the mode of editing, and the fashion of reckless assertion, in the sixteenth century. It was a time of violent prejudices and passions, when even an editor of an old historical writer could hardly do his work honestly. But with whatever allowances we may wish to make, this ignoring of the second book of the Description seems to me bad inexcusable dishonesty, worse even than the omission about St. Thomas of Canterbury in the Itinerary.

---

[1] *Infra*, 185, n. 6.

[2] *Infra*, 188, n. 3.

[3] He tells us of the three manuscripts which he used for the Itinerary. As he says nothing as to what he used for the Description, he had perhaps only one manuscript; and a very bad one it must have been.

Reprint of Powel in Camden's volume, in 1602.

The reprint of Powel's edition of these treatises, in Camden's *Anglica, Hibernica,* &c., appeared at Frankfort in 1602 and 1603.[1] It is a simple reprint of Powel's text and prefaces and notes, without a word of remark from Camden or any one else; so simple a one, that at the end is repeated an *Addenda,* belonging to the treatise of Ponticus Virunnius,[2] which occupies the first part of Powel's volume, but forms no part of Camden's. It is this reprint of Powel's text that I have used in preparing this volume for the press; and I therefore cite it, in my notes, as *Camden.*

Supra, xxxii.

Second book of the Description printed by Wharton, in 1691.

As I have already had occasion to say, the second book of the Description, rejected and ignored by Powel, remained unprinted for more than a hundred years after his volume was published, until at length it appeared in Wharton's *Anglia Sacra* in 1691.[3] Wharton, marvellous a scholar as he was,—perhaps about the most marvellous in the whole range of English literature,—yet does not shine much, if at all, above other sixteenth and seventeenth century editors of the historical works of medieval writers. He edited badly and uncritically, and often very loosely, omitting often what seemed to him unimportant; and, far worse, altering or adding sometimes a word or two, where he did not understand his author, or thought he could improve upon him.

The amount of literary work done by Wharton, as to be seen in his printed works and his manuscript collections, is something most marvellous for so short a life as

---

[1] "Francofurti, impensis Claudii "Marnii, et hæredum Johannis "Aubrii." Some copies have the date 1602, others have 1603. I believe they do not differ in any other respect, but I cannot pretend to have compared them. The copy which I have used is a 1602 one.

[2] Camden, 898.

[3] *Anglia Sacra,* ii. 447, &c.

his was.[1] It seems simply incredible and impossible that all of it, or even very much of it, can have been actually done by himself; and in fact we know that he employed largely the helping hands of others; and it is probably in very great measure owing to these less scholarly assistants, that the text of the medieval authors whom he publishes is often so utterly unworthy of such a scholar as he was himself.[2]

This second book of Giraldus's Description of Wales is, perhaps, one of the least badly edited of all the treatises comprised in the Anglia Sacra. Wharton tells us that he used two manuscripts; one of which, in the Westminster library, was a copy of the first edition dedicated to Hugh of Lincoln (he does not seem to have been aware of the earlier dedication to archbishop

---

[1] Wharton died in 1694, when only thirty years old. Professor Stubbs, well acquainted with his "unrivalled manuscript collections "at Lambeth," as well as his printed works, speaks of Wharton as "having done, for the elucidation "of English church history, itself "but one of the branches of study "in which he was the most eminent "scholar of his time, more than "any one before or since." *Episcopal Succession*, Preface, iv.

[2] See what Mr. Luard says of the way in which the Winchester Annals are edited in the Anglia Sacra; *Annales Monastici* (of this series), ii. Preface, ix and x.

In Giraldus's Life of archbishop Geoffrey of York, printed in the *Anglia Sacra* (ii. 375, &c.), from a manuscript at C. C. Coll. Cambridge, the ordinary contraction for "vel," the letter *l* with a stroke across the middle, is never once rightly read. Generally it is taken for "et;" but in some cases, where this would make worse nonsense than usual, we have "aut" instead. That this could have been done by Wharton is simply and absurdly impossible. From another manuscript in the same library, Wharton prints in the *Anglia Sacra* (ii. 408, &c.) the *Legenda S. Remigii*, &c., with which are intermixed two or three small fractions of another distinct treatise of Giraldus, a Life and Miracles of St. Hugh, contained in the same volume as the Legend of Remigius. It seems to me clear that Wharton could never possibly have ever so cursorily examined these manuscripts, even if he ever saw them at all. The Life of Geoffrey, and the Legend of Remigius, as they appear in the *Anglia Sacra*, must be due wholly to unworthy scribes employed by him to copy the C. C. Coll. manuscripts.

Hubert;) and the other was a copy of a much enlarged second edition, dedicated to archbishop Stephen Langton, in Domitian A. 1 of the Cotton library.[1] The Westminster manuscript, as I have before said, is unhappily lost; the Cotton manuscript, now in the British Museum, still retains the same press-mark, and gives the valuable copies upon which the text of the Welsh treatises of this volume is mainly founded, manuscript (D.) of my notation.

Supra, xxii.

Supra, xv.

The differences of the two editions are, in a way, noticed by Wharton, but in a most imperfect way. In four instances he notes in his margin verbal variations,[2] and in four instances again, notes in like manner the absence or addition of matter. The four verbal variations may be correctly noted, for what I can say; we have not the Westminster manuscript to compare with Wharton's text; but in the cases of difference of matter which he notes, one is certainly wrong,[3] two others have the marginal reference misplaced almost undoubtedly,[4] and only one seems really correct.[5] He never takes

[1] "Duplicem operis sui de De-" scriptione Walliæ editionem Gi-" raldus adornavit. Utraque usus" sum. Prima extat in Bibliothecæ" Westmonasteriensis codice, et" Hugoni Lincolniensi episcopo" nuncupatur. Secunda, quæ mul-" toties auctior est, Stephano Can-" tuariensi archiepiscopo dedicatur," et in Bibliotheca Cottoniana Do-" mitian A. 1 habetur." *Anglia Sacra*, ii., Preface, xxii.

[2] See *infra*, 206, n. 1 and n. 2; 223, n. 2; and 224, n. 7.

[3] *Infra*, 208, n. 6, where he notes in the margin that something is wanting in the Cotton MS. (D.), though nothing whatever is omitted.

[4] *Infra*, 216, n. 7; 224, n. 12. In both cases, Wharton's note that something was not in the Westminster MS. would have been perfectly right, according to the first edition as in (V.), (N.), if placed two or three lines lower in the margin. As it is, he makes it appear that passages of the treatise as first dedicated to archbishop Hubert were afterwards omitted, and without any conceivable reason of omission, in the copy presented to bishop Hugh, though again appearing in the new edition dedicated to archbishop Langton. This is very unlikely. No doubt whatever, it seems to me, Wharton's marginal notes are misplaced.

[5] *Infra*, 208, n. 9.

notice of an addition of a word, or of two or three words;[1] he only notes the addition of a section, or of a considerable clause. Of these, indeed, his four notes comprise every instance that he could note; the only two other instances of such addition in this second book are quotations, which he no doubt purposely omitted from his text, and therefore could not refer to in his margin.[2] The additions of a word or two, which he passes over in silence, are very many; and his four verbal variations are a very small fraction of the real number. He often follows, without the slightest apparent reason, the readings of the first edition as in the Westminster manuscript, in preference to those of Giraldus's after revision as given in manuscript (D.). He seems, in fact, in quite as unmeaning a way as that of Powel in the Itinerary, sometimes to follow one manuscript, sometimes the other. His text generally is taken with tolerable correctness from one or the other manuscript.[3]

Supra, liv, &c.

Omissions, &c. in Wharton's text.

As to undoubtedly intentional omissions, there are only two or three in-

---

[1] In one instance, 223, n. 4, there is a whole line,—and an important one, as declaring Giraldus's personal knowledge of what he was stating,—added in the second edition, and not noticed by Wharton. But in this instance he omits the line himself, following the first edition, and ignoring the second.

[2] *Infra*, 212, n. 2; 215, n. 1.

[3] There are, however, some bad blunders. For instance, "gente "ipsorum" instead of "gestis "eorum," *infra*, 208, n. 7; "facile "fœdabiles" instead of "difficile "sedabiles," 212, n. 1; "tanto "præindulgent" instead of "tanto-"pere indulgent," 217, n. 2; "fru-"menti" instead of "ferri," 218, n. 4; "insubacta" instead of "vi "subacta," 224, n. 4. It may be that the Westminster MS. was a late and bad one; so far as I know, there is no evidence as to what was its date or value; or it may have been an early one, by the same hand as the MS. of the Irish Topography of our author still remaining in the library at Westminster (vol. v., Preface, xvi), and if so, it would still be a very bad and incorrect one. But however bad a manuscript it may have been, there can be thence no excuse for Wharton's blunders, with the excellent MS. (D.) in his hands.

stances in this treatise, and these of quotations.[1] There are several other omissions, of a word or two,[2] or of a line or two,[3] which must be ascribed, I think, to mere carelessness. Of Wharton's worst faults as an editor, viz. alterations of or additions to his author's text, this treatise presents only two or three instances, and these comparatively very innocent ones.[4] No doubt, generally, in cases of omission, Wharton is himself to be blamed. He seems systematically to have omitted whatever seemed to him unworthy of publication. But very much, I must again say, of all the bad and uncritical and untruthful rendering of his author's texts, so far as he gives them, I fully believe to be due to the assistants whom he employed. I cannot imagine that much of it can possibly be justly laid upon Wharton himself.

Sir R. C. Hoare's reprint of these treatises, in 1806.

In the year 1806, Sir Richard Colt Hoare published, in a handsome quarto volume, a reprint of these Welsh treatises, from the texts of Camden and Wharton; and in the same year, in two fully as handsome quarto volumes, an English translation of them, enveloped in a vast mass of notes and disquisitions on Welsh antiquities, history,

[1] *Infra*, 214, n. 5, and 216, n. 8. In these cases Wharton stops abruptly with an &c., intimating that there was more in the author's text which he did not think it necessary to give.

[2] *Infra*, 216, n. 5; 218, n. 3; and 220, n. 2.

[3] *Infra*, 219, n. 1; 221, n. 3; and 222, n. 1.

[4] As to alterations of the text, instead of "concordabit scriptura" (*infra*, 209, n. 1), Wharton has "concordabunt scripta;" as if his scribe,—it is impossible to attribute this alteration to Wharton himself,—thought that *scriptura* could only mean Holy Scripture, and must be a wrong reading. In another instance (*infra*, 226, n. 4), instead of "fieri" Wharton has "esse," perhaps the more correct word, in the place, to a classical Latinist. Of additions to the text there are also only two instances in this treatise, in both of which, to a statement of Giraldus that something was to be read of in history, Wharton adds the words "in Romana Historia." *Infra*, 210, n. 1, and 215, n. 3.

topography, biography, &c., &c.,[1] very much of which is utterly extraneous to Giraldus and his Welsh treatises. In the case of his Latin text, he seems to have purposed something better than a mere reprint, as he certainly examined, in some way, several of the manuscripts of Giraldus's works in the British Museum, and at Lambeth, Oxford, and Cambridge.[2] And, in fact, in two or three instances he gives, from manuscript authority, a reading different from that of Camden.[3]

---

[1] His table of contents is as follows:

"Vol. i. The Life of Giraldus " de Barri, with an account of his " manuscripts at Oxford, Cambridge, Lambeth, and in the " British Museum - - page ix.

" An Introduction to the History " of Cambria, prior to the date of " the Itinerary in 1188; in which " the several campaigns of Julius " Cæsar, Plautius, Claudius, Ostorius, Suetonius, Frontinus, and " Agricola, are described and explained by maps. An account of " the *Legio secunda Augusta*, and " the *Legio vicesima valens victrix*, " stationed in Wales, with various " Roman inscriptions relating to " them. A description of the Roman cities, stations, and roads in " Wales; the course of Offa's and " Wat's dykes, &c. &c. - p. lxxiii.

"The Itinerary of Baldwin, arch-" bishop of Canterbury, through " Wales in the year 1188, o the " service of the Holy Cross; written " in Latin by Giraldus de Barri, " and now for the first time pub-" lished in English; with numerous " annotations describing the ancient " and present state of Wales, its " castles, abbies, scenery, &c. - p. 1.

"Vol. ii. The second Book of " the Itinerary of Baldwin through " Wales - - - - page 1.

" An account of Owain Cyveilioc " prince of Powys, with a new " version of his celebrated poem, " called the Hirlas, or Drinking " Horn, and his circuits through " Wales - - - - p. 211.

" The Description of Wales by " Giraldus de Barri, in two Books p. 253.

" A Supplement, giving a short " account of all those places omitted " by Giraldus in his tour, and which " are worthy of remark; with hints " to landscape painters and archi-" tects - - - - p. 365.

" The progress of architecture, " from the time of William the " Conqueror to the sixteenth cen-" tury; illustrated by designs se-" lected from examples in South " Wales - - - - p. 411.

" A list of publications relating " to Wales - - - p. 433."

[2] In the Preface to his Translation, vol. i., lxviii, &c., he gives an account of these manuscripts, and speaks of them as having " fallen " under his own observation."

[3] See vol. i. 69 (note 2) of the Translation, where he prefers the reading of a passage as in Giraldus's third edition, to that of the first and

Still, as a rule, his text is simply a reprint of the earlier text.

As to the English translation, we must allow that it would be no easy matter for any one to make a good translation of Giraldus from such a text as Camden's. But Sir R. C. Hoare's is very far from being a good one: it is very generally much less close to the original than it ought to be, and it is often sadly incorrect, even where Camden gives him the right Latin.[1] He seems to have been scarcely versed enough in medieval Latin, to be able always to understand his author.

This translation has been reprinted, I believe with most if not all of its faults, in a volume of Mr. Bohn's Antiquarian Library, in conjunction with a translation of the Irish treatises of Giraldus.

---

second editions, as given by Camden (*infra*, 38, n. 5); after referring, he says, "to the various manuscript " copies of Giraldus in the British " Museum." Again, at vol. ii. 290 (note), he says of the word "Peeh," *i.e.* the Derbyshire Peak, that " on " referring to the manuscript in the " British Museum, he found it spelt " *Peake*." It occurs in a part of the Description that is in two manuscripts only of the British Museum, (D.) and (Rd.); in the latter of which it is spelt *Peake* (*infra*, 182, n. 2); though (Rd.), Bib. Reg. 13 B. xii., is not one of the manuscripts which he enumerates as having fallen under his own observation.

[1] For instance, "ad uxorem illico " accedens, eamque cognoscens, . . " . . eadem hora puerum genuit" (*infra*, 132), is strangely mistranslated, "going home and telling his " wife," &c., ii. 108. Again, speaking of the abundance of deer, &c., in England, Giraldus says that a herd of stags had been known to trample dogs and men to death; " In tanta multitudine . . . abun- " dant, ut . . . nostris diebus, canes " corumque duces in impetu nume- " rositatis suæ ad interitum cervi " suppeditaverint" (*infra*, 182, l. 3); Latin as plain and clear as well may be, so far as I can see. Sir R. C. Hoare translates, "Stags, &c., are so " abundant, that . . . when pursued " by the hounds and hunters, they " contributed by their numbers to " their own destruction," ii. 290. If Sir Walter Scott had written Waverley a few years earlier than he did, or if Sir R. C. Hoare had translated Giraldus a few years later, the stag-hunt chapter of that novel would perhaps have prevented so gross a misapprehension of plain words.

There would be little difficulty in multiplying instances of bad translation, but I think the above two are enough to justify what I have said in my text.

§ (6). Quotations in these Treatises.

I have endeavoured, in most instances, to verify the quotations of Giraldus; no easy matter often, with an author who had studied ancient writers so extensively, and was so fond of quoting, and quoted often so loosely; a matter that, to be at all fully done, would require the continual ready use of a large library. Far out of reach as I am of anything of the sort, able only at intervals to lay my hands on the necessary books, it is no wonder that I have often failed in endeavouring to track him up to his source.

Giraldus's mode of quoting.

Moreover, Giraldus quotes often in a way that renders it very difficult not unfrequently, under any circumstances, to trace his authority. It would seem that he must have often quoted from memory. If so, he must have had a marvellous memory, though it sometimes somewhat failed him. More frequently, perhaps, than otherwise, he gives the words of his original more or less incorrectly; very frequently he does not name his author; and in some cases attributes a passage to a wrong author. Thus, close upon one another, he ascribes to Seneca a passage of Sidonius Apollinaris and a passage of Cicero;[1] and in another instance, fathers upon Solomon a passage that elsewhere he gives to Jerome.[2] Sometimes, again, he gives only the substance of the author he is quoting, especially in case of quotation from the fathers. Under such circumstances it is almost hopeless, to any ordinary scholar, to attempt to verify always his quotations,—for

[1] *Infra*, 164, n. 1 and n. 3; and vol. v. 213, n. 2. I cannot positively say, however, that these passages are not in Seneca as well.

[2] To Solomon, *infra*, 75, n. 1; to Jerome, vol. v. 191, n. 6. Directly afterward, in the *Top. Hib.*, 191, n. 7, he ascribes to Solomon a passage not to be found in the Vulgate. At p. 212 *infra*, he ascribes to the prophet Malachi a verse of Micah.

instance, in the imperfectly-indexed many massive tomes of Sts. Augustine and Jerome.

His wide knowlege of ancient authors.

How extensive was his acquaintance with classical and later profane writers, and with the works of the fathers and after Christian writers, will be seen at once by turning to the word *Quotations* in my Index; and many of the writers there enumerated, the classical Latin poets more especially, Horace, Ovid, Virgil, Lucan, &c., he seems to have had always ready at his fingers' ends. To the long list in my index, several other writers whom he used may be added from the Irish treatises of vol. v.,[1] and many more are quoted in others of his works.

His intimate acquaintance with older literature appears, perhaps more strongly than from actual quotations, in the way in which he often adapts, unconsciously almost it would seem, the thoughts and expressions of ancient writers. Such adaptations of this sort as I have happened to recognize, I think I have never noticed, either in this volume or in vol. v., except, perhaps, in one or two instances which bear upon the text or its meaning. I believe I have felt that the few such instances that I could recognize and note, would have been a very small fraction of the number that ought to be equally recognized and noted; and that I had better not expose my now old and very rusty small knowledge of classical or other ancient writers, by giving an odd instance or two, where I ought perhaps to be giving as many hundreds. Any real old Latin scholar, who might condescend to peruse Giraldus's medieval Latin, would be constantly finding how readily and naturally the sayings of the early writers, more or less closely, evidently guided his pen. His quotations from Holy Scripture are very numerous; far more so, however, in

[1] Viz., Cassiodorus, Gregory Nazianzen, Isidore, Palladius, and the *Scholastica Historia* of Peter Comestor.

others of his works than in the treatises of the present volume; and here, again, the scriptural student would see how continually he uses scriptural language, though not actually quoting, and how exact his knowledge of Holy Scripture must have been.

His quotations from himself.

There is one writer, not an old one however, whose works he held in especial admiration, whose exquisite scholastic pen he looked upon as unrivalled, and whom he never wearies of quoting from. This writer is Giraldus himself. In the treatises of this volume he quotes his Irish Topography five times by name,[1] and three times without name;[2] the Expugnation twice by name,[3] and six times without name;[4] and, again, in the Description of Wales, quotes three times from the Itinerary.[5] Several of these are large repetitions rather than simple quotations. In one instance, again, he quotes some of his own precious poetry as that of a "Quidam sapiens."[6] Some of his later works, the *De Invectionibus*, the *De Rebus*, &c., the *De Jure*, &c., the *De Principis Instructione*, are in large measure mere repetitions one from the other or from his earlier treatises, while the *Symbolum Electorum* is professedly a collection of the fairest flowers and most precious gems from the works he had already published.[7] No doubt every one who has ever put pen to paper, and published, has believed more or less confidently in the worth of what he was giving to the world's admiration; but I think no equal case of multitudinous repeating from himself, as the most excellent of all writers, and the most worthy to be followed,—such, it is plain, Giraldus considered

---

[1] *Infra*, 26, 38, 114, 130, 186.

[2] *Infra*, 27, n. 1; 141; 224, n. 10. Very probably, here, and under n. 4 *infra*, there are minor instances of the same sort that have escaped my notice.

[3] *Infra*, 107, 138.

[4] *Infra*, 99, 100, 162, 205, 219, 222.

[5] *Infra*, 170, 171, 173.

[6] *Infra*, 51, n. 3; and vol. i. 355.

[7] See the Preface to the *Symbolum Electorum*, vol. i. 199.

himself,—is to be found in the whole compass of authordom. Vain, and proud of their productions, as many authors may have been, no other ever attained to the exquisite vanity of Giraldus, to his unassailable faith in his own supreme excellencies as a writer.

Collation of the pages of Camden's *Anglica, Hibernica, &c.*, and Wharton's *Anglia Sacra, II.*, with those of the present Volume.

Camden.	Present Volume.	Camden.	Present Volume.	Camden.	Present Volume.
818	3	844	74	870	133
819	5	845	77	871	135
820	12	846	78	872	136
821	15	847	80	873	138
822	18	848	82	874	139
823	20	849	84	875	142
824	23	850	87	876	143
825	26	851	89	877	146
826	30	852	92	878	148
827	33	853	96	879	153
828	36	854	98	880	155
829	37	855	100	881	161
830	37	856	103	882	164
831	40	857	106	883	167
832	43	858	109	884	169
833	47	859	110	885	170
834	48	860	111	886	173
835	52	861	114	887	178
836	55	862	116	888	182
837	57	863	119	889	185
838	60	864	122	890	188
839	61	865	122	891	191
840	64	866	125	892	194
841	67	867	127	893*	195
842	68	868	130	894*	198
843	71	869	133	895*	201

Wharton.	Present Volume.	Wharton.	Present Volume.	Wharton.	Present Volume.
447	205	450	211	453	220
448	207	451	214	454	223
449	209	452	218	455	226

* These pages of Camden are wrongly numbered 889, 890, and 891, over again.

In the following pages, as in Vol. v., in dividing the text into sections I have rigidly followed the guidance of the manuscripts. The good manuscripts generally agree very closely in this point; where they differ, I have, in this volume, followed D., the excellent manuscript Domitian A. 1, upon which I have based my text. In Vol v. in like manner I followed R., Bib. Reg. 13 B. viii. I omitted to mention this in Vol. v.

The 56, 56*b*, 57, 57*b*, &c., &c., placed in the margins, are the numberings of the folios of manuscript D.

In recording in the notes the various readings, I have placed the manuscripts in the order of the several editions issued by Giraldus, as described above in the Preface: viz.,—

Of the 1st edition of the *Itinerarium*, the manuscripts R., B., F., described *supra*, x.

Of the 2nd edition, Hc., *supra*, xi.

Of the 3rd, D. and Rd., *supra*, xv, xvii.

I have seldom thought it necessary to record the readings of F., a transcript of R.

So again, in the *Descriptio;* of the 1st edition the manuscripts V., N., described *supra*, xxii, xxiii.

And of the 2nd edition, D., Rd., as under the 3rd edition of the Itinerary.

Where I have had to name the provinces, into which the three principalities of Wales were anciently divided, I have frequently retained in notes, glossary, and index, the old Welsh names, such as Brecheiniog, Gwlad Morgan or Morganwg, Ceredigion, Meirionydd, instead of the modern derivatives, Brecknockshire, Glamorganshire, Cardiganshire, Merionethshire. It seemed to me absolutely necessary

to do this, because these modern divisions are not at all identical with the ancient ones from which their names have descended. A statement, perfectly true, about the old Brecheiniog, Morganwg, &c., would often be altogether untrue of the present Brecknockshire, Glamorganshire, &c. When, however, I have only to identify Giraldus's Latin names of places, rivers, &c., I give the modern county divisions; for instance, I describe his Novus Burgus as Newport, Monmouthshire, though in his days, and for long after, it was in the province of Morganwg; and his Sweinshe or Abertawe as Swansea in Glamorganshire, though then in the province of Caervyrddin (Caermarthenshire).

The *Llywelyn's Survey*, to which I frequently refer, is a description of the principalities, provinces, cantrevs, and comots, into which Wales was divided in the time of prince Llywelyn ab Gruffudd, who was killed in 1282. It is printed in the second volume of the *Myvyrian Archaiology*, and a translation of it is given by Sir R. C. Hoare, ii., 265.

The *Brut y Tywysogion*, or chronicle of the princes of Wales, and the *Annales Cambriæ*, to both of which also I often refer, are printed in the present series.

CORRIGENDA.

Page 51, second column of notes, l. 8, in margin, *instead of* 354, *read* 355.
 „ 80, n. 2, l. 2, *instead of* case *read* cases.
 „ 123, l. 24, *instead of* de nova *read* de novo.
 „ 268, first column, last line, *instead of* 107, 162, *read* 107, 138, 162, 205.

GIRALDI CAMBRENSIS

ITINERARIUM KAMBRIÆ.

ITINERARIUM KAMBRIÆ.

STEPHANO CANTUARIENSI ARCHIEPISCOPO. 56.
IN ODOPORION GIRALDI PRÆFATIO PRIMA.[1]

SICUT variis rerum motibus et mutationibus tempora moventur, sic diversis morum curriculis temporalium hominum animi trahuntur. Satyricus clamat; *Various pursuits of men.*

> " Mille hominum species, et rerum discolor usus : *Pers. v. 52.*
> " Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno."

Et illud comicum ;

> " Quot capita, tot sententiæ : suus cuique mos " *Ter. Phorm. 2, 3, 14.*

est. Unde et quoniam dispares mores disparia studia sequuntur, armata militia tirones exultant, togata vero causarum patroni delectantur : alii cumulandis divitiis anxie suspirant, et summum bonum opulentiam pu-

---

[1] This preface not in R. B. F. In Hc. T. D., &c. The heading of the text, " Stephano, &c.," is that of D. ; Rd. has only the latter part, " In Odop. Gir. præf. prima." In Hc. the heading is, " Hugoni Lin- " colniensi episcopo magister Giral- " dus Kambrensis." In T. this preface is headed, " Itinerarii Præ- " fatio prima " (vol. I. 393) ; and here also, as in Hc., it is addressed to bishop Hugh of Lincoln (*infra*, p. 7, n. 3). But though this preface does not appear here in B., in its proper place, the first part of it is added in this MS. of the first edition at the end of the treatise, with the dedicatory heading, " Guillelmo Eliensi epi- " scopo," *i.e.* William de Long- champ, bishop of Ely, 1190–1196, the " Belua multiformis," the hor- rible monster of iniquity, of the last chapter of Giraldus's Life of arch- bishop Geoffrey of York.

tant: hi Galienum approbant, illi Justinianum amplectuntur: honorum cupidi curiam sequuntur, et rediviva fame cruciatos graviter sauciat nec satiat ambitio: liberalibus artibus nonnulli, sed hodie pauci et parvi[1] indulgent; inter quos et Logices alumnos admiramur, qui cum aliquantulum provecti fuerint, tanta studii sui voluptate trahuntur, ut in illis Dialecticæ gyris atque mæandris plerosque videamus, tanquam ad Sireneos scopulos, consenescere.

Aul. Gell. Noct. Att. xvi. 8, 5.

Decay of literature.

Sed inter tot hominum species, ubi divini poetæ; ubi nobiles morum assertores; ubi linguæ Latinæ moderatores? Quis hodie scriptis, sive poeticis seu historicis, literatam adornat eloquentiam? Quis, inquam, nostri temporis, vel mores astruit, vel inclite gesta perpetuis literarum vinculis æternitati ascribit?[2] Adeo literarum honor, in summis olim gradibus constitutus, quia

Virg. Georg. i. 199.

"Sic omnia fato
"In pejus ruere, et retro sublapsa referri,"

jam proclivis in ruinam, ad ima devolvi videtur, ut earum addicti studiis non solum hodie non imitabiles,
56 b. non venerabiles, verum etiam odibiles reperiantur. "Felices quippe," ut ait Fabius, "essent artes, si de "illis soli artifices judicarent." "Naturaliter enim," ut ait Sydonius,[3] "fixum est radicatumque pectoribus "humanis, ut qui ignorant artes contemnant artifices."

Ceterum, ut ad priora revertamur, quæ mundo plus contulerint, quæso, an arma Mariana,[4] an carmina Maroniana?[4] Sed olim Marii[4] gladios rubigo consumpsit:

---

[1] *et parvi*] B. T. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[2] After *ascribit* is added in Rd., "Unde et Esaias, defectum temporis "hujus longe prospiciens, ait, 'Ubi "'est literatus? Ubi verba legis "'(ponderans)? Ubi doctor par- "'vulorum'" (Is. 33, 18). It is in no other manuscript, and not in Camden.

[3] *ut ait Sydonius*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in B. T. Hc.

[4] *Mariana*, *Maroniana*, and *Marii*] Instead of this, B., the text of T., Hc., and D., have "Arriana," "Virgiliana," and "Arrii." Rd.

qui vero scripsit Eneida, perpetua Maronis extat gloria. Et tamen, quanquam literatis sub principibus literæ tunc in honore fuissent, ab ipso scriptum invenies;

"Tantum Virg. Ecl. 9, 12.
"Carmina nostra valent, arma[1] inter martia, quantum
"Caonias dicunt aquila veniente columbas."

Ad hæc etiam utra fecundior ac fructuosior extiterit hæsitas, opera Ieronimi, an opulentia Cresi? Sed ubi hodie Cresi vel nitet argentum, vel rutilat aurum, ubi[2] cœnobitæ pauperis orbem et irradiat studium, et illustrat exemplum? Et tamen, cum tantus fuisset, Romæ per invidiam contumelias[3] et verbera passus, ac demum trans mare pulsus, Bethleemiticam studio suo solitudinem elegit.

Inter hæc ergo, quæ contulimus, hoc distare potest; quod aurum et arma vitam hanc fulcire videntur, post mortem nil valitura; verum e diverso scripta parum[4] in vita propter invidiam prosunt, perpetuum a morte sortita valorem. Sicut igitur testamenti, sic et scripti auctoritas mortis atramento confirmatur; juxta illud poetæ,

"Pascitur in vivis livor, post fata quiescit; Ov. I.
"Cum suus ex merito quemque tuetur honor;" Amor. xv. 39.

et illud;

"Denique[5] si quis adhuc prætendit nubila livor Stat. Theb.
"Occidet, et meriti post me referentur honores." xii. 818.

---

has "Martiana," "Virgiliana," and "Martis." Camden has, "Mariana," "Virgiliana," and Marii." The reading I give, no doubt I think the right one, is supplied by an after corrector in the margin of T. "Arriana" and "Arrii" probably originated from the M of *Mariana* and *Marii* having been omitted by an early scribe, in order to be afterwards inserted in some ornamental form, but which the illuminator, as often the case, neglected to do. The alliteration with *Maroniana* being thus mainly lost, the more familiar word "Virgiliana" came in naturally instead.

[1] *arma*] "tela" in Virgil.

[2] *ubi*] B. T. Hc. D.; cum tamen, Rd.

[3] *contumelias*] B. Hc. D. Rd.; contumeliam, T.

[4] *parum*] D.; nihil, B. T. Hc., Camden; nil, Rd.

[5] *Denique*] "Mox tibi" instead, in Statius.

Præterea qui facultates, qui sanitates suis artificiis vel conferre vel conservare nituntur, dum alienis tan-
57. tum scaturiunt verbis, propriis parum gloriantur inventis. Compositores quippe tam ornati sermonis, quo tam varii casus in tanto juris corpore tam eleganti stilo complectuntur, perpetuis efferendi præconiis extant. Auctores siquidem elegantium verborum, non auditores tantum, repertores non recitatores, dixerim laude dignissimos.

Curiam autem, et Logicam, tam in alliciendo, quam in vix deserendo persimiles invenies. Dialecticæ tamen notitiam, tanquam aliarum omnium tam scientiarum quam artium acumen, cum moderamine moræ inculpatæ, certum est esse perutilem: curiam vero, nisi blandis solum palponibus et ambitiosis, non necessariam. Nempe si quæstum facis in curia, te tanto fortius allicit et annectit ambitio, non missura cutem, non curiam, nisi plena. Sin autem labor in damno est, adhuc tamen annum apponis, et iterum annum anno, et sic in infinitum, ne una cum censu tempora perdideris, jacturam temporis, quæ irreparabilis est et omnium major, incurris. Curiam igitur et aleam quadam videas proprietate conformes. Quoniam, ut ait poeta,

Ov. Ars Am. i. 451.
"Sic ne perdiderit, non cessat perdere lusor,
"Dum[1] revocat cupidas alea blanda manus."

Levi namque mutatione haud dissimiliter dicas;

"Sic ne perdiderit, non cessat perdere lusus,
"Dum revocat cupidas curia blanda manus."

Hoc etiam adjiciendum puto, quod sicut aleæ, sic et curiæ casus, delectu carens, dignis et indignis æque respondet.

Inter tot igitur hominum species, quoniam

Virg. Ecl. 2, 65.
"Trahit sua quemque voluptas,"

---

[1] *Dum*] "Et" instead in Ovid.

et quoniam

"Varis vexantur pectora votis,"

me quidem scribendi studium eligere posteritatis cura coegit. Et quia momentanea et fluxa est præsens hæc vita, juvat saltem in futuro[1] memoria vivere, et perpetuis famæ titulis laudis honore celebrari. Egregiæ mentis indicium est, ad illud emittendum elaborare, quo sibi invidiam in vita, gloriam post fata comparaverit. Perpetuum est itaque quod auctores, quodque poetæ principaliter affectant; temporale commodum, si forte accesserit, non recusantes. Quoniam, ut ait poeta, Giraldus's devotion to literature; for the sake of posterity. 57 b.

"Quis locus ingenio est, nisi cum se carmine solo Juv. 7, 63.
"Vexant, et dominis Cyrræ Nisæque feruntur
"Pectora nostra, duas non admittentia curas?"[2]

Sed quia principibus parum literatis et multum occupatis, *Hibernicam* Anglorum regi Henrico secundo *Topographiam*, ejusdemque filio, et utinam vitiorum non succedaneo, Pictavensium comiti Ricardo *Vaticinalem Historiam*, vacuo quondam quoad accessorium illud et infructuoso labore peregi; tibi, vir inclite, Stephane Cantuariensis archiepiscope,[3] quem religio pariter et literatura commendant, laborem nostrum per horridos Kambriæ fines non illaudabilem, in duabus particulis scholastico stilo tam digerere[4] quam destinare curavi. Virtus enimvero quia sese diligit, aspernaturque contraria, quæcunque in hoc libello decessoris vestri penultimi,[5] viri venerabilis et metropolitani antistitis, The *Top. Hibern.* written for H. II.; the *Expug.* for Richard. His labours unrewarded.

---

[1] *futuro*] B. T. Hc. D., Camden; futura, Rd.

[2] Here the portion of this preface added at the end of MS. B. concludes with an &c.

[3] *Stephane, &c.*] D. Rd.; Hugo Lincolniensis episcope, T. and Hc.

[4] *digerere*] T. Hc. Rd., Camden; dirigere, D.

[5] *decessoris vestri penultimi*] D. Rd.; coepiscopi vestri, T. and Hc.; coepisc. et decess. vestr. penult., Camden.

veris laudum titulis ascripta repereris, te non minori affectu quam si propria fuissent credimus amplexurum.

The intended work, *De Princ. Instr.*

Quibus expletis, Deo duce, vitaque comite, libellum tibi *De Principis Instructione* promitto; si, sopitis interdum tam orationum instantiis quam occupationum curis, lectioni quandoque vacare potueris, munus acceptum. Hos igitur et alios nostræ diligentiæ fructus, tuæ degustandos discretioni, suis singulos temporibus destinare proposui, ut te nostra si forte movere nequeunt opera, moveant vel opuscula; moveant, inquam, et tam gratiam reddant, quam gratum efficiant.[1]

Qui carnali minime motus affectu, in largiendis dextra munifica quibus excelles beneficiis, non sanguinem, non sobolem, sed literas potius et merita pensas: quem in tanta tam continua regni sacerdotiique discep-
58. tatione, paucis comitatum, Anglicana ecclesia firmum invenit ac fidelem: in quem hodie fere solum et fideliter electum, illa episcopalis viri canonica descriptio cadere videretur et concordare.

Non itaque pileum sustinendo, non pulvillum supponendo, non plumam extrahendo, non pulverem, etsi nullus fuerit, excutiendo, sed inter alios palpones tibi scribendo placere constitui: tibi, inquam, vir præcluis,[2] vir insignis, vir virorum perpaucorum; vir in quem quicquid fere in terris antistitem decet, incomparabili gratia tam industria quam natura congessit. Et si forte nec tibi in hunc modum placere prævaleam, tum quia lectionis horam tam oratio suffocat quam occupatio, tum etiam quia literarum olim honor evanuit; saltem, si quandoque resurgat, posteritati.

---

[1] *reddant . . . . . efficiant*] D.; eliciant . . . . reddant, T. Hc. Rd., and Camden.

[2] *præcluis*] This is no doubt the right reading of the word. In D. and T., however, it looks more like "præclius" or "prædius." Hc. has "præclarus;" Rd., "præclare;" Camden, "præclarissime."

INCIPIUNT CAPITULA.

I.—Prima[1] particula continet de transitu per Herefordiam et Radenouram, cum notabilibus suis.

II.—De transitu per Hayam[2] et Brecheniauc, cum[3] notabilibus suis.

III.—De Ewias et Lantodheni,[4] cum notabilibus suis.

IIII.—De transitu per Coidwroneu[5] et Abergevenni, cum notabilibus suis.

V.—De transitu per Oschæ castrum, et Legionum urbem, cum notabilibus suis.

VI.—De transitu per Novum burgum, et Kerdif,[6] cum notabilibus suis.

VII.—De sede Landavensi, et monasterio de Margan, cum partium illarum notabilibus.

VIII.—De Avennæ[7] et Neth fluviis transcursis; de Abertawe quoque et Goer;[7] cum notabilibus suis.

IX.—De Locher et Wendraeth[8] fluviis transcursis; de Kedweli quoque, cum notabilibus suis.

X.—De fluvio Tewiensi navigio transcurso; de Kaermerdyn[9] quoque; et Albæ landæ monasterio; cum notabilibus suis.

---

[1] Here R. B. F. begin, without any heading and without any break, immediately upon the last words of the *Expugnatio Hibernica*. These *capitula* are not in He., and not in Camden.

[2] *Hayam*] D.; Haiam, R. B.

[3] *cum*] D.; et, R. B.

[4] *Lantodheni*] D.; Lanthodheni, R. B.

[5] *Coidwroneu*] D.; Coitwroneu, R. B.

[6] *Kerdif*] D.; Kairdiph, R. B.

[7] *Avennæ* . . *Abertawe* . . . *Goer*] D.; Aveniæ . . Abertau . . . Goher, R. B.

[8] *Wendraeth*] D.; Wandrez, R. B.

[9] *Kaermerdyn*] D.; Kermerdhin, R. B.

XI.—De Haverfordia, et Ros; cum notabilibus suis.
XII.—De Pembrochia, cum [1] notabilibus suis.
XIII.—De transitu per Kamros, et Neugol,[2] usque Meneviam; cum notabilibus suis.

I.—Secunda continet de sede Menevensi, cum notabilibus suis.
58 b. II.—De transitu per Kemmeis, et monasterium Sancti Dogmaelis; cum notabilibus suis.
III.—De fluvio Teyvi, et Keredigiaun, et Emelyn;[3] cum notabilibus suis.
IIII.—De transitu per Pontem Stephani; per monasterium quoque de Estratflur;[4] per Brevy,[5] et ecclesiam Paterni magni; cum notabilibus suis.
V.—De fluvio Devi navigio transcurso; et terra filiorum Chanani;[6] cum notabilibus suis.
VI.—De Trait maur, et Trait bochan transcursis; de Nevin[7] quoque, et Kaerarvon, et Bangor; cum notabilibus suis.
VII.—De Monia insula, cum notabilibus suis.
VIII.—De Cunewe fluvio, navigio transcurso; et de Dynasemereis;[8] cum notabilibus suis.
IX.—De montanis Erery,[9] cum notabilibus suis.
X.—De transitu per Degannoe et Rudlan;[10] sedem quoque Lanelvensem; de vivo sabulo, et Coleshulle; cum notabilibus suis.
XI.—De fluvio Deyæ[11] transcurso; et Cestria; cum notabilibus suis.

---

[1] *Pembrochia, cum*] D.; Penbrochia, et, R. B.
[2] *Neugol*] D.; Niwegal, R. B.
[3] *Teyvi.. Keredigiaun.. Emelyn*] D.; Teivi.. Kenedigun.. Emelin, R. B.
[4] *Estratflur*] D.; Stradflur, R. F.; Stratflur, B.
[5] *Brevy*] D.; Brevi, R. B.
[6] *Chanani*] D.; Kanani, R. B.
[7] *Nevin*] D.; Newein, R. B.
[8] *Dynasemereis*] D.; Dinasemereis, R. B.
[9] *Erery*] D.; Ereri, R. B.
[10] *Degannoe .... Rudlan*] D.; Dugannu ... Rudhelant, R. B.
[11] *Deyæ*] D.; Deiæ, R. B.

XII.—De transitu per Album monasterium, et Oswaldestreo;[1] Powisiam quoque, et Slopesburiam; cum notabilibus suis.

XIII.—De transitu per Gweneloc, et Bromfeld;[2] castellum de Lodelawe, et Leonis monasterium, usque Herefordiam.

XIIII.—Descriptio Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Baldewini.[3]

---

[1] *Oswaldestreo*] D.; Oswaldestroe, R, B.

[2] *Gweneloc . . . Bromfeld*] D.; Weneloc . . . Brumfeld, R. B.

[3] *Baldewini*] D.; not in R. B.

INCIPIT ITINERARIUM GIRALDI KAMBRENSIS; ET LABORIOSA[1] CANTUARIENSIS ARCHIEPISCOPI BALDEWINI PER WALLIAM LEGATIO.[2]

PRÆFATIO SECUNDA.[3]

Object of this treatise.

Quoniam ea, quæ laudabili devotione gesta noscuntur, debitis non indigne præconiis efferuntur; animus quoque quia si remittitur amittitur, et desidiæ torpor vires enervat ingenii; ferrum nempe situ rubiginem ducit,

Ov. I. Pont. v. 6.

"Et capiunt vitium, ni moveantur aquæ;"

ne stilum otiosum ærugo consumat, devotam Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Baldewini per Kambriæ fines legationem literarum munimentis dignum duxi com-
59. mendare. Loca igitur invia per quæ transivimus, et tam fontium quam torrentum flumina nominatim expressa, verba faceta, viæque labores et casus varios, notabiles quoque tam moderni temporis quam antiqui partium illarum eventus, patriæ naturam, naturæque mirandos interdum excursus, patriæ quoque descriptio-

---

[1] *et laboriosa . . . . legatio*] Hc. D.; et tam Kambriæ quam Britanniæ descriptio, R. B. This reading of the MSS. of the first edition would seem to intimate that when Giraldus first issued this treatise, he intended it to be the primary instalment of a work describing the whole of Britain.

[2] In Rd. this "Incipit . . . legatio" comes after this second preface, before the first chapter.

[3] *Præfatio secunda*] Hc. D. Rd.; not in R. B.

nem,[1] hoc opusculo quasi speculo quodam dilucido, per te,[2] vir inclite, Stephane Cantuariensis archiepiscope, posteritati præsentavi; ne vel studium otio depereat, vel laus silentio delitescat.

[Cap. I.]

De transitu per Herefordiam, et Radenouram; cum notabilibus suis.

Anno igitur ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo octogesimo octavo, apostolatus[3] apicem regente Urbano tertio, imperante Romæ Alemannorum rege Frederico, Constantinopolis Ysaakio, regnante in Francia Philippo Ludovici filio, in Anglia Henrico secundo, in Sicilia Willelmo, in Ungaria rege Bela, in Palestina Gwidone, anno scilicet quo Saladinus, tam Egyptiorum quam Damascenorum princeps, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam injusto, publico belli certamine victoria potitus, Ierosolimorum regnum obtinuit, vir venerabilis, et tam literatura quam religione conspicuus, Cantuariorum archipræsul[4] Baldewinus, in salutiferæ crucis obsequium ab Anglia in Walliam tendens, apud Herefordiæ fines Kambriam intravit.

Date of the progress through Wales of archbishop Baldwin.

Accedens itaque Radenouram, circa jejunii caput,

[1] *patriæ naturam . . . . descriptionem*] T. D. Rd.; and Hc., but without "patriæ quoque descrip- "tionem." R. B. have instead, "gentis originem, mores, et modos; "patriæ simul et patris descrip- "tionem."

[2] *per te . . . . archiepiscope*] D. Rd.; and T., but with "Hugo Lin- "colniensis episcope," instead of "Stephane Cant. archiep." Not at all in R. B. Hc.

[3] *apostolatus . . . . . . Palestina Gwidone*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Giraldus is wrong as to pope Urban III., who died October 19, 1187. He was succeeded by Gregory VIII., who died December 17 of same year. Clement III. was pope in 1188.

[4] *archipræsul*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; archiepiscopus, D.

At Radnor he is met by Rhys ab Gruffudd, prince of Sth. Wales. Compare the *De Rebus, &c.*, vol. i. 74.

viro magnifico Ranulfo[1] Glanvillensi, præcipuo regis tunc consiliario, regnique totius justitiario, eo usque comitatus, Resum Griffini filium, australis Kambriæ principem, cum aliis partium illarum viris nobilibus ibidem obvios[2] habuit. Ubi sermone statim super negotio crucis ab archipræsule publice facto, et per interpretem Walensibus[3] exposito, primus omnium, ad importunam quæ præcesserat regis instantiam, et pollicitis plenam tam archiepiscopi quam justitiarii toties[4] ex parte regis commonitionem, qui scripsit hæc, aliis exemplum præbens, se primus[5] erexit, et ad validissimam quoque omnium inductionem, præmissis quidem occasionaliter adjutam, post crebras et anxias secum disputationes, ob temporis demum injuriam et crucis Christi contumeliam, propriæ rationis persuasione, ad pedes viri sancti provolutus crucis signaculum devote suscepit.

59 b. Giraldus the first to take the cross.

Peter, bishop of St. David's, follows his example; and others.

Quem illico Petrus Menevensis episcopus, et Cluniacensis monachus, tam imitatus est quam secutus. Deinde Eneas Eneæ Claudii filius, Elevemiæ[6] princeps, cum aliis multis. Qui statim exsurgens, et coram Reso cujus filiam uxorem habebat assistens, "Vestra, "mi pater," inquit, "et domine, licentia, summi patris

[1] *viro magnifico Ranulfo*] D. Rd.; Ranulfo quoque, R. B.; "viro" only in Hc. The "circa jejunii "caput" of our author must have been several days, at the least, after Ash Wednesday, March 2 in 1188. See note 4, p. lxiv. of Mr. Stubbs' Introduction to *Epistolæ Cantuarienses.*

[2] *obvios*] Hc. D. Rd.; obviam, R. B.

[3] *Walensibus*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[4] *toties ex parte regis commonitionem*] D. and Rd. (but corrupt); regis ex parte persuasionem, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *se primus . . . rationis persuasione*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc. Most of it not in Camden.

[6] *Claudii filius, Elevemiæ*] D. Rd.; Clut filius, Eleveniæ, R. B. According to the *Brut y Tywysogion*, Einon Clud of Elvael, the father, who was slain in 1177, married a daughter of Rhys ab Gruffudd (pp. 227, 231). Giraldns may have confounded the father and son; but, not at all impossibly, the son also, as he says, may have married a daughter of Rhys. Elevemia is Elvael, a cantrev comprising the southern part of the present Radnorshire.

"injuriam vindicare depropero." Resus autem cum certissimo sanctæ peregrinationis proposito, quam cito archiepiscopus terram suam intraverit, reversus est. Adeo ut per quindecim fere dies de clitellis et sagmariis, de sumptibus perquirendis et clientibus, ceterisque tanto itineri necessariis, cum multa solicitudine disposuisset, donec uxor ejus, et communi patriæ vitio in quarto gradu cognata, Gwendoloena[1] scilicet Maidoci Powisensis filia, ipsum a nobili proposito, peccatis exigentibus, muliebriter instans penitus avertit. Quoniam, ut ait Salomon, "Cor hominis disponit viam "suam, sed Domini est dirigere gressus ejus." In ipso vero discessu Resi, cum super his quæ audierat suos conveniret, juvenis quidam egregius de familia ipsius, cui nomen Griffinus, qui et postea crucem suscepit, respondisse memoratur; "Quis," inquam, "animi virilis peregrinationis hujus iter abhorreat, "cum inter universa quæ excogitari poterunt ejus "incommoda, nihil incommodius cuiquam, nihil dete-"rius accidere possit quam redire?"

Rhys fully purposes the same; but dissuaded by his wife.

Prov. xvi. 9.

Accesserunt[2] autem ad Resum in reditu suo quidam canonici Menevenses zelo ecclesiæ suæ, majores curiæ quos sibi allexerant complices habentes et fautores: qui ei suggerere modis omnibus nitebantur, ut archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, quoniam inauditum hoc hactenus fuerat, ad penitiores Walliarum partes, præcipue[3] sedem Menevensem quæ caput est Walliæ, accedere nullatenus sustineret; dicentes et asserentes eo ipso, si processerit, præjudicium magnum et gravamen in posterum antiquæ dignitati suæ recuperandæ, et metropolitanæ sedis honori, posse procul dubio provenire. Hæc, inquam, principi toto conamine suadentes, ob

The canons of St. David's try to persuade Rhys to forbid the archbp.'s progress.

---

[1] *Gwendoloena*] D. Rd.; Guenliana, R. B. Gwenllian, daughter of Madog ab Maredudd, prince of part of Powys.

[2] *Accesserunt . . . non valebant*] This section in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[3] *præcipue*] D. Rd.; præcipueque, Hc.

innatam tamen ejusdem mansuetudinem et liberalitatem, ne confusionem viro sancto repulsa generaret, persuadere non valebant.

The next day others take the cross.

In crastino vero, mane, post missæ celebrationem, et Ranulfi Glanvillensis in Angliam reversionem, cum apud castrum Crukeri, quod quasi duobus a Radenoura passuum millibus[1] distat, proficisceremur, juvenis quidam robustus et validus, cui nomen Hector, ab archiepiscopo super crucis susceptione conventus; "Si "haberem," inquit, "unde uno[2] die in via comederem, "et altero jejunarem, monitis acquiescerem." Die tamen sequente idem ab archiepiscopo crucem suscepit. Circa vesperam vero venit Mailgo Cadwallani[3] filius, princeps Mailenia;[4] qui statim, ad brevem archiepiscopi monitionem sed efficacem, non absque suorum lacrimis et luctu, crucis signaculo est insignitus.

The lord of Radnor castle in time of H. I., how punished for irreverence to a church.

Hic autem quasi præ foribus mihi notandum occurrit, quod dominatori castri ejusdem de Radenoura tempore Anglorum regis Henrici primi contigit in terra de Bueld,[5] non procul abhinc[6] distante, et eidem honori a primo conquestu adjacente. Cum enim ecclesiam Sancti Avani,[7] quæ Britannice Lanavan[8] dicitur, intrasset, et minus caute in eadem cum canibus venatoriis atque irreverenter pernoctasset, venantium more summo diluculo surgens, canes omnes invenit rabie percussos; ipse quoque cæcus effectus, nihil omnino[9]

---

[1] *passuum millibus*] D. Rd.; millibus, Hc.; stadiis, R. B.

[2] *uno*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; una, D.

[3] *Cadwallani*] D.; Kadwatlani, R. B. Maelgwn ab Cadwallon, prince of Maelienydd.

[4] *Mailenia*] D.; Meleniæ, R. B. Maelienydd, a cantrev comprising the northern part of the present Radnorshire, and a portion of Montgomeryshire.

[5] *Bueld*] D.; Buelt, R. B. Called "Buellt" in *Brut y Tywys.*; now Builth, a cantrev in the northern part of the present Brecknockshire.

[6] *abhinc*] Hc. D. Rd.; hinc, R. B.

[7] *Avani*] B. D.; Annani, R. F. St. Afan, or Afan Buallt, Rice Rees's *Welsh Saints*, p. 208.

[8] *Lanavan*] D.; Lanevan, R. B. Llanafan Fawr, in Brecknockshire.

[9] *omnino*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

videns, ad manum extractus est. Et cum diu postea vivendo tenebrosam semper et tædiosam vitam duxisset, demum se Ierosolimam duci faciens, ne et interior ei lucerna similiter extingueretur feliciter procuravit. 60 b.
Cum aliis igitur armatus ibidem, et ad bellicum conflictum vice quadam[1] a suis perductus, forti residens equo, animosum inter primos in hostes fidei impetum fecit; ubi et statim ferro confossus diem cum honore clausit extremum.

The lord of Gwerthrynion, Einon ab Rhys, and the buck-horned doe.

In provincia quoque de Warthrenniaun, quæ paucis abhinc stadiis[2] distat, his nostris diebus res accidit non indigna memoratu. Dominator enimvero loci ejusdem, Eneas scilicet filius Resi, cum die quodam excire saltibus feras intenderet, puta qui venationis studio valde addictus fuerat, quidam ex suis arcum tenens cervam exsilientem sagitta perforavit. Quæ quidem, contra sexus illius naturam, inventa est duodecim ramorum cornua præferens, et præterea tam in cauda quam alibi plusquam cervi pinguedinem habens. Unde et ob tanti prodigii novitatem, Anglorum regi Henrico secundo monstri ejusdem caput et cornua sunt destinata. Illud etiam hoc in casu magis stupore dignum occurrit, quod vir ille, qui feram præscriptam sagittavit, mirum quo fato quove infortunio, subita passione percussus, dextrum illico lumen amisit; et eadem hora paralitico morbo correptus, usque ad mortem inutilis omnino et imbecillis permansit.

Punishment of the man who shot her.

Crosier of St. Curig, at St. Harmon's, Radnorshire.

In hac eadem provincia de Warthrenniaun, in ecclesia videlicet Sancti Germani, baculus qui Sancti Cyricii dicitur invenitur, superius in crucis modum paulisper utrinque protensus, auro et argento undique contectus. Qui quanquam virtuosissimus in omni negotio comprobetur, longe plus tamen ad glandiculas, gibbosasque

Its virtues;

[1] *vice quadam*] Hc. D., Camden. Not in R. B. Rd. has instead, "in "campanum."

[2] *stadiis*] R. B. D. Rd., Camden; milibus, Hc.

strumas, quæ in humanis corporibus excrescere solent, evacuandas penitus et delendas, speciali quadam virtute præpollet; adeo quidem ut omnes passim, qui hujuscemodi vexantur incommodis, si baculum devote cum unius denarii oblatione petierint, optatam recipiant sanitatem. Contigit autem his nostris diebus, strumosum quemdam solum obolum baculo præsentasse; cui per medium illico residens strumosus ille tumor evanuit. Et post pusillum, postquam alterius oboli relatione debita est oblatio redintegrata, et integra quoque statim curatio est subsecuta. Item alius ad baculum accedens, cum certa denarii promissione, curatus est: qui tamen die statuto promissa non complens, pristinum statim incommodum cum confusione recepit: sed ut delicti veniam facilius impetraret, cum trium denariorum oblatione, non absque timore magno et devotione, beneficium triplicasset, continuo stabilis curationis gaudia recuperavit.

on payment of a penny.

61.

St. David's hand-bell, at Glascwm, in Elvael:

Apud Elvail[1] autem, in ecclesia de Glascum, est campana bajula virtuosissima, quam propio vocabulo Bangu vocant, quæ et Sancti David fuisse perhibetur. Hanc mulier quædam viro suo, qui in castello de Raidergoe juxta[2] Warthrenniaun, quod Resus filius Griffini nostris diebus construxerat,[3] in vinculis tenebatur, ut eum vel sic liberaret, clam allatam superposuit. Sed quoniam castellani non solum ob hoc virum non liberarunt, verum etiam campanam ipsam violenter captivam quoque tenuerunt, nocte eadem, ultione divina, totum oppidum, præter parietem unum ubi campana pendebat, igne proprio consumptum est.

vengeance on despisers of it.

The church of Llywel, Breck-

Apud Luel quoque, partibus de Brecheniauc, nostro similiter tempore contigit, ecclesia ejusdem loci hosti-

[1] Hence to end of chapter in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B. Elvail is the Elevemia (Elvael), *supra*, p. 14, n. 6, and *infra*, p. 19, n. 1.

[2] There seems to be something wrong here. Rhaiadr is *in* Gwerthrynion.

[3] The castle of Rhaiadr Gwy was built by the lord Rhys in 1177: *Brut y Tywys.*

liter combusta, omnia prorsus intus et extra, præter pixidem unam in qua hostia consecrata reposita fuerat, consumpta fuisse. nockshire, burnt.

Contigit autem in Elvemiæ provincia,[1] quam solum ab Haia flumen Waiense disterminat, duo stagna non modica, nocte quam Anglorum rex Henricus primus duxit extremam, a claustris, alteri a natura, et alteri humano labore collatis, subito erupisse: artificiali longius per devexa dilapso, cursuque præcipiti demum, ut mos est, evacuato; naturali vero non ultra duo passuum millia, in valle quadam, cum piscibus prioribus et accidentibus, non absque multorum admiratione, perpetua stabilitate statum sortito.[2] Bursting of two lakes on the night of H. I.'s death. 61 b.

Contigit etiam[3] hac tempestate in Normanniæ partibus, paucis[4] ante obitum Henrici secundi diebus, ut in stagno quodam non procul a Sagio, quasi per quinque miliaria distante, apud Oximense castrum, pisces omnes, quibus abundabat, tanto conflictu, tam in aqua ipsa quam extra exsilientes, nocte quadam congrederentur, ut vicinorum hominum multitudinem ipso collisionis strepitu ad spectaculum evocarent. Tanto nempe, tamque letali certamine congressi sunt, ut in toto vivario vix unus[5] mane vita superstes inveniretur; miro et inaudito prognostico, multorum morte, mortem unius præsagientes. Battle of the fish, in a lake near Seez, before the death of Henry II.

Quanti vero et quam enormes excessus, super fratrum et consobrinorum exoculationibus, ob miseras terrarum ambitiones, in his inter Waiam et Sabrinam, Mailenith scilicet, Elvail, et Warthrenniaun finibus, his nostris diebus acciderint, satis Walliæ fines memoriter tenent et abhorrent.

---

[1] This is repeated in our author's *De Instr. Princ.*, p. 159. Hc. has "in eadem provincia de Eleveni."

[2] In *De Instr. Princ.* is added, "et iterum in stagnum converso."

[3] This section also in *De Instr. Princ.*, 159.

[4] *paucis*] *De Instr. Princ.* has, "circiter octo."

[5] *unus*] uni, D. (text); unus, in margin of D. in later hand, and in Rd. The passage is corrupt in Hc.

[Cap. II.]

De transitu per Haiam[1] *et Brecheniauc, cum notabilibus suis.*

Progress across the Wye, to Hay.

Transeuntes inde versus Brecheniauc, flumine Waiensi[2] transcurso, statim apud Haiam sermone facto, inter multos ibidem crucesignandos, quosdam vidimus qui relictis vestibus, quibus alii ab amicis, alii ab uxoribus retinebantur, usque in castrum ipsum cursim ad archiepiscopum evaserunt.

The next day to Llandduw.

Mane vero versus Aberhotheni iter arripuimus: et verbo Domini apud Landu seminato, ibidem pernoctavimus. Dicitur autem Aberhotheni castrum et provinciæ caput, ibi situm ubi rivus Hotheni[3] in aquam Oschæ[4] devolvitur. *Aber* enim lingua Britannica dicitur locus omnis ubi fluvius in fluvium cadit. *Landu* vero Ecclesia Dei sonat. Archidiaconus quoque loci ejusdem opus suum non ignobile, *Hibernicam* ibidem[5] *Topographiam* archiepiscopo præsentavit. Quod ipse[6] gratanter accipiens, singulisque diebus obiter inde vel legens vel audiens attente, tandem in Angliam reversus, lectionem una cum legatione complevit.

Presentation to the archbishop of the *Top. Hibern.*

62.

Notable events in these parts.

Ea igitur quæ nostris temporibus, his in partibus, notabilia contigere, prætereunda non putavi. Accidit itaque[7] parum ante guerram illam grandem, qua tota

---

[1] *Haiam*] R. B., and so D. directly afterwards, in second line of the chapter; Hayam in D. here.

[2] *Waiensi*] D.; Vagensi, R. B.; and so also in after cases.

[3] *Hotheni*] D., and so afterwards; Hodheni, R. B. more generally, but they have Hotheni as well: the river Hodni, or Honddu. Aberhodni, or Aberhonddu, is the Welsh name of Brecon, or Brecknock, the town; Brecheiniog, Brecheniauc of Giraldus, is the province, represented by the present Brecknockshire.

[4] *Oschæ*] D.; Oscæ, R. B. And so also in after cases.

[5] *ibidem*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; ibi, D.

[6] *Quod ipse . . complevit*] This clause in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[7] *itaque*] B. Hc. D. Rd.; autem, R. F.

fere provincia illa per filios Iestini in exterminium data fuerat, ut lacus ille magnus, qui fluvium Leveni ex se transmittit, simul cum ipso fluvio in Waiæ flumen contra Glasbiriam[1] ab ipso descendente, viridissimi coloris inveniretur. Consulti autem[2] super hoc terræ illius seniores quidnam portendere potuisset, responderunt parum ante magnam illam desolationem, per Hoelum filium Moreduci[3] factam, similis coloris aquam inventam fuisse.

Change of colour in a lake.

Contigit quoque eadem tempestate, capellanum quemdam, cui nomen Hugo, capellæ Sancti Nicholai in castello de Aberhotheni deservientem, in somnis vidisse virum quemdam venerabilem ei assistentem et dicentem; "Dic domino tuo Willielmo de Breusa, qui præ-"dium capellæ Sancti Nicholai olim in elemosynam "datum detinere præsumit, verbum istud, 'Hoc aufert "'fiscus quod non accipit[4] Christus: dabis impio "'militi quod dare non vis sacerdoti.'" Cum hoc itaque semel, secundo, et tertio ei accidisset, veniens ad loci illius archidiaconum apud Landu qui scripsit hæc,[5] tam visionem, quam verba memoriter retenta, quæ nunquam tamen antea audierat, ei proposuit. Ipse vero, Augustini statim hæc esse verba dignoscens, locumque scripturæ ubi reperiuntur ostendens, casum quoque in quo Augustinus ibi loquitur aperuit. Invehitur enim in decimarum et obventionum, seu rerum quarumlibet ecclesiasticarum detentores. Et quod eis ibi minatur, infra brevissimum tempus huic certum est contigisse detentori.

Vision of a chaplain, as to William de Breuse.

Vidimus quippe nostris diebus, et indubitata veritate comperimus, principes ecclesiasticarum possessionum 62 b.

---

[1] *Glasbiriam*] D.; Glesburiam, R. B. Glasbury, in Brecknockshire.

[2] *autem*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. He.

[3] *Moreduci*] D.; Mereducii, R. B.

[4] *accipit*] R. B. He. Rd., Camden; capit, D.

[5] *qui scripsit hæc*] D. Not in R. B. He. Rd., Camden.

H. II.'s usurpations of church property.

usurpatores, præcipue vero Anglorum regem Henricum secundum, nostris diebus regnantem, et hoc vitio præ aliis laborantem, modico fermento[1] massa corrupta, novis semper ea occasione emersis incommodis, thesauros universos profudisse, stipendiario dantes militi quæ dari debuerant sacerdoti.

William de Breuse's pious language.

De viro tamen prædicto, Willielmo videlicet[2] de Breusa, quanquam in hoc et similibus plurimum[3] offenderit; quia nihil humanum omnino perfectum, omniumque habere notitiam, ut ait Imperator, et in nullo peccare, potius divinitatis est quam humanitatis; hoc equidem memoria dignum censui, quod in omni sermone suo semper[4] Deum anteponere consuevit,[5] dicens, "In nomine Domini fiat hoc," "Ex parte Dei fiat "illud," item "Si Deo placuerit," vel "Si Deus an-"nuerit," vel "Per Dei gratiam futurum est ita."

Quod autem[6] in hunc modum Deo sit semper totum committendum, ejusque voluntati commendandum, habemus ex Paulo; qui, sicut in Actibus Apostolorum legitur, valefaciens fratribus dixit, "Iterum revertar "ad vos, Deo volente." Similiter et Jacobus, in epistola sua, adjectiones hujusmodi, "Si Deus voluerit, si "vixerimus," singulis de futuro promissionibus faciendas ostendit, divinæ voluntati et dispositioni cuncta relinquendo.

Act. xviii. 21.

Jac. iv. 15.

Literas quoque,[7] quas varias ad partes veluti dives et præpotens mittere solebat,[8] adeo gratiosis hujusce-

---

[1] *fermento*] D.; fermenti, R. B. Hc. From 1 Cor. v. 6; Gal. v. 9.

[2] *videlicet*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; scilicet, D.

[3] *et similibus plurimum*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc. Camden has "plurimum" only.

[4] *semper*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[5] *anteponere consuevit*] D. Rd.; anteponit, R. B. Hc. See note 2, p. 23.

[6] This section, *Quod autem . . . relinquendo*, in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[7] This section, *Literas quoque . . . . dabat*, in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[8] *solebat*] D.; solet, Hc. Rd.

modi divinæ indulgentiæ verbis onerare sed verius[1] honorare consueverat, ut in tædium plerumque maximum, non solum notariis, verum etiam auditoribus vergi soleat. Singulis autem notariorum, ut literas omnes divini auxilii verbo concluderent, præter communia stipendia aureum annuatim denarium dabat.

Ad hæc etiam, ex devotionis abundantia, quoties iter agendo vel in ecclesiam, vel in crucem aliquam oculos convertit, quanquam in cursu sermonis cum quocunque, seu plebeio seu potente, verbum fieret,[2] statim se transtulit[2] ad orationes: quibus expletis, a diverticulo repetiit[2] orationem. Præterea quoties pueros in via obvios habebat, eos illico salutatione præveniens ad reciprocam invitabat salutationem; ut sic innocentium ei benedictio vel extorta, cum salutationis eulogio refunderetur. Horum etiam omnium et sponsa ejusdem, Matildis de Sancto Walerico, consuetudinem habuit; mulier, inquam, prudens et pudica, mulier domui suæ bene præposita, mulier non tantum intus conservando, verum etiam extra multiplicando providentissima. Qui utinam[3] ambo tam finalem in tempore felicitatem et gratiam, quam æternitatis gloriam fuerint ex devotione consecuti.

His devotion.

63.

His excellent wife.

Accidit etiam eisdem in partibus, pueri cujusdam, pullos columbinos in ecclesia Sancti David de Lanmays[4] a nido surripere volentis, lapidi supposito manum adhæsisse; miraculosa forte sancti illius vindicta, avium ecclesiæ suæ indemnitatem procurantis. Cumque die-

The boy and the pigeon's nest in the church of Llanfaes.

---

[1] *onerare sed verius*] D. Rd. Not in He. Camden has "onerare seu "potius."

[2] *fieret, transtulit,* and *repetiit*] D. Rd.; fiat, transfert, and repetit, R. B. He. So again in the next sentence; habebat, invitabat, and refunderetur, in D. Rd.; habet, invitat, and refundatur, in R. B. He. See note 5, p. 22. This change, from the present to the past tense, proves that the edition of this treatise as in D. was not issued by Giraldus before 1211, the year of William de Breusa's death (*Wendover, Waverley Annals, &c.*).

[3] *Qui utinam . . consecuti*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. He.

[4] *Lanmays*] D.; Lammais, R. B.

bus tribus et noctibus puer, cum parentibus et amicis, in ipsa ecclesia coram altari, vigiliis, jejuniis, et orationibus institissent,[1] tandem die tertio, vinculo divinitus relaxato, manum a lapide virtus quæ ligavit absolvit.

Vidimus eundem, apud Niweburiam in Anglia manentem, se Menevensi episcopo David secundo ibidem præsentantem, et transactis ætatum gradibus jam senem ex puero factum, quoniam in episcopi illius diocesi ista contigerant, sibi hæc accidisse certissima relatione confitentem. Lapis vero in ecclesia prædicta quasi pro reliquiis usque in hodiernum reservatur, digitorum[2] vestigiis tanquam in cera pressorum in silice comparentibus.

A like miracle at Bury St. Edmund's.

63 b.

Miraculum[3] autem haud longe dissimile his nostris diebus accidit apud Sanctum Edmundum. Mulier miserrima, ad scrinium viri sancti quasi sub devotionis obtentu accedere consueta, non tamen afferre quicquam sed auferre parata, argentum et aurum ab aliis oblatum, exquisito furti genere, deosculando ablambere solebat, et ore reconditum asportare. Quæ cum semel, ut sæpius consueverat, id fecisset, labiis et lingua feretro firmiter adhæsit, argentumque ingestum divinitus deprehensa palam evomuit. Accurrentibus quoque multis et admirantibus, tam Judæis quam Christianis, majori diei parte, ut amplior virtus elucesceret et nulli dubium foret, ibi immota remansit et inconvulsa.

And at Howden.

Item in borealibus Angliæ trans. Humbriam finibus, in ecclesia de Hovedene, personæ ejusdem ecclesiæ concubina tumbæ Sanctæ Osanæ sororis regis Osredi ligneæ, in sedilis modum super aream eminenti, minus caute insedit. Quæ cum inde recedere vellet, fixis

---

[1] *institissent*] D. Rd., Camden; institisset, R. B. Hc.

[2] *digitorum*] D. Rd.; quinque digitorum, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[3] The three next sections, *Miraculum . . . . ceciderunt*, in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

ligno natibus, avelli non potuit, donec accurrente populo, scissis vestibus, et corpore nudato, et crebris disciplinis usque ad sanguinis profluvium acriter afflicto, cum lacrimis quoque multis et supplicationibus, compunctione secuta et pœnitentia injuncta, divinitus laxata recessit.

De psalterio quoque Quenredæ, sororis Sancti Kenelmi, cujus instinctu interfectus erat, virtus magna nostris diebus emicuit; cum subcelerarius, vigilia Sancti Kenelmi sero, apud Winchelecumbe, adventantibus mulierum turbis de vicinia et notitia monachorum ad festum, ut solent, cum quadam illarum inter septa monasterii fornicationem incurrit. Qui die crastino, ad processionem, psalterium prædictum inter reliquias sanctorum ferre præsumens, completa processionis solemnitate reversus in chorum, idem manibus suis firmiter adhærens deponere non prævaluit. Qui stupefactus plurimum et confusus, tandem delictum hesternum ad mentem revocans, confessione facta et pœnitentia injuncta, fratrum orationibus adjutus, et propria compunctione contritus, a vinculo divinitus dato demum 64.
absolvi meruit et laxari. Liber autem ille ideo in veneratione magna ibi tenetur, quia cum corpus Kenelmi exanime deferretur, et clamarunt turbæ, "Martyr "Dei est; est vere; martyr Dei est," respondit Quenreda, fratricidii rea et conscia, "Adeo vere martyr est, "sicut verum est quod oculi mei super psalterium "istud eruti jacent:" ea enim hora psalterium forte legebat. Et statim oculi ejus ambo a capite divinitus avulsi in librum apertum, ubi et vestigia sanguinis adhuc apparent, ceciderunt.

And at Winchcombe.

Præterea de torque, quam Sancti Kanauci[1] dicunt, tacendum non censui. Est etenim auro tam pondere

The torque of St. Cynawg.

---

[1] *Kanauci*] D. Rd.; Karauci, R. B.; Canauci, Hc. Cynawg, or Cynog, a Brecknockshire saint of the fifth century, the eldest of the many sons of Brychan. See Rice Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 138.

et natura quam colore simillima;[1] ex quatuor frustis, sicut ex rimulis patet, orbiculariter in[2] invicem insitis artificiose conserta,[1] et capite quasi canino, rictuosis hinc inde dentibus extante, per medium complexa.[1] Hanc autem pro reliquiis habent indigenæ virtuosissimis, adeo ut, hac coram posita, nemo pejerare præsumat. Apparet autem ictus in torque magnus, quasi ferreo marculo factus. Quidam enim, ut fertur, auri cupidine ductus, cum annulum infringere niteretur, vindictam divinitus sentiens, oculo est statim orbatus utroque; et sic, quamdiu postea vixit, tædiosam in tenebris vitam perduxit.[3]

The horn of St. Patrick.

De cornu quoque Sancti Patricii, non aureo quidem sed æneo, quod in partes istas ab Hibernia nuper advenit,[4] haud dissimiliter obstupendum. Cujus virtus, ex fatua et inepta Bernardi presbyteri cornicatione, terribili exemplo in finibus istis primum emicuit. Vol. v. 180. Sicut[5] in *Hibernica Topographia* nostra[6] propalatur his verbis:[7]

"Vidimus quoque et in Gwallia, unde et vehementer admiramur, bajulum quemdam[8] cornu quoddam æneum, quod Sancti Patricii fuisse dicebat, pro reliquiis in collo gestantem. Dicebat autem, ob reverentiam sancti illius neminem ausum hoc sonare. Cum igitur, Hibernico more, circumstanti populo cornu porrigeret osculandum, sacerdos quidam, 64 b. Bernardus nomine, de manibus ejus illud abripuit; et oris apponens angulo, aeremque impellens, sonare cœpit. Qui

[1] *simillima, conserta,* and *complexa*] D. Rd.; simillimus, consertus, and complexus, R. B. Hc. So also in next sentence, hanc, hac, and posita, in D. Rd.; hunc, hoc, and posito, in R. B. Hc.

[2] *in*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[3] *perduxit*] D. Rd.; duxit, R. B. Hc.

[4] *advenit*] D. Rd.; obvenit, R. B. Hc. seems corrupt; "obeuit" the word looks plainly.

[5] *Sicut*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; Sicut et, D.

[6] *nostra*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[7] *his verbis*] This, and the next section, *Vidimus . . . plena,* in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[8] *bajulum quemdam*] So the late MSS. of the *Top. Hib.*; but in the early ones he is described as "Hiberniensem pauperem et mendicum" (vol. v. p. 180, n. 4).

"et eadem hora, multis astantibus, ore quidem auretenus "paralytice retorto, duplici passione percussus est. Cum "enim torrentis eloquii prius extitisset, et delatoris linguam "detractor habuisset, sermonis cujuslibet usum statim amisit. "Unde et in hac parte sic læsus est, ut semper hactenus "linguæ fuerit impeditæ. Præterea, lethargum patiens, sic "statim oblivioni cuncta tradiderat, ut vix etiam se nomen "habuisse meminisset. Enimvero tam enormiter in memoria "læsus fuerat, ut psalmos, quos antea cordetenus optime "noverat, multis abinde diebus quasi de novo recordantem "videremus: et literas etiam, quarum notitiam copiose satis "habuerat, denuo mendicantem tanquam elementarium senem "miraremur. Cui tandem in Hiberniam, ad Sanctum Patri-"cium, excessus hujus causa peregre profecto, plenior valetudo "rediit, sed non plena."

Campanas [1] namque bajulas, baculos quoque in superiori parte cameratos, auro et argento vel ære contectos,[2] aliasque hujusmodi sanctorum reliquias, in magna reverentia[3] tam Hiberniæ et Scotiæ, quam et Gwalliæ populus et clerus habere solent: adeo ut sacramenta super hæc longe magis quam super evangelia et præstare vereantur et pejerare. Quippe ex vi quadam occulta, et his quasi divinitus insita, necnon et vindicta, cujus præcipue sancti illi appetibiles esse videntur, plerumque puniuntur contemptores, et graviter animadvertitur in transgressores. Reverence for bells, pastoral staves, &c.

De cornu quoque[4] Patricii hoc equidem notabile censui, quod ad aurem apposito capite foraminis ampliore, dulcisonam audias per se sonoritatem emitti; qualis ex cithara nudata, aura leniter impulsa, melodia solet educi.

Contigit autem his nostris diebus, eisdem in finibus, quod et notabile censui, suillam silvestrem, quia canem The sporting sow. 65.

[1] *Campanas . . . transgressores*] This section also is from *Top. Hib.* (vol. v. p. 179), but not in exactly the same words.

[2] *contectos*] D. Rd., Camden; contextos, R. B. Hc., *Top. Hib.*

[3] *reverentia*] Hc. D. Rd., Camden, *Top. Hib*; veneratione, R. B.

[4] *quoque*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

forte lactuerat odoris naribus[1] sagacem, cujus mamillis apposita fuerat, adultam in ferarum persecutione ad miraculum usque fuisse pervalidam, adeo quidem ut molossis, ad hoc natura juvante tam institutis quam instructis, odora sagacitate longe præstantior inveniretur.[2] Argumentum tam hominem, quam animal[3] quodlibet, ab illa, cujus lacte nutritur, naturam contrahere.

Prodigious birth of a calf from a man.

In eisdem[4] quoque finibus, et eodem fere tempore, res accidit prodigiosa. Miles enim, cui nomen Gillebertus, cognomen vero Hagurnellus, post diutinos continuosque fere triennii languores, et gravissimas tanquam parturientis angustias, demum, videntibus multis, per egestionis fenestram vitulum edidit: novi alicujus et inusitati futuri casus ostentum, aut potius nefandi criminis ultricem declarans indignationem.

The half-stag horse of St. Illtyd.

Præterea, ex antiquis et authenticis partium istarum scriptis colligitur, tempore quo Sanctus Eltutus[5] heremiticam apud Lanhamelach vitam exegit, jumentum ejusdem, quo cibaria ipsius deferri consueverant, cervo emissario pregnans effectum esse: ex quo et miræ velocitatis equus prodiit, anteriori parte equi naturam præferens, posterius vero in cervum descendens.

Bernard de Newmarch the first Norman occupier of this province (c. 1093).

Primus Normannorum hanc provinciam, quæ tribus cantaredis[6] distincta conseritur, Bernardus de Novo Mercatu nova contra Kambriæ fines conquisitione possedit. Hic filiam Nestæ, filiæ Griffini filii Lewelini,[7]

---

1 *odoris naribus*] R. B. Rd.; odoris narium, D.; odoribus naribus, Hc.; odorisequis naribus, Camden.

2 *inveniretur*] Hc. D. Rd.; invenitur, R. B.

3 *animal*] B. Hc. D. Rd.; aliud, R. F.

4 The two next sections, *In eisdem . . descendens*, in Hc. D. Rd.; not in R. B.

5 *Eltutus*] The general Latin form is Iltutus. St. Illtyd is said to have lived in the fifth and sixth centuries: Rees's *Welsh Saints*, p. 178, &c.

6 The three Cantrevs of Brecheiniog, according to prince Llywelyn's Survey (*Myvyr. Archaiol.*, ii. 606), were Cantrev Selyv, Cantrev Canol, and Cantrev Mawr.

7 Gruffudd ab Llywelyn, prince of North Wales, was sovereign of all Wales, according to the Brut y Tywysogion, from 1037 to 1061.

cujus tyrannis totam aliquamdiu Gualliam oppresserat, materno Nestam nomine, quam et Angli vertendo Anneis vocavere, sibi matrimonio copulavit: ex qua et prolem suscepit, in qua miles egregius, cui nomen Mahel, hac paternum[1] injuria conquestum amisit. Mater ejusdem, contra jugale[2] vinculum, adulterinis amplexibus militem quemdam adamavit.[3] Quo comperto, militem noctu a matre redeuntem filius offendens, flagellatum graviter mutilatumque cum dedecore remisit magno. Mater vero, mira facti confusione percussa, muliebrique dolore anxie concussa,[4] totum in vindictam virus evomuit. Accedens igitur ad Anglorum regem Henricum primum, assertione vindice magis quam vera proposuit, et coram curia publice sacramento corporaliter præstito confirmavit, filium suum Mahelem non a Bernardo, sed ab[5] alio quodam, quem secretis et illicitis adamaverat amplexibus, fuisse progenitum. Cujus juramenti vel potius[6] perjurii causa, rex Henricus, voluntate magis quam ratione permotus, primævam prædictæ mulieris filiam, quam ex Bernardi semine professa est vere fuisse susceptam, juveni de familia sua et militi insigni, Miloni scilicet filio Walteri constabularii Gloverniæ, cum honore de Brecheniauc nuptui dedit. Qui postmodum, a regis ejusdem filia et imperatrice Romana Matillide, comes Herefordiæ creatus est. Hic prolem egregiam ex eadem uxore suscepit;[7] in qua filii quinque, milites insignes, Rogerus, Gualterus, Henricus, Guillelmus, et Mahel, nescio qua vindicta, quave fatalitate sinistra, intempestiva nece rebus humanis exempti sunt. Et tamen

Adultery of his Welsh wife Nesta.

65 b.

Her shameless assertion, or perjury.

Milo, in right of his wife, her daughter, lord of Brecknock.

Their sons.

---

[1] *paternum . . . conquestum*] D. Rd.; paternam . . conquisitionem, R. B. Hc.

[2] *jugale*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; conjugale, D.

[3] *adamavit*] D. Rd.; adamabat, R. B. Hc.

[4] *concussa*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; perculsa, D.

[5] *ab*] B. Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. F.

[6] *potius*] R. B. Hc. Rd. Not in D.

[7] *suscepit*] D. Rd., Camden; suscitavit, R. B. Hc.

omnes, præter Guillelmum, sibi invicem sine prole paternam in hereditatem successerunt.

Sic igitur hæc mulier, muliebri non degenerans a natura, ut vindici satisfaceret iracundiæ, cum gravi pudicitiæ jactura, cum damno dedecoris atque pudoris, uno eodemque facinore et filium patrimonio, et se privavit honore.

Nec mirum si mulier innatæ malitiæ morem gerat.
Eccles. vii. 29. Legitur enim[1] in Ecclesiaste; "Virum de mille unum "reperi; mulierem non inveni." Et in Ecclesiastico;
Ecclus. xxv. 22. "Non est caput nequius super caput colubri, et non "est[2] ira super iram mulieris." Item in eodem; "Bre-
xxv. 26. "vis est hominis[3] malitia super malitiam mulieris."
66. Et ut de spinis uvas, de tribulis ficus colligamus,
Cicero. muliebrem describens naturam Tullius ait; "Viri forte, "unius alicujus commodi causa, unum aliquando scelus "perpetrabunt: feminæ vero, unius explendæ voluntatis causa, omnia simul scelera perpetrare non "formidabunt." Item Juvenalis loquens de mulieribus inquit;

Juv. vi. 284. "Nihil est audacius illis
"Deprensis: iram atque animos a crimine sumunt."

Et alibi;

x. 328. "Mulier sævissima tunc est,
"Cum stimulos odio pudor admovet."

Et alibi;[4] vindicta quia

xiii. 191. "Nemo magis quam femina gaudet."

Their son Mahel's ill-treatment. Prædictorum autem fratrum quinque, et filiorum comitis Milonis, penultimus[5] ille, et postremus here-

---

[1] *enim*] Hc. D.; etenim, R. B. Rd., Camden.

[2] *est*] R. B. Hc. Rd., with Vulgate; not in D.

[3] *hominis*] Instead of this the Vulgate has "omnis."

[4] *et alibi . . gaudet*] D. Rd.; et in eodem; Collige quod vindicta nemo magis gaudet quam femina, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *penultimus*] This ought to be "ultimus," according to the enumeration of the sons *supra*.

ditatis possessor, inhumana præ ceteris crudelitate notabilis, adeo in Menevensem episcopum David secundum, suasque tam possessiones, quam terras et homines, desævire statuerat, ut a finibus de Brecheniauc non præsul jam, sed tanquam exul existens, tam Angliam quam alias diocesis suæ partes frequentaret. Contigit autem interea ut in castro de Broynles [1] cum Waltero de Cliffordia Mahel [2] hospitio susceptus, ædibus casuali incendio consumptis, lapide a principali turre deorsum cadente percussus in capite letaliter obrueretur. Et statim missis nunciis, prædicto loci episcopo cum festinatione revocato, voce miserabili proclamavit; " O pater et pontifex noster, crudelem nimis " in me vindictam sanctus vester exercuit, non con- " versionem peccatoris exspectans, sed mortem magis " et eversionem accelerans." Et cum hujusmodi verba lugubri lamentatione sæpius ingeminasset, anno dominationis suæ nondum completo, vitam pariter et tyrannidem terminavit,[3] et propriæ præco confusionis expiravit.[4]

of the bishop of St. David's

His death.

Erat autem antiquitus regionis illius, quæ Brecheniauc dicitur, dominator vir potens et nobilis, cui nomen Brechanus;[5] a quo et terra Brecheniauc denominata.[6] De quo mihi notabile videtur, quod ipsum viginti quatuor habuisse filias historiæ Britannicæ testantur, omnes a pueritia divinis deditas obsequiis, et in sanc-

Brychan (c. A.D. 400–450), from whom the name Brecheiniog.

---

[1] *Broynles*] D.; Brenlais, R. B. Broullys, or Brwynlyss, a village between Brecknock and Hay, where, according to Sir R. C. Hoare, are still some remains of Clifford's castle.

[2] *Mahel*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[3] *vitam pariter et tyrannidem terminavit*] D. Rd.; tyrannium terminavit, R. B.; tyrannidem terminavit, Hc.

[4] *et propriæ . . expiravit*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[5] *Brechanus*] D.; Brachanus, R. B. Brychan of Welsh writers. He had 24 sons, and 25 daughters, according to some authorities. See Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 136.

[6] *denominata*] D. Rd.; denominata est, R. B. Hc., Camden.

66 b. titatis[1] assumptæ proposito vitam feliciter terminasse. Extant autem basilicæ adhuc per Kambriam multæ, earum nominibus illustratæ: quarum una in provincia de Brecheniauc, non procul a castro principali de Aberhotheni, in collis cujusdam vertice sita, quæ Sanctæ Aelivedhæ[2] ecclesia dicitur: hoc etenim virginis sanctæ nomen extiterat, quæ et ibidem terreni regis nuptias respuens, æterno nubens regi, felici martyrio triumphavit.

His daughter, St. Elined.

Celebratur autem solemnis ejusdem dies, eodem in loco, singulis annis in capite kalendarum Augusti: ubi et eodem die multi de plebe longinquis ex partibus convenire solent; et variis languentes infirmitatibus, meritis beatæ virginis, optatam recipere sanitatem consueverant. Illud autem hoc in loco mihi notabile videtur, quod in omni fere solemnitate hujus virginis accidere consuevit. Videas enim hic homines seu puellas, nunc in ecclesia, nunc in cœmiterio, nunc in chorea quæ circa cœmiterium cum cantilena circumfertur, subito in terram corruere, et primo tanquam in extasim ductos et quietos, deinde statim tanquam in phrenesim raptos exsilientes, opera quæcunque festis diebus illicite perpetrare consueverant, tam manibus quam pedibus coram populo repræsentantes. Videas hunc aratro manus aptare, illum quasi stimulo boves excitare; et utrumque, quasi laborem mitigando, solitas barbaræ modulationis voces efferre. Videas hunc artem sutoriam, illum pellipariam imitari. Item videas hanc,

Her feast-day, Aug. 1.

Strange frenzies of her devotees.

---

[1] *sanctitatis*] F. Hc. D. Rd.; sanctitate, R. B. I believe this to be about the only instance I have noted, where F. gives the right reading instead of a wrong one of R.

[2] *Aelivedhæ*] D.; Ailphethæ, R. B. Rice Rees (*Welsh Saints*, 149) calls her Elined; and says that her church, on the hill near Brecknock, was called Slwch chapel (150, 325). He follows, as to her name, the *Myvyrian Archaiology:* other Welsh authorities call her Elevetha, and Aled. See Robert Williams' *Biogr. Dict. of Eminent Welshmen*, under Almedha.

quasi colum bajulando, nunc filum manibus et brachiis in longum extrahere, nunc extractum occando tanquam in fusum revocare; istam deambulando productis filis quasi telam ordiri; illam sedendo quasi jam orditam oppositis lanceolæ jactibus, et alternis calamistræ cominus ictibus, texere mireris. Demum vero intra ecclesiam cum oblationibus ad altare perductos, tanquam experrectos et ad se redeuntes obstupescas.

Sic itaque divina miseratione, quæ peccantium con- 67.
versione magis gaudet quam eversione, multos, ultionem hujusmodi tam videndo quam sentiendo, festis de cetero feriando diebus, corrigi constat et emendari.

Fertility of this region.

Est igitur hæc terra satis abundans grano: et si quis est defectus innato, ex Anglicanæ vicinitatis copia affatim suppletur allato. Pascuis et silvis, feris et armentis terra fecunda.

The fish of its rivers.

Fluvialibus quoque piscibus abundat, quos hinc Oscha,[1] inde Waia[1] ministrat. Salmonibus enim et turtris utraque; sed plus illis[2] Waia, plus istis Oscha fecunda est. Hiemali quoque tempore Waiæ salmones, æstivo vero Oschæ tempestivi reperiuntur. Egregiis vero, quas et Umbras vocant, sola thymallis Waia fecunda est. In quorum laudem, quoniam et Mediolani abundant, in Ambrosii libris[3] reperitur. "Quid," inquit, "aspectu pulchrius, quid odore "suavius, quid gustu jocundius?"

Hexæm. lib. v. cap. ii.

The lake of Brecknock.

Luciis quoque et perchiis, turtrisque peroptimis, et tenchis, anguillisque lutosis, lacus ille de Brecheniauc magnus et famosus, quem et Clamosum dicunt, patriam replet. De quo, quod parum ante hæc nostra tempora contigit,[4] prætereundum non putavi.

---

[1] *Oscha . . Waia*] D.; Osca . . Vaga, R. B. He. Rd.

[2] *sed plus illis Waia . . . tempestive reperiuntur*] He. D. Rd; "sed "plus Osca" only, in R. B.

[3] *Ambrosii libris*] D. Rd.; Ambrosia, R. B.; Ambrosio, He. Giraldus must be loosely quoting from memory, if I am right in my reference. The words of St. Ambrose there are, speaking of the Thymallus, "Quid specie tua gratius, quid "suavitate jocundius, quid odore "fragrantius?"

[4] *contigit*] D. Rd.; contigerat, R. B. He.

Tempore namque Anglorum regis Henrici primi, Griphino filio Resi, filii Theodori, quanquam unius kemmoti solum, id est, quartæ partis cantaredi, de Kaoc[1] scilicet in Cantrefmaur,[1] tunc domino, nomine tamen et nobilitate tenus in Sudwallia, quam Kambri Deheubarth, id est, dextralem Walliæ partem vocant, sub rege principante, cum idem Griphinus a curia regis per lacum prædictum, fluvialibus diversorum generum aviculis hiemali algore redundantem, reverteretur, duces habens et deductores[2] Milonem, Herefordiæ comitem et de Brecheniauc dominatorem, necnon et Paganum filium Johannis, in cujus manu tunc Ewias fuerat; qui duo tunc temporis inter regis secretarios et præcipuos consiliarios pro magnis habebantur; comes Milo, ut aliquem a Griphino nobilitatis innatæ sermonem eliceret, in hæc verba ludicro magis quam serio prorupit. "Antiquum," inquit, "verbum, et ab antiquo in Wallia retentum "est, quod si naturalis Walliæ princeps, ad hunc lacum "veniens, avibus ejusdem præceperit ut canant, statim "omnes canent." Ad quod Griphinus, plus animo dives quam auro, ob hereditatis namque diminutionem nihil unquam animositatis, nihil dignitatis imminuens, subjecit: "Tu itaque, qui te terræ istius nunc domi-"num geris, primo præcipias." At illo frustra præcipiente, sicut et præcepto Griphini postea quoque Pagano, videns Griphinus ad eorundem instantiam sibi jam præcipiendi lege consortii necessitatem incumbere, statim ab equo descendens, et in orientem genua ponens, tanquam duelli conflictum ibidem ingressurus, nunc cernuus in terram et humiliter prostratus, nunc oculis ac manibus in cœlum intentus, devotas ad Deum fudit orationes. Tandem itaque se ab orationibus eri-

Milo, earl of Hereford, and lord of Brecheiniog; and Payn Fitz-John, lord of Ewyas.

67 b.

Testimony of the wild fowl of this lake to Gruffudd ab Rhys being the rightful

[1] *Kaoc . . . Cantrefmaur*] D.; Kaiec . . . Kantermaur, R. B. Giraldus seems here to make a mistake; Caeo, which I suppose to be his Kaoc, is a comot, not of Cantrev Maur, but of Cantrev Bychan, in Caermarthen. See Llywelyn's Survey, *Myvyr. Archaiol.* ii. 606.

[2] *deductores*] B. Hc. D. Rd.; ductores, R. F.

gens, et crucis signaculo frontem ac faciem signans, palam ac publice proclamavit; "Deus omnipotens et "omnia sciens, Domine Jesu Christe, tuam hic hodie "declara virtutem. Quoniam si ex naturalibus Walliæ "principibus me linealiter descendere fecisti, avibus "istis ut hoc denuncient in nomine tuo præcipio." Et continuo aviculæ cunctæ, quælibet in suo genere, alis expansis aquam verberando, canere una et proclamare cœperunt. Cunctis autem qui aderant stupidis effectis et consternatis, comes et Paganus ad curiam statim cum festinatione reversi, cuncta per ordinem regi cum admiratione maxima retulerunt. Quibus auditis, rex respondisse memoratur; "Per mortem," inquit, "Christi," quoniam hoc juramento uti consueverat, "non adeo est "admirandum. Quia licet[1] gentibus illis per vires "nostras magnas injuriam et violentiam irrogemus, "nihilominus tamen in terris eisdem jus hereditarium[2] "habere noscuntur."

prince of South Wales.

68. Other marvels of this lake.

Plurimis[3] quoque, ut accolæ testantur, lacus iste miraculis pollet. Quemadmodum enim viridis aliquoties, sicut præscripsimus, coloris, sic et sanguineus aliquando nostris diebus repertus est; non universaliter tamen, sed quasi per venas quasdam et rivulos sanguinem manare compertus est. Ad hæc etiam totus ædificiis consertus, culturis egregiis, hortis ornatus et pomeriis, ab accolis quandoque conspicitur. Sub bruma quoque glacie constrictus, et aquarum superficie in lubricam testam frigore[4] concreta, sonum horribilem, tanquam multorum animalium[5] in unum collectorum mugitum,[5] emittit. Sed hoc forte, glaciali testudine[6] deorsum residente, aeris inclusi, et per fenestras occultas

[1] *Quia licet*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; Quibuslibet, D.

[2] *eisdem jus hereditarium*] D. Rd.; jus naturaliter, R. B.; "jus" only in Hc.

[3] This section, *Plurimis . . . . eruptio*, in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[4] *frigore*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[5] *animalium*, and *mugitum*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[6] *testudine*] Hc. Rd., Camden; testitudine, D.

sensim exhalantis, subita interdum et violenta facit eruptio.

This region well sheltered by mountains.

Præterea montibus excelsis, præterquam a borea, hæc undique terra concluditur: a zephyro montana de Cantrebochan,[1] ab austro montes habens meridionales, quorum principalis Kaerarthur[2] dictus, id est, cathedra[3] Arthuri, propter gemina promontorii cacumina in cathedræ[3] modum se præferentia. Et quoniam in alto cathedra et in arduo sita est, summo et maximo Britonum regi Arthuro vulgari nuncupatione est assignata. In excelso montis hujus vertice fontis ebullit scaturigo. Est autem fons in putei modum altus, sed quadratus, nullum ex se rivulum faciens, in quo tamen et turtræ[4] quandoque, ut fertur, sunt repertæ.

His igitur obstaculis ad meridiem appositis, a phœbeo patriam fervore frigidior aura defendit, et insita aeris salubritate temperatissimam reddit. Ab euro vero de Talgarth[5] et Ewyas montana prætendit. Quorum incolæ continuis inimicitiis, et odio implacabili, mutuis vulneribus sanguinem fundere et cædibus insistere non desistunt.

Quanti[6] vero et quam enormes excessus super matrimoniis cruentissimis, protractis tamen potius quam
68 b. contractis, et sanguinolento divortio præpeditis, ceterisque multis crudeliter exactis, hoc nostro tempore finibus istis acciderint, aliis explicare locum damus.

---

[1] *Cantrebochan*] D.; Kanterbochan, R. B. And so in other instances. Cantrev Bychan is one of the hundreds of Caermarthen.

[2] *Kaerarthur*] D.; Kairarthur, R. B. Cadair Arthur, now more commonly called the Van, or Bannau Brecheiniog.

[3] *cathedra*, and *cathedræ*] D. Rd., Camden; castrum, and castri, Hc. This reading of the second edition agrees best with Giraldus's "Kaer-" arthur."

[4] *et turtræ . . repertæ*] D., Camden; "turtræ reperiuntur" only, in R. B. Hc. Rd.; the latter MS. having "truttæ" instead of "tur-" træ."

[5] *Talgarth*] D.; Talgar, R. B. Talgarth is a parish in Brecknockshire. The Talgarth mountains are now called the Black Mountains.

[6] *Quanti . . damus*] This section in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[CAP III.]

De Ewias et Lanthonei,[1] *cum notabilibus suis.*

Stat autem in valle de Ewias profundissima, quantum sagittæ est jactus arcu ter missæ, montibus æthereis orbiculariter undique conclusa, ecclesia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, plumbeis laminis operta, lapideoque tabulatu pro loci natura non indecenter exstructa: in loco videlicet ubi paupercula prius Sancti David archiepiscopi capella steterat, musco silvestri solum et hederæ nexibus adornata. Vere religioni locus idoneus, et disciplinæ canonicæ præ cunctis insulæ Britannicæ cœnobiis competentissimus; a duobus eremitis in honorem eremitæ primo fundatus, ab omni populari strepitu in solitudine quadam longe remotus, super fluvium Hotheni[2] per vallis ima labentis situs. Unde et ab Hotheni Lanthotheni dictus: *Lan* enim locus ecclesiasticus sonat. Exquisitius tamen dici potest, quod propria loci illius nuncupatio Kambrice est Nanthotheni. *Nant* etenim rivus dicitur aquæ decurrentis: unde et usque hodie ab accolis locus iste lingua Kambrica Landewi Nanthotheni vocatur, hoc est, ecclesia David[3] super rivum Hotheni.

The vale of Ewyas, and Llantoni abbey.

The more correct name of Llantoni.

Corrupte igitur Angli Lanthotheni dicunt: ubi vel Nanthotheni, per *N* et *t*, id est, rivus[4] Hotheni, vel Lanhotheni, [scilicet][5] per *L* sine *t*, id est, ecclesia Hotheni, dici deberet.

Pluviæ[6] quas montana creant hic creberrimæ, venti

---

[1] *Lanthonei*] D. Rd.; Lanthodheni, R. B. Llantoni abbey in Monmouthshire.

[2] *Hotheni*] D.; Hodheni, R. B.; and so generally.

[3] *David*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; Davidis, D. *Landewi Nanthotheni* is Llanddewi Nant Honddu of Welsh writers.

[4] *rivus*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc. has "vallis" instead.

[5] *scilicet*] D. Not in R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden.

[6] *Pluviæ*] Hc. D. Rd.; pluviæ vero, R. B.

pervalidi, nebulæ sub bruma fere continuæ. Et tamen aeris, quanto obtusioris tanto benignioris et clementioris, salubri[1] temperantia, morbi rarissimi.

Adeo quidem[2] ut fratres apud filiam, diutino labore consumpti et desperabiliter afflicti, tanquam ad salubre
69. remedium et unicum sospitatis asylum, ad matris ubera translati, optatæ sanitati restituantur. Nam
Vol. v. 71. sicut *Hibernica Topographia* nostra[3] testatur, quanto ad euri partes magis acceditur, tanto cœli faciem quo purior et subtilior, tanto penetrabilior et inclementior aer illustrat. Quanto vero ad circii zephyrique fines magis vergitur, occiduam temperiem quo nubilosior et obtusior, tanto benignior atque salubrior aura fecundat.

Hic claustrales, in claustro sedentes, cum respirandi gratia forte suspiciunt, ad quascunque partes trans alta tectorum culmina, montium vertices quasi cœlum tangentes, et ipsas[4] plerumque feras, quarum hic copia, in summo pascentes, tanquam in ultimo visus horizonte prospiciunt. Hora vero diei quasi circa primam, vel parum ante,[5] super montium cacumina vix emergens, etiam sereno tempore, corpus hic solare primo conspicitur.

This abbey now supplanted by the daughter near Gloucester.

Vere locus contemplationi idoneus, locus felix et amœnus, locus a primæva institutione sibi sufficiens et fecundus; nisi ob Anglicani luxus opulentiam, et lautæ mensæ gloriam, ambitiosa quadam intemperantia, vitio quoque ingratitudinis invalescente, in servitutem quæ libera fuerat, prælatorum pariter et patronorum[6] negligentia, jam redacta, non minus invide quam invise matrem filia facta privigna supplantasset.

---

[1] *salubri*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; salubris, D.

[2] This section, *Adeo quidem . . . fecundat*, in Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[3] *nostra*] D. Rd. Not in Hc.

[4] *et ipsas*] D.; ipsas, Rd.; ipsasque, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *circa primam vel parum ante*] D. Rd.; inter primam et tertiam, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[6] *pariter et patronorum*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

Hic autem mihi notabile videtur, quod priores omnes, locum de quo loquimur adversantes, flagellati divinitus occubuere. Prior Guillelmus, qui prius armentis et armariis locum spoliavit, demum dejectus a fratribus et depositus, inter priores sepulturam non meruit. Clemens vero, qui quanquam locum, lectionis et orationis gratia, diligere et frequentare videretur, tamen ad exemplum Hely sacerdotis, quoniam diripientium et delinquentium fratrum errorem nec reprehendit nec repressit, paralytica passione percussus interiit. Rogerus autem, qui plus ceteris locum infestans, et cuncta quæ ab aliis relicta videbantur palam asportans, libris, ornamentis, et privilegiis ecclesiam ex toto privavit, longe ante obitum paralysim incurrens, 69 b. et honori [1] cedens, diutino languore consumptus, vitam pariter et valetudinem terminavit.

Punishment of the priors who plundered it.

Tempore vero Anglorum regis Henrici primi, matre florente tam rerum affluentia quam religione famosissima, quæ tamen duo comitantia raro reperies, filia quippe matris æmula nondum genita, utinam et ab ævo non gignenda, Rogerum Salisburiensem episcopum, principalem regni tunc sub rege rectorem, huc fama tantæ religionis attraxit. Virtus enimvero est, virtutem diligere vel in altero; et magnum innatæ bonitatis indicium, ipsa quæ necdum vitaveris vitia animi judicio devovere. Hic, cum aliquamdiu loci naturam, eremiticam solitudinem, fratrum ibidem canonice viventium, Deoque servientium sine querela, sanctam et sine murmure conversationem, in singulis admirans considerasset, reversus ad regem, relatisque quæ ibi repererat relatione dignis, cum maximam diei partem in loci præscripti titulos expendisset, tandem in hoc verbo laudis præconia consummavit: "Quid," inquit, "plura? Totus tam regis quam regni thesaurus soli

Bishop Roger of Salisbury's admiration of Llantoni.

[1] *honori*] Hc. D. Ed.; honorem, R. B.

"claustro erigendo non sufficeret." Cum itaque tam regis quam curiæ totius animos in hujus verbi stuporem diutius suspendisset, tandem de montium claustris, quibus undique vallantur, ænigma sermonis exposuit.

The first founder;

Miles autem, cui nomen Guillelmus, qui primus loci illius[1] inventor fuit et cultor, necnon et presbyter Ernisius, qui se socium ei statim adjunxerat,[2] quoniam juxta Ieronimi sententiam forsitan audierant, sicut et[3] in *Vitis Patrum* legitur, Christi ecclesiam postquam crevit possessionibus decrevisse virtutibus, de vitiis pariter et divitiis incrementa sumendo, devotis ad Dominum orationibus in publica audientia sæpius efflagitare solebant, ut nunquam ad magnas possessionum opulentias locus iste perveniret: quoties im-
70. primis seu domini et patroni sui Hugonis de Lacy primi et primævi, seu aliorum fidelium largitione, tam terris quam beneficiis ecclesiasticis cœpit locus hic locupletari, dolentes valde.

and patron.

Plurima quoque, tam in prædiis quam ecclesiis in primis oblata, paupertatis amore respuerunt. Et in eremo positi, ne ab eremitica vita recederent,[4] loci condensa, quibus in hispidam silvam vallis excreverat, in planitiem redigi et extirpari non permiserunt. Unde et effectum est ut quam cito in immensum ditari cœperant et dotari, statim per Herefordiæ comitem Milonem, hostilitatis tamen tempore occasionem præstante, filia apud Gloverniam æmula matris emersit; tanquam divina providentia, meritis quoque sanctorum virorum et precibus,[5] quorum hic corpora duo coram principali altari recondita jacent, in superfluis

Milo, earl of Hereford, founder of the daughter near Gloucester.

---

[1] *illius*] D. Rd.; istius, R. B. Not in Hc.

[2] *adjunxerat*] D. Rd.; adjunxit, R. B. Hc.

[3] *et*] R. B. Hc. Rd. Not in D., Camden.

[4] *vita recederent*] B. Hc. D. Rd.; "discederent" only, without "vita," in R. F.

[5] *et precibus*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

rerum excrementis filia fundaretur, in laudabili quam semper appetiit mediocritate matre manente.[1]

Ibi igitur activi resideant, hic contemplativi. Ibi terrestrium ambitus divitiarum, hic cœlestium amor deliciarum. Ibi frequentiam habeant populorum, hic præsentiam appetant angelorum. Ibi mundi potentes suscipiantur, hic Christi pauperes reficiantur. Ibi, inquam, actiones perstrepant et declamationes, hic vero lectiones obmurmurent et orationes. Ibi vitiorum nutrix atque creatrix cum curis crescat et opulentia; hic virtutis alumna, mediocritas aurea, suppetat, et moderantia.

Utrinque tamen, tam hic quam ibi, quæ aliis hodie cunctis præeminet ordinibus, ab Augustino instituta canonica servatur disciplina. Benedicti namque regulam, in primæva paupertate laudatissimam, rerum opulentia postmodum fervore caritatis plurimum adaucta, et fidelium largitione multiplicata, sub pravæ[2] dispensationis obtentu crapula jugis et copia corruperunt.[3] Cisterciensis autem ordo, spontaneo pristinæ paupertatis et sanctitatis desiderio nuper a priore derivatus, in primis similiter digne laudari meruit et extolli: donec iterum cæca malorum mater obrepsit ambitio, nescia successibus modum ponere. Quoniam, ut ait Seneca, "Facit quidem avidos nimia felicitas: nec "tam temperatæ cupiditates unquam, ut in eo quod "contingit desinant. Gradus a magnis ad majora "fit; et spes improbissimas amplectuntur insperata "assecuti."[4] Cui et illud Ovidii concordare videtur;

Comparison of the monastic orders: the Austin canons the best.

Benedictine wealth, &c.

Cistercian avarice.

70 b.

De Clementia, i. 1.

"Luxuriant animi rebus plerumque secundis:
"Nec facile est æqua commoda mente pati."

Ov. Ars Am. ii. 437.

[1] *manente*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; remanente, D.

[2] *pravæ*] B. Hc. D. Rd., Camden; pravo, R. F.

[3] *corruperunt*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden: eruperunt, D.

[4] *assecuti*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden, with Seneca; consecuti, D. Just before, Seneca has "complec-"tuntur," instead of the *amplectuntur* of Giraldus.

Et illud ejusdem;

Fast. i. 211. "Creverunt et opes, et opum furiosa cupido:
"Et cum possideant plurima, plura petunt."[1]

Item et illud Horatii in *Libro Carminum*;

Hor. 3 Od. xxiv. 62. "Scilicet improbæ
"Crescunt divitiæ: tamen
"Curtæ nescio quid semper abest rei."

Et in eodem;

3 Od. xvi. 17. "Crescentem sequitur cura pecuniam,
"Majorumque[2] fames."

Ibid. 42. "Multa petentibus
"Desunt multa. Bene est, cui Deus obtulit
"Parca quod satis est manu."

Unde et Lucanus;

Phars. v. 527. "O vitæ tuta facultas
"Pauperis, angustique laris.[3] O munera nondum
"Intellecta deûm."

Petronius;

Petron. Fragm. 2. "Non[4] bibit inter aquas, nec poma fugacia[4] carpit
"Tantalus infelix, quem sua vota premunt.
"Divitis hæc magni facies erit, omnia late
"Qui tenet, et sicco concoquit[5] ore famem."

Armentis quippe et equitiis montana, porcis silvestria, capris nemorosa, ovibus pascua, pecudibus plana, ara-

---

[1] Instead of *petunt*, Ovid has "volunt."

[2] *Majorumque*] R. B., with Horace; Majorque, Hc. D. Rd., Camden.

[3] Lucan has "lares."

[4] Instead of *Non*, and *fugacia*, Petronius has "Nec" and "patentia." Giraldus, it would seem, must have had in his memory as well the line of Ovid:

"Quærit aquas in aquis, et poma
"fugacia captat
"Tantalus."—2 *Amor.* ii. 43.

[5] *concoquit*] R. B. Hc., Camden, with Petronius; decoquit, D. Rd.

tris rura, quanquam revera in se largissima, singula tamen, vitio mentis insatiabili, videntur angusta. Ideoque terræ occupantur, termini transponuntur, fines invaduntur: unde et nundinæ mercimoniis, et fora litigiis, et curiæ replentur querimoniis. De talibus autem in Isaia legitur; "Væ vobis qui conjungitis Is. v. 8.
"domum ad domum, et agrum agro copulatis usque "ad terminum loci. Numquid habitabitis soli vos in "medio terræ?" Si ergo sic invehitur propheta in eos qui usque ad terminum, quid in illos dicetur, qui longe ultra terminos? His igitur ex causis et similibus effectum est, ut veræ religionis color optimus adeo in falsitatis fucum sit jam conversus, adeo nigri interius mores candidis velantur operimentis, adeo, inquam,[1] 71.
interioris olim habitus

"Qui color albus erat nunc est contrarius albo," Ov. Met. ii. 541.

ut de his illud evangelicum vere videatur impletum; "Attendite ab his qui veniunt ad vos in vestimentis Matt. vii. 15.
"ovium, intrinsecus autem sunt lupi rapaces."

Good intention, perhaps, at the bottom of the Cistercian avidity.

Tantæ tamen, et tam declamatæ per orbem aviditatis, bona, ut credimus, occasionem præstat intentio. Hospitalitatis namque gratia, quam hujus ordinis viri, quanquam in se abstinentissimi, præ aliis cunctis, caritate largiflua in pauperes et peregrinos infatiganter exercent; et quia non redditibus, ut alii, sed labore solum et providentia vivunt; terras tanto conamine, quibus ad hæc peragenda sufficientiam eliciant, avide perquirunt, prædiaque summopere petunt et pascua lata. Verumtamen ad reprimendam et removendam ab ordine sacro detestandam ambitionis notam, utinam illud Salomonis interdum ad animum revocare velint; "Qui facit elemosynam[2] de substantia pauperis, tan-

---

[1] *inquam*] D. Rd.; inquam et, R. B. Hc.

[2] The Vulgate has (Ecclus. xxxiv. 24), "Qui offert sacrificium ex substantia pauperum, quasi qui victimat filium in conspectu patris sui."

"quam si filium victimet in conspectu patris." Et
Gregory. illud Gregorii; "Bonus usus non justificat male quæ-"sita." [Item[1] et illud Ambrosii; "Qui male accipit "ut bene dispenset, gravatur potius quam juvatur."
Rom. iii. 8. Tales enim cum Apostolo dicere videntur, "Faciamus "mala ut veniant bona." Scriptum est enim, "Talis "debet esse misericordia quæ suscipiatur, non quæ "repellatur; quæ peccata purget, non quæ reum "faciat ante Dominum; de justis laboribus tuis, non "de rebus alienis." Audi Salomonem dicentem; "Honora Dominum de tuis justis laboribus."[2] Quid dicturi sunt qui aliena rapiunt, et elemosynas fecerunt? O Domine, in nomine tuo misericordias fecimus, pauperes pavimus, nudos vestivimus, peregrinos hospitio recepimus. Quibus dicturus est Dominus; Quod dedistis dicitis, quod fecistis rapinam non dicitis: quos pavistis memoratis, et quos necastis non recordamini.]

Ambrose.

Richard I. and Fulco. Exemplum[3] autem de responso Ricardi regis Anglorum, facto magistro Fulconi viro bono et sancto, per quem Deus in Francorum regno nostris diebus multa proculdubio signa fecit, et hic interserere præter rem non putavi. Cum inter cetera vir ille sanctus regi dixisset; "Tres filias habetis, quæ quamdiu penes vos "fuerint, nunquam Dei gratiam habere poteritis; super-"biam scilicet, luxuriam, et cupiditatem." Cui rex, post modicam quasi pausationem, "Jam," inquit, "maritavi filias istas, et nuptui dedi; Templariis "superbiam, nigris monachis luxuriam, albis vero cu-"piditatem."

[Id etiam[4] pro valde mirando, de loco præscripto

[1] *Item, &c.*] Hence to end of section, *recordamini*, not in R. B. Hc. D. In Rd., Camden.

[2] The Vulgate has (Prov. iii. 9), "Honora Dominum de tua sub-"stantia."

[3] This section, *Exemplum . . . . cupiditatem*, in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.

[4] This section, *Id etiam . . repe-riuntur*, not in R. B. Hc. D. In Rd. and Camden.

Lanthonei dicto, vel potius quasi[1] pro miraculo duximus, quod in summis quibus clauditur undique montium verticibus, non petrosis aut saxosis, sed mollibus magis[2] et herbosis, Parii lapides reperiri soleant; qui et *Liberi* vulgo dicuntur, quia secabiles, ferroque quodam modo polibiles, sese quasi liberaliter præstant; ex quibus ecclesia ipsorum jam extat egregie constructa. Super quo quidem et hoc mirandum, quod quæsitis ad unguem per montana lapidibus illis, et ex toto prorsus abstractis, nullisque relictis qui reperiri ibidem amplius possent, infra tertium aut quartum diem iterum requisiti, tanquam dono seipsos offerentes, et se quærentibus ostendentes, in[3] copiosa multitudine reperiuntur.] The Parian, or Free-stone, of Llantoni.

De duobus tamen ordinibus istis,[4] Cluniacensi scilicet et Cisterciensi, hoc compertum habeas. Locum ædificiis egregie constructum, redditibus amplis et possessionibus locupletatum, istis hodie tradas; inopem in brevi destructumque videbis. Illis e diverso eremum 71 b. nudam, et hispidam silvam assignes: intra paucos postmodum annos, non solum ecclesias et ædes insignes, verum etiam possessionum copias, et opulentias multas ibidem invenies.[5] Hanc autem diversitatem, ut mihi videtur, morum diversitas parit et studiorum. Ut enim, salva utrorumque venia, veritati non parcam, illinc sobrietas juvat, parcimonia pariter et providentia; hinc vero voracitas obest, ventris ingluvies et intemperantia. Illi namque,[6] tanquam apes, in unum congerunt omnes et congregant, unanimitate conspicui; uno omnium existente loculo, et illo bene disposito. Isti vero congesta diutius, et devota fidelium largitione collata, diversis distrahunt animis et diripiunt The Clugniacs and Cistercians compared.

---

[1] *quasi*] Camden. Not in Rd.
[2] *magis*] Rd.; potius, Camden.
[3] *in*] Rd. Not in Camden.
[4] *istis*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc.
[5] *invenies*] D. Rd., Camden; abundanter invenies, R. B. Hc.
[6] *namque*] Hc. D. Rd.; nempe, R. B.

indesinenter;[1] multis existentibus et multorum loculis, quibus dum studiosius singuli tanquam propriis indulgent, minus proficitur in commune: quoniam, ut ait
Jug. 10. Salustius, "Concordia parvæ res crescunt, discordia "[vero][2] maximæ dilabuntur." Præterea isti,[3] de decem ferculis vel tredecim, quæ sibi de consuetudinis solo jure deberi contendunt, ingruente famis inedia, priusquam unum ad tempus intermitterent, terras domus suæ et prædia magna distrahi penitus et in perpetuum alienari permitterent; pauperes quoque catervatim ad januas occumbere, et fame deficere, non miserendo sustinerent. Illi vero, sicut et canonici, priusquam pauperem unum enormiter egere conspicerent, duorum quibus fere solis utuntur pulmentariorum altero zelo caritatis abstinerent.

His autem nostris diebus, ut tanquam a niveo corpore nævus abstergatur, in Cisterciensi capitulo statutum est, ne ab hoc unquam in posterum ordine, pretio quolibet, prædia vel pascua comparentur; tantum illa de cetero sufficiant, quæ[4] gratis obveniunt, et absque gravamine conferuntur.

The Austin canons. Prædictus igitur ordo canonicus, plus aliis mediocritate contentus atque modestia, etsi non plene, pluri-
72. mum tamen ambitioni stringit habenas; et in mundo positus, mundi pro posse contagia vitans, nec crapula

---

[1] *indesinenter*] Hc. D. Rd.; indeficienter, R. B.

[2] *vero*] Not in R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in Sallust. In D.

[3] *Præterea isti . . . abstinerent*] So this section in D. Rd. It is not at all in R. B. In Hc. it is: "Ad "hæc et isti, de xiii. vel xiiii. fer- "culis, quæ sibi de jure consuetu- "dinis deberi contendunt, tempore "famis et inediæ priusquam unum "remitterent, priusquam numerum "minuerent, aut a consuetudine "vel in modico recederent, terras "monasterii meliores et mansiones "in fœnebrem prædam perditum "ire, et, quod crudelius est, pau- "peres ad januas catervatim obire "permitterent et perire. Illi vero "arietes omnes et armenta, grano "deficiente, verum etiam de duobus "pulmentis, quibus contenti sunt, "alterum in usum pauperum, ur- "gente incommodo, laudabili cha- "ritate largiuntur." With this Camden's text generally agrees closely.

[4] *quæ*] Hc. D. Rd.; et quæ, R. B.

notabilis nec temulentia, pro luxu rerum sive libidine publicum in populo scandalum incurrere tam verecundatur quam veretur. Sicut in libro quem de ecclesiasticis ordinibus, Deo annuente, scripturi sumus, plenius explicabitur.

Præscriptis igitur in finibus temperatissimis, etsi non omen quoad gazas grande, tragicasque[1] mundi pompas adeptus, juxta usualia tamen vocabula nomen dignitatis obtinui; collateralem et propinquum principali de Brecheniauc castro loculum habens et domicilium, felici quadam mediocritate studiis idoneum atque labori. Quem suis semper deliciis plenum, et æternitatis amicum, Cresi divitiis longe præfero; quinimmo cunctis, quæ perire ac præterire possunt, incomparabiliter antepono. Sed ad rem revertamur.

Giraldus's residence near Brecknock, viz., at Llandduw, *supra*, 20.

[Cap. IV.]

De transitu per Coid[2] Wroneu et Abergavenni, cum notabilibus suis.

Transivimus inde versus Abergevenni, per arctum illud silvestre quod malum passum de Coit Wroneu, id est, de[3] silva Wroneu vocant, nobile cœnobium de Lanthotheni, montibus suis inclusum, a latere sinistro relinquentes. Dicitur autem[4] Abergevenni castrum eo loco situm, ubi fluvius Gevenni in Oscham cadit. Contigit autem, paulo[5] post obitum Anglorum regis Henrici primi, nobilem et magnificum virum Ricardum Clarensem,[6] qui cum honore de Clara Kereticam regi-

Progress to Abergavenny.

Murder of Richard de Clare, A.D. 1136.

---

[1] *tragicasque*] Hc. D. Rd., Camden; turgicasque, B.; turgidasque, R. F.

[2] *Coid*] D.; Coit, R. B.; *i.e.* Coet, a wood. Wroneu is the river Gronwy, or Grwyney.

[3] *de*] Hc. D. Not in R. B. Rd.

[4] *autem*] B. Hc. D., &c. Not in R. F.

[5] *paulo*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; parum, D.

[6] This Richard was of the elder branch of the Clares, uncle of Richard earl of Striguil, the invader

onem in australi Kambria possidebat, ab Anglia in Walliam hac transire. Et cum provinciæ illius tunc dominum, Brienum videlicet Gualinfordensem, cum militibus multis, usque ad passum prædictum socium[1] habuisset et deductorem,[2] tam ipsum, invitum [tamen],[3] in ipso silvæ ingressu cum suis remisit, quam contra ejusdem monita silvam inermis intravit: ex nimia quoque securitatis præsumptione, fidicinem prævium habens, et præcentorem, cantilenæ notulis alternatim in fidicula respondentem. Nec mora. Gualenses qui
72 b. adventum ejus exploraverant, Iereverdus scilicet Morgani frater de Kairleon[4] cum eorundem familia, silvosis e latebris irruentes in improvisos, statim ipso cum suorum multis interempto, præda potiti sunt cruentissima.

Ex variis itaque patet rerum eventibus, quoniam incauta est semper nimia præsumptio, et sui negligens. Timor enim[5] prospicere futuris admonet, et diligentiam docet in prosperis: audacia vero præcipitanter obrepit, et inconsulta temeritas nescit consilium ducis exspectare.

Sermon at Abergavenny.

Sermone igitur apud Abergevenni facto, plurimisque ad crucem conversis, vir quidam nobilis partium illarum, cui nomen Arthenus, ad archiepiscopum versus

of Ireland, and son of the Gilbert Fitz-Richard to whom Henry I. in 1107 gave the Keretica regio, *i.e.* Ceredigion (Cardiganshire). See *William de Jumièges* (Camden, 687), and *Brut y Tywysogion*, 105. The *Brut* places his death under 1135; but other authorities, Welsh and English, under 1136, no doubt the right year. Richard of Hexham (Surtees Soc. 73), and John of Hexham (114), erroneously call him Richard Fitz-Roger.

[1] *socium*] R. B. He. Rd.; socios, D.

[2] *deductorem*] D. Rd.; conviatorem, R. B. He.

[3] *tamen*] Not in B. F. He. D. Rd. In R.

[4] *Kairleon*] D.; Kairleun, B.; Kairluen, R. F. According to the *Brut* (p. 157), and the *Annal. Kamb.*, A° 1136, Richard de Clare was slain, not by his brother Iorwerth, but by Morgan ab Owain himself.

[5] *enim*] D. Rd.; autem, R. B. He.

castellum Oschæ jam properantem humiliter accessit; quod ei citius non occurrerat veniam petens. Super crucis itaque susceptione conventus, "Absque amico- "rum," inquit, "consilio res hæc fieri non[1] debet." Cui archiepiscopus; "Numquid ergo cum uxore tua "habiturus es inde consilium?" At ille vultu demisso verecunde respondit; "Ad aggrediendum," inquit, "opus "virile, non est expetendum consilium muliebre." Et statim ab archiepiscopo crucem suscepit.

Super excessibus[2] autem partium istarum creberrimis et cruentissimis, nunc provincialium in castellanos, nunc vice versa, vindicis animi talionibus, castellano- Murderous excesses in these parts.

[1] *non*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[2] Instead of this section, *Super excessibus . . . machinator*, of Hc. D. Rd., Camden, the first edition of the treatise, as in R. B. F., has as follows:

"Facta est autem his nostris "diebus in prædicto Abergevenni "castro detestanda proditio; et "proditionis, notabili eventu, digna "divinitus est ultio subsecuta. Sub "castellano namque loci illius, et "provinciæ dominatore prænotato, "Guillelmo de Breusa Guillelmi "filio, nobiliores terræ illius et "principales viri septem, Seisillus "scilicet Duvenaldi filius et alii "sex, sub pacis obtentu, sacramen- "tali quoque præstita securitatis "cautione, intra oppidi ejusdem "claustra sunt convocati. Et sta- "tim irruentes armati milites in "inermes, quanquam Guillelmo nec "assensu præsente nec assessu, "desuper tamen data sententia, "subito cruenti carnifices in gladii "furore perimunt universos. Et "sic exeuntes in equis cursoribus, "quoscunque peremptorum propin- "quos et amicos invenire poterant "morti dederunt. Necnon et filium "Seisilli, puerum nobilem vix sep- "tennem, et Resi principis ex so- "rore nepotem, ferro intra matris "brachia confoderunt. Indeque "per terras eorum totas discurren- "tes, præda potiti sunt infinita."

This slaughter took place in 1175. Giraldus's "Seisillus Duvenaldi "filius" was Seisyll ab Dyvnwal of Gwent Uchcoed. Just before, he had accompanied prince Rhys to Henry II.'s court at Gloucester, and had returned with him in peace and favour. *Brut*, 227; *Benedict. Abb. I.*, 92. Seisyll's wife was Gwladus, sister of prince Rhys, and the son murdered in her arms was named Cadwalader: another son, Gruffudd, had already been slain, with his father and other chieftains of Gwent, in Abergavenny castle (*Brut*). Welsh authorities lay the guilt of these treacherous murders on William de Breusa; Diceto (col. 587) is express to the same effect, but makes out that some excuse for him was to be found in the previous murder of his uncle, Henry de Hereford, by the Welsh chieftains.

rum in provinciales, quæ nostris accidere temporibus, aliis explicare materiam damus. Ultimi tamen excessus enormis, cædisque cruentæ, nostris diebus hic perpetratæ, quam præterire tamen, ne scelerosis in exemplum trahi possit, satius existimavi, vere auctor extiterat Anglorum rex Henricus secundus; vicecomes autem Herefordiæ, Ranulphus Poerius, machinator.

Sed quanquam turpi ex causa temporalis interdum sequi commoditas videatur, justi tamen judicis libramine, pœna sceleris etsi differtur, vel in tempore vel post tempora non evitatur; juxta illud poetæ,

Ov. 1 Am. x. 48. "Non habet eventus sordida præda bonos."

Cum enim, septennali jam spatio, in partibus illis pax secuta fuisset tranquillissima, tandem interemp-
73. torum nepotes et filii, ex pueris adulti, [et][1] ex parvis interim majores effecti, ira vindice deferventes, captata domini absentia, intra fruticosa castri ejusdem fossata, cum manu non invalida, se in insidiis nocte contulerunt. Dixerat autem unus eorum, cui nomen Seisillus filius Eudas,[2] constabulario, die præcedente, quasi præmuniendo, sub risu tamen et ludicro magis quam serio; "Hic," inquit, "hac nocte intrabimus;" ostendens muri ipsius angulum quemdam, ubi demissior esse[3] videbatur. Sed quoniam

Hor. 1 Ser. i. 24. "Ridendo[4] dicere verum
"Quis[4] vetat?"

et quoniam

Ov. Met. iv. 428. "Fas est ab hoste doceri;"

constabularius, cum familia tota, noctem illam in armis et vigiliis usque ad auroram duxit insomnem. Sed cum demum labore fatigati, et imminentis diei bene-

---

[1] *et*] Not in R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden. In D.

[2] *Eudas*] D.; Ewedas, R. B.

[3] *esse*] Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[4] Horace has "Ridentem" and "Quid."

ficio securitatem adepti, somno se cuncti dedissent, statim hostes, per scalas quas congesserant, loco prænotato se muris ingerentes, captis constabulario et uxore sua cum aliis multis, præter turrem principalem et paucos qui in ipsam aufugerant, violenter occupant et incendunt[1] universa: justo Dei judicio, eo quo delictum est loco perpetratum, pœna delicti ex parte secuta.[2] Abergavenny castle taken by the Welsh.

Præterea,[3] parum post castri prædicti proditionem, cum juxta Monemutam prædictus Herefordiæ vicecomes, Ralph Poer defeated, and killed.

---

[1] *et incendunt*] D. Rd. Not in R. D. He.

[2] *ex parte secuta*] He. D. Rd.; subsecuta, R. B.

[3] *Præterea . . castrum erigeret*] Instead of these two or three lines of He. D. Rd., Camden, the first edition, as in R. B. F., has as follows:

"Præ cunctis enimvero Kambriæ "castris, tali locus hic turpitudine "longe frequentius est maculatus. "Sicut nostris primo temporibus a "Gualtero comitis Milonis filio, et "viri præscripti avunculo, simile "facinus constat ibidem perpetra- "tum, et similem quoque vindictam "statim divinitus subsecutam.

"Nec a re tantum prænotatum "Guillelmum, sed a spe maxima "eadem certum est occasione deci- "disse. Cum enim ad curiam regio "mandato tunc temporis vocatus "fuisset, totius australis Kambriæ "regimen a rege suscepturus, fama "eventus hujus audita, rex indig- "nans ipsum illico vacuum ad sua "confusumque remisit. Accidit "etiam ad vindictæ cumulum, quia "nunquam sola veniunt scandala, "ut multiplicata pœna facinoris, "honorem et omen quod in mar- "chiæ finibus ante habuerat vix "unquam postea recuperaret. Hæc "est enim rerum natura mutabi- "lium, ut soli plerumque accidere "soleant fortunæ favores, sed in- "fortunia nunquam. Unde et a "quodam sapiente dictum est:

"'Sola venire solent, et vix, et Gir. Camb. i. 354.
"'sero secunda;
"'Et simul et subito semper
"'amara fluunt.'

"Tanti tamen et tam horrendi "sceleris, ut diximus, nec excogi- "tator hic fuerat nec machinator. "Rannulfus namque Poerius, tunc "Herefordiæ vicecomes, regem "Henricum secundum ad hoc in- "duxerat, ut ipse Guillelmi patruo "Philippo de Breusa distinctissime "id faciendum injunxisset. Quod "et ille, quoniam hujuscemodi vir "erat naturæ, gaudens excepit. "Guillelmus vero, quanquam ei "inimicissimi fuissent, puta qui "avunculum ejusdem, virum mag- "nificum Henricum Herefordcn- "sem, paulo ante hostiliter intere- "missent, cum lacrimis tamen, "dolore maximo, et anxietate, vio- "lenter ad hoc compulsus, in castro "suo id fieri vix tandem et valde "invitus admisit. Unde et in ve- "rum tanti facinoris auctorem et

videlicet apud Landinegath,[1] cum exercitu Herefordiæ castrum erigeret, nocte quadam, cum[2] adhuc tenuiter tenebras exuere cœpisset

Virg. Geor. i. 447. "Titoni croceum linquens Aurora cubile,"

summo superveniente diluculo, tam Guintæ quam vicinarum gentium[3] juventute, cum interemptorum adulta[4] jam prole, non præoccupati, non desubitati, non adventus hujus ignari, quinimmo præscii potius et præmuniti, armati quoque et in turmas ordinati, statim tamen sunt confecti; et inter propria jam fossata repulsi, de potioribus et primis Herefordensis provinciæ militaribus viris cum ipso novem, præter alios multos, lanceis ibidem sunt confossi.

De Ranulpho tamen hoc mirandum, quod præter vulnera quæ letaliter in corpore suscepit plurima, cum
73 b. ferro quoque jugulatus fuisset, venis omnibus et arteriis cum via spiritus et halitus organo pariter præcisis, sacerdotem tamen annuens et asciscens, aliquo revera anteactæ vitæ merito id exigente, eoque præcipue, ut[5] creditur, quod in sortem Christi electos præ aliis honorare consueverat et venerari,[6] facta confessione, et viatico devote percepto, statim spiritum exhalavit. Frequens enim est, et creberrimis declaratum experimentis, quod sicut debito clerum honore dignantes sacerdotali in extremis solatio ex consuetudine gaudent,

" machinatorem Rannulfum, parum " post castri prædicti proditionem, " longe gravior vindicta divinitus " est subsecuta. Cum enim juxta " Monemutam, videlicet apud Lan- " digenat, cum exercitu Herefordiæ " castrum erigeret," &c.

[1] *Landinegath*] D.; Landigenat, R. B.; Llaningad, or Dingatstow, near Monmouth. This defeat of the English, and death of Ralph Poer, took place in 1182. See *Brut*, sub anno, and *Ben. Abb. I.* 288.

[2] *cum*] Hc. D. Rd.; dum, R. B.

[3] *gentium*] D. Rd.; partium, R. B. Hc. Guinta is Gwent, the district between the Usk and the Wye, now part of Monmouthshire.

[4] *adulta*] R. B. Rd., Camden. Not in D. The passage corrupt in Hc.

[5] *ut*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; quod, D.

[6] *et venerari*] Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

sic, e diverso, cleri derisores et malignos delatores eodem solatio frequentissime fraudari videbis optato.

Guillelmus[1] autem de Breusa, qui vere non auctor sceleris, quod potius tacere decrevimus quam exprimere, non machinator extiterat, sed vel executor, vel executionis non impeditor, carnificum turbis mandato desuper accepto atrociter desævientibus, eodem conflictu in imum fossæ præruptæ est præcipitatus, ibique ab hostibus, et viris inimicissimis captus et extractus; vivus tamen, divina miseratione, per impetum subito a suis factum, et omnino illæsus evasit.

Narrow escape of William de Breusa.

Ex quo patet, quia minus offendit, mitiusque punitur, invitus qui facit, fierive[2] permittit, quam qui facto consilium simul et auctoritatem adhibuit. Quod[3] in Christi passione palam fuit; ubi et Judas suspendio, Judæi excidio pariter et exterminio, Pylatus exilio pœnas luit.

Prædicto vero de rege, qui proditioni assensum præbuit, et præceptum fecit, qualiter ob hoc, et alia multa enormis vitæ delicta, sicut in libro *De Principis instructione* Deo duce propalabimus,[4] ad ampliorem ignominiæ cumulum, etiam in terris pœnas inchoavit, confusione plenus et ærumna, finis ejusdem declaravit.

---

[1] *Guillelmus . . . desævientibus*] So D. Rd., Camden. Instead of it, R. B. have: "Prædictus vero Guil-" lelmus de Breusa, qui vere non "auctor sceleris nec executor ex-" titerat, sed tantum executionis "non impeditor." And Hc. has: "Guillelmus autem de Breusa, qui "vere non auctor sceleris, non ma-" chinator extiterat, nec executor, "sed tamen executionis non impe-" ditor."

[2] *fierive*] Hc. D. Rd.; vel fieri, R. B.

[3] *Quod*] D. Rd.; quod et, R. B. Hc.

[4] *Deo duce propalabimus*] D. Rd.; "propalavimus" only, in R. B.; propalabimus, Hc. It seems curious that Giraldus should thus speak of the publication of his treatise *De Princ. Instr.* as a past event in the earlier edition of the *Itin.*, and as a future one in the later editions. He elsewhere tells us, indeed, that the *De Princ. Instr.* was amongst the first treatises that had employed his pen, but adds that it was "inter "ultimos *propalatus*." Vol i. 423; iii. 334.

The men of Gwent warlike: their great skill in the use of the bow.

74.

Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod gens hæc, quæ Guintæ gens vocatur, et martiis conflictibus usitatissima, et strenuitatis opera laudatissima, et arte sagittifera præ ceteris Walliæ finibus instructissima reperitur. Ad hujus autem assertionis ultimæ certitudinem, exempla proponere pauca non pigeat. In prætaxata castri proditione, militibus duobus in turrim, cumulato terrarum aggere sitam, per pontem transfugientibus, Gualenses, ut ipsos a tergo percuterent, sagittas arcu mittentes, portam turris iliceam, palmalis fere spissitudinis, transpenetrarunt; ad tantorum ictuum vehementiæ perpetuam memoriam, sagittis in porta ferro repercusso reservatis.

Accidit et tempore Guillelmi de Breusa, ipso testante, quemdam militem suum, in conflictu contra Gualenses, a quodam ipsorum per mediam coxam, cum panno loricæ ac [1] ocreali ferro utrinque vestitam, sagitta percussum esse; eadem quoque sagitta per partem illam sellæ, quæ Alva vocatur, usque in ipsum equum letaliter transpenetrante. Alia quoque sagitta militis alterius coxam, ferro similiter utrinque munitam cum panno loricæ, usque in sellam perforavit. Et cum miles ille loris equum in gyrum flecteret, alia sagitta, eodem contorquente, in opposita coxa similem ictum suscepit, equo ab utraque parte firmiter affixus. Quod igitur a balista [2] tormentum majus exspectes? Non autem arcu utuntur corneo, non alburneo, non taxeo: solum ex ulmellis silvestribus arcus formant, non formosos, non politos, immo rudes prorsus et informes; rigidos tamen et fortes: non tantum [3] ad eminus missilia mittenda, sed etiam ad graves cominus ictus percutiendo tolerandos. Sed a diverticulo iter [4] iterum aggrediamur.

---

[1] *ac*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden. Rd. is here corrupt.

[2] *a balista*] D. Rd.; ab arcubalista, R. B.; ab arcu balistæ, Hc.

[3] *tantum*] R. B.; tamen, Hc. D. Rd. corrupt.

[4] *iter*] Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. B.

[CAP. V.]

De transitu per Oschæ castrum, et Legionum urbem, cum notabilibus suis.

Igitur apud Oschæ castrum, tam ad archiepiscopi sermonem, quam ad viri boni et honesti Guillelmi Landavensis episcopi, qui per suam diocesim nobis fideliter astitit, persuasionem, Alexandro quoque Bangorensis[1] ecclesiæ archidiacono ubique ad Gualenses interprete existente, multitudo virorum cruce signatur. Ubi et hoc præcipue notabile occurrit, quod famosissimi partium illarum malefactores, homicidæ, prædones, et fures, non absque multorum admiratione sunt conversi.

Sermon at Usk.

74 b.

Transeuntes inde per Kaerleun,—Munemutæ castrum, nobilemque Danubiæ silvam, quæ ferinam ferrique copiam Gloverniæ ministrat, trans Waiam, citraque Sabrinam, longe a læva relinquentes,—in Novoburgo, ter Oscha[2] flumine jam transcurso, pernoctavimus. Dicitur autem Kaerleun Legionum urbs. *Kaer* enim Britannice urbs vel castrum dicitur. Solent quippe legiones, a Romanis in insulam missæ, ibi hiemare; et inde Urbs Legionum dicta est. Erat autem hæc urbs antiqua et authentica, et a Romanis olim coctilibus muris egregie constructa. Videas hic multa pristinæ nobilitatis adhuc vestigia; palatia immensa, aureis olim tectorum fastigiis Romanos fastus imitantia, eo quod a Romanis principibus primo constructa, et ædificiis egregiis illustrata fuissent; turrim giganteam, thermas insignes, templorum reliquias, et loca theatralia; egregiis muris partim adhuc exstantibus omnia clausa. Reperies ubique, tam intra murorum ambitum quam extra, ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus, hypogeos-

Thence to Caerleon, and Newport.

Caerleon built by the Romans.

Many remains of its ancient magnificence.

---

[1] *Bangorensis*] D.; Bangornensis, B.; Bagornensis, R. F.

[2] *Oscha*] D.; Oschæ, B. F.: Oscæ, R.

que meatus. Et quod inter alia notabile censui, stuphas undique videas miro artificio consertas; lateralibus quibusdam et præangustis spiraculi viis occulte calorem exhalantibus.

The martyrs Julius and Aaron rest here. Their churches in former times.

Jacent hic duo nobiles, et post Albanum et Amphibalum præcipui Britanniæ majoris protomartyres, et ibidem martyrio coronati, Julius scilicet et Aaron: quorum uterque ecclesiam in urbe insignem habebat, suo nomine decoratam. Tres enim egregiæ in hac urbe antiquis temporibus fuerant ecclesiæ: una Julii martyris, virgineo Deo dicatarum choro venustata: altera vero, beati Aaron socii ejusdem nomine fundata, et
75. canonicorum ordine præclaro nobilitata: tertia vero metropolitana sede Kambriæ totius insignita. Fuit et Amphibalus hinc oriundus, beati Albani doctor, et fidelis ad fidem informator. Situs urbis egregius, super Oschæ flumen; navigio, mari influente, idoneum. Silvis et pratis urbs illustrata. Hic magni illius Arthuri famosam curiam legati adiere Romani. Ubi et Dubritius archiepiscopus David Menevensi cessit honorem; abhinc Meneviam metropolitana sede translata, juxta illud Merlini Ambrosii, "Menevia pallio Urbis Legio-"num induetur,"[1] et cetera.

Amphibalus a native of Caerleon.

Goldcliff.

Non procul inde stat rupis marina, Sabrinis supereminens fluctibus, quæ Anglorum lingua Goldclive vocatur, hoc est, rupis aurea; eo quod aurei coloris saxa præferat sole repercussa, miro fulgore rutulantia.

"Nec mihi de facili fieri persuasio posset,
"Quod frustra tantum[2] dederit natura nitorem
"Saxis, quodque suo fuerit flos hic sine fructu;"

si foret, qui venas ibidem, et penitima terræ viscera, arte prævia transpenetraret; si foret, inquam, qui de

---

[1] *induetur*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; decorabitur, D. "Inductur" is the reading in Merlin's prophecies.

[2] *frustra tantum*] Hc. D. Rd., Camden; frustra tatum, B.; frustratura, R.; frustratum, F.

argumentando de præteritis, argute futura conjectat,[1] sic et, indiciis haud dissimilibus, hominibus insidiando, interiorem mentis conceptum per exteriora[2] quandoque perpendit.

The incubus demon in Nether Gwent.

Fuit et in[3] eodem tempore, in Wintæ finibus inferioris, dæmon incubus, qui puellam quandam adamando, locumque ubi ipsa manebat frequentando, cum hominibus loquebatur, et tam occulta quam futura pluries indicabat. Interrogatus autem inde[4] Meilerius, se hunc bene nosse dicebat, et nomen ejus proponebat. Dicebat etiam contra guerram, patriæque turbationem magnam, spiritus hujusmodi cum hominibus conversari solere: sicut et hic apparuit: quia paulo post partes illæ, per Hoelum filium Iereverdi de Urbe Legionum,[5] provinciam totam graviter infestantem, destructæ sunt.

Meiler's prophetic assurances to Howel ab Iorwerth.

Eadem vero tempestate, cum Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, capto Albaniæ rege,[5] regnum subito pacificasset, prædictus Hoelus, per guerram quam fecerat, regiam plurimum timens ultionem, hujusmodi a Meilerio in majori angustia consolationis verba suscepit: "Ne timeas," inquit, "Hoele, regis indignationem; "quoniam ad alias eum partes intendere oportebit. "Urbs etenim melior, quam in transmarinis habet, "jam a rege Francorum obsidetur. Unde ad partes "illas, postpositis omnibus aliis,[6] quanta poterit festi-"natione transibit." Cujus eventum rei, urbe Rothomagensi obsessa,[7] infra triduum post certis rumoribus Hoelus accepit. Proditionem quoque castelli de Oscha,

---

[1] *conjectat*] Hc. Rd., Camden; conjecturat, D.

[2] *per exteriora*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[3] *et in*] D.; et, Hc.; in, Camden. Not in Rd. at all.

[4] *inde*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[5] This devastation of Gwent Iscoed, by Howel ab Iorwerth of Caerleon, was in the autumn of 1173 (*Brut*, 223). The king of Scotland was taken prisoner in July 1174.

[6] *postpositis omnibus aliis*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[7] Henry returned into Normandy August 11, 1174, and drove Louis from before Rouen.

misso, quantæ dignitatis et reverentiæ sacrosancti evangelii liber existat; et super eundem quisquis scienter pejerat, quam periculose et damnabiliter a via veritatis exorbitat.

Ad hæc autem casum abbatis Enoci[1] de Estratmarchel, satis et plusquam satis per Guallias notum, eadem die[2] cujus nocte contigit multis aperuit: sicut ex dicto ejusdem ab aliis retento, dieque notato, circiter octo dies post certis rumoribus evidenter apparuit.[3] Interrogatus autem, quemadmodum sciebat hoc, dicebat dæmonem sub venatoris expediti specie mane ad ipsum venisse; qui statim ruinam abbatis exponendo, qualiter ipsum a monasterio cum moniali aufugere fecerat, quasi de tanta victoria gaudens plurimum et exultans, totum evomuit. Fall of the abbot of Strata Marcella.

Forte ad correctionem abbatis et humiliationem, hoc ei accidere permissum est. Sicut ex post facto claruit: quia in brevi reversus, et humilior, eoque melior effectus, nec divertisse dicendus: quia "Non male cadit," ut ait Seneca, "quisquis post lapsum fortior resurgit." Seneca. Fortior etenim post negationem Petrus; fortior post lapidationem et persecutionem Paulus; et quoniam "Ubi abundat delictum, ibi superabundabit et gratia," Rom. v. 20. fortior quoque post fragilitatem Magdalena.

Abbati quoque de Alba domo Kanano,[4] viro probo et religioso, quid de muliere quadam quam aspexerat cogitasset, in aure revelavit. Et statim vir bonus, concupiscentiam illam cum lacrimis fatendo, a tribus sacerdotibus incontinenti disciplinam suscepit. Sicut enim hostis ille antiquus, longis rerum experientiis et subtilitate naturæ, ex signis quibusdam conjecturalibus Cynan, abbot of Whitland. 76 b.

---

[1] *Enoci*] This is mentioned in *Gem. Eccl.* (vol. ii. 248), where the abbot is called Enatus.

[2] *die*] Hc. Rd. Not in D.

[3] *sicut . . . . apparuit*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[4] *Kanano*] The death of a Cynan, abbot of Ty Gwyn, *i.e.* Alba domus, is recorded in *Brut.* under 1176.

propinquioribus autem, et quasi infra annum futuris, minus falli consueverat. Videbat autem eos fere semper pedites et expeditos, et quasi sub forma venatorum, cornu a collo suspensum habentes, et vere venatores, non ferarum tamen nec animalium sed animarum. Circa monasteria quoque, et loca religiosa, magis eos et in multitudine majori videre solebat. Ibi nimirum exercitu, ibi numerosis opus est viribus, ubi rebellio. Quoties autem falsum coram ipso ab aliquo dicebatur, id statim agnoscebat: videbat enim super linguam mentientis dæmonem quasi salientem et exultantem, Librum quoque mendosum, et vel falso scriptum, vel falsum etiam in se continentem inspiciens, statim, licet illiteratus omnino[1] fuisset, ad locum mendacii digitum ponebat. Interrogatus autem, qualiter hoc nosset, dicebat dæmonem ad locum eundem digitum suum primo porrigere. Similiter et dormitorium monasterii cujuslibet intrando, lectum monachi[2] falsi, et religionem habitu non animo præferentis, eisdem indiciis ostendebat. Dicebat autem spiritum gulositatis et crapulæ supra et infra sordidum esse; spiritum vero libidinis et luxuriæ pulchriorem aliis, sed fœtidissimum.

76. Contigit[3] aliquando, spiritibus immundis nimis eidem insultantibus, ut Evangelium Johannis ejus in gremio poneretur: qui statim tanquam aves evolantes, omnes penitus evanuerunt. Quo sublato postmodum, et Historia Britonum a Galfrido Arthuro tractata, experiendi causa, loco ejusdem subrogata, non solum corpori ipsius toti, sed etiam libro superposito, longe solito crebrius et tædiosius insederunt.

Geoffrey's British History, and the evil spirits.

Notandum hic autem quia Barnabas, sicut in legenda ipsius habetur, Evangelium Matthæi super ægros ponebat, et curabantur. Ex quo patet, sicut et ex præ-

[1] *omnino*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

[2] *monachi*] D. Rd., Camden; monachi cujuslibet, Hc.

[3] The two next sections, *Contigit . . . exorbitat*, not in Hc.

petra mel eliceret, et oleum de saxo. Multa nimirum occulta latent naturæ beneficia, quæ, per incuriam hactenus incognita, posterorum educet cura propensior et diligentia. Nam sicut antiquos in humanæ vitæ commodis inveniendi viam ipsa necessitas urgens edocuit, sic junioribus industria sedula plurimum contulit, et ingenii perspicacioris acumen multa modernis aperuit. Quoniam, ut ait poeta, duas inventionum istarum causas assignans,

"Labor omnia vincit
"Improbus, et duris urgens in rebus egestas." Virg. Georg. i. 145.

Meilyr the Welshman, and the evil spirits.

Notandum[1] autem quod in his Urbis Legionum partibus fuit diebus nostris vir quidam Kambrensis, cui nomen Meilerius, futurorum pariter et occultorum scientiam habens; cui talis hanc eventus scientiam dedit. Nocte quadam, scilicet Ramis palmarum, puellam diu ante adamatam, sicut forma præferebat,[2] obviam habens 75 b. loco amœno, et ut videbatur opportuno, desideratis amplexibus atque deliciis[3] cum indulsisset, statim, loco puellæ formosæ, formam quamdam villosam, hispidam et hirsutam, adeoque enormiter deformem invenit, quod in ipso ejusdem aspectu dementire cœpit et insanire. Cumque pluribus id annis ei durasset, tandem in ecclesia Menevensi, meritis sanctorum loci ejusdem, optatam sanitatem recuperavit. Semper tamen cum spiritibus immundis magnam et mirandam familiaritatem habens, eosdem videndo, cognoscendo, colloquendo, propriisque nominibus singulos nominando, ipsorum ministerio plerumque[4] futura prædicebat. In longe vero futuris atque remotis, sicut et ipsi, frequentius fallebatur: in

---

[1] *Notandum, &c.*] Rest of this chapter not in R. B. The greater part is in Hc.; all in D. Rd., Camden.

[2] *sicut forma præferebat*] D. Rd. Not in Hc., Camden.

[3] *deliciis*] Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[4] *plerumque*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc.

quod Hoelus occupatum detinebat, longe ante prædixit; et dominum suum, Hoelum scilicet, inde præmunivit; se etiam[1] ibidem tunc vulnerandum, sed non ibidem tunc moriendum, vivumque ab oppido evasurum præcinuit. In hoc solo deceptus; quia sicut 77.
amicos hostis ille beare novit, sic suos in fine remunerare consuevit; quia eodem vulnere paulo post letaliter occubuit.

Inter hæc autem omnia admiratione dignissima, hoc solum censui magis admirandum, quod oculis carneis spiritus illos tam aperte videbat: quia spiritus oculis corporalibus, nisi assumptis corporibus, videri non solent. Si vero corpora, ut videri possent, assumpserant, ab aliis quoque præcipue præsentes et prope positi quomodo videri non poterant?

Sed forte[2] corporali visione miraculosa visi sunt hæc.[3] Cujusmodi visione rex Balthasar in Daniele[4] vidit manum scribentis in pariete, "Mane, Techel, Phares," Dan. v. 25.
hoc est, appensum, numeratum, divisum; qui et eadem nocte regnum pariter et vitam amisit.

His autem in finibus, nostrisque diebus, cæco dominandi ambitu, rupto consanguinitatis et consobrinorum fœdere, fides quam enormiter in perfidiam evanuerit, diffuso per Gualliam pravitatis exemplo, Kambria non ignorat.

[Cap. VI.]

De transitu per Novum burgum et Kairdif, cum notabilibus suis.

Progress from Newport to Cardiff.

Apud Novum itaque burgum, ubi Oschæ flumen ab originali de Cantrefbochan fonte descendens in mare

---

[1] *se etiam . . . . moriendum*] D. Rd.; se et ibi esse vulnerandum, sed non letaliter, Hc.; and so Camden, but with "se etiam ibidem" instead of "se et ibi."

[2] *Sed forte . . amisit*] This section not in Hc.

[3] *hæc*] D. Rd.; hi, Camden.

[4] *Daniele*] Rd., Camden; Ezechiele, D.

dilabitur, ad crucis obsequia multis allectis, fluvio Renni transcurso, ad nobile super aquam Thaph de Kaerdif castrum pervenimus. Serpit autem in Noviburgi finibus, terra scilicet de Wenloch, rivulus cui nomen Nant Pencarn; non tam aquarum profunditate, quam alvei concavitate, palustrique limositate, non nisi certa per loca vadaque transmeabilis. Habuerat autem antiquitus vadum, cui nomen Red [1] Pencarn, ad quod publica strata ducebat. Sonat autem Latine, Vadum sub capite rupis. *Red* enim Britannice, vadum Latine; *Pen* caput; *Carn* rupis. De quo Merlinus Silvestris mentionem faciens, in hæc verba prorupit; "Cum "fortem lentiginosum in dextrales Britones irruere "videris, si Red Pencarn transierit, Kambriæ vires "noveris enervari."

The brook Pencarn, and its antient ford.

Prophecy of Merlin Silvester. 77 b.

A.D. 1163, *infra* ii. 10. Henry II.'s passage of this brook.

Contigit autem nostris temporibus, cum Anglorum rex Henricus secundus in Resum Griphini filium arma sumeret, et per maritimam dextralis Kambriæ viam versus Kaermerdyn tenderet, die quo Nant Pencarn transire debuerat, antiqui partium illarum Britones circa prædictum vadum cum summa solicitudine principis adventum observabant: scituri pro certo, quoniam et fortem noveraut et lentiginosum, si vadi transitus concordaverit, de ipso proculdubio vaticinium esse complendum. Cum igitur rex ad prædictam aquam via duce festinasset, et, vaticinali veterique vado dudum obsoleto, ad aliud ejusdem aquæ vadum, quod modernior usus frequentaverat, jam transire parasset,[2] tubicines et buccinatores quos Cornhiriez [3] vocant, ab

---

[1] *Red*] D.; Rit, R. B.; Rith, Hc. In modern Welsh, Rhyd, a ford. Nant Pencarn, or the brook of Pencarn, is probably the river Ebwy, which flows about a mile and a half south of Newport. There was an old road by a ford across this river, and three old farmhouses near the ford are still called Great Pencarn, Little Pencarn, and Middle Pencarn (Sir R. C. Hoare).

[2] *parasset*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; parassent, D.

[3] *Cornhiriez*] D.; Cornhiriet, R. B.

Hir, quod est longum, et *cornu*, eo quod longis in cornubus flatum emittant, ex altera vadi ripa, quasi regi exultantes, in ejusdem honore [1] buccinare cœperunt. Unde cum equus, in quo rex sedebat, præ timore tam horribilis et insueti sonitus calcaria respuens, aquam intrare prorsus abnueret, rex, lora regyrans, ad antiquum vadum se conferre ira prævia deproperavit. Quo statim impetuose transcurso, Britones, eo experimento quasi de imminente jam certi exitio, ad propria mœsti sunt reversi.

Earl William of Gloucester surprised, and taken prisoner, in Cardiff castle: A.D. 1158.

In castro quoque de Kairdif contigit his nostris diebus res memoratu non indigna. Claudiocestriæ namque comes Guillelmus, Roberti comitis filius, qui cum castro prædicto totam provinciam de Guladmorgan, [2] id est, terra Morgani, jure hereditario possidebat, cum quodam homine suo, cui nomen Yvor modicus, [3] forte guerram habuerat. Erat enim vir staturæ modicæ, sed animositatis immensæ: Guallensium more montana quædam et silvestria possidens, quæ tamen illi comes vel auferre prorsus vel mutilare contendebat. Nocte igitur quadam, quanquam castrum de Kaerdif, 78.
murorum ambitu munitissimum, excubarum multitudine personaret, quanquam [4] militibus centum et viginti, necnon et arcariis multis, [5] stipendiaria quoque familia plurima urbs redundaret, inter tot tamen præsidia et securitatis argumenta, [6] prædictus Yvor, scalis allatis clam muros irrepens, comitem et comitissam, cum

---

[1] *honore*] D. Rd.; honorem, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[2] *Guladmorgan*] D.; Wlatmorgan, B.; Waltmorgan, R. F. Gwlad is the Welsh for a province, or territory.

[3] *Yvor modicus*] R. B. D. Rd.; Yvorus, agnomen modicus, Hc.; and so Camden, with "erat" after "modicus." Ivor ab Cedivor, called Ivor Bach (Ivor the little), lord of Senghenydd, a comot of one of the cantrevs of Glamorgan. This exploit of his is mentioned in the *Margan Annals* under 1158.

[4] *quanquam*] R. B. D., &c.; quanquam et, Hc.

[5] *arcariis multis*] R. B. Hc., Camden; multis aliis, D.; multis, Rd.

[6] *argumenta*] Hc. D. Rd., Camden; augmenta, R. B.

parvo quem unicum habebant filio, secum educens ad silvestria perduxit. Nec remisit, donec quicquid ei [1] injuste ablatum fuerat, et ampliora, recuperasset. Testante namque poeta,

" Spectandum est semper ne magna injuria fiat,
" Fortibus et miseris: tollas licet omne quod usquam est
" Argenti atque auri, spoliatis arma supersunt."

A.D. 1172: Henry II.'s strange warning at Cardiff.

In hoc eodem [2] oppido de Kaerdif, Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, in reditu ab Hibernia, sabbato primo post Pascha cum pernoctasset, missaque mane, dominica scilicet, jam audita, cum a capella [3] Sancti Pyrani præter regem omnes exissent, ipso in orationibus plus solito tunc forte morante, tandem cum exiret, et ad ostium capellæ jam equum ascenderet, astitit ei vir quidam ante faciem, poste quodam præfixo quasi pro podio fungens, flavus, tonsuraque rotunda, vultus macilenti, staturæ aliquantulum proceræ, ætatis quasi circiter annos quadraginta, tunica indutus alba usque ad collum pedis demissa, zona præcinctus, et pedibus nudis; qui et regem in hæc verba quasi Teutonice convenit, " God holde þe, cuning;" quod [4] Latine sonat, *Deus te custodiat, rex.* Et postea in eadem lingua prosecutus est in hunc modum; " Salutat vos " Christus, et pia mater ejus, Johannes quoque Bap- " tista, et apostolus Petrus, mandantes vobis quatinus,

[1] *ei*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[2] The two next sections, *In hoc eodem . . plenius ostendetur*, not in R. B. in Hc. D., &c.

This adventure of Henry II. at Cardiff occurs again in the *De Prin. Instr.* (p. 37), with some variations, but Giraldus expressly says that he is there repeating from the *Itin.* (" sicut in Itinerario scripsimus"). It is found again, but only in two or three late MSS., in the *Expug. Hibern.* (vol. v. 289), where probably it is a mere interpolation of some 14th century copyist.

[3] *capella*] D. Rd., *De Princ. Instr.*, and *Exp. Hib.*; ecclesia, Hc.

[4] *quod Latine . . . rex*] D. Rd. Not in Hc., and not in *De Princ. Instr.* or *Exp. Hib.*

" per totas ditioni vestræ subditas terras, ne mercatus " dominicis diebus fiant firmiter inhiberi faciatis, et " quod in illis nihil uspiam operis fiat nisi divinum " officium, et illud devote facere et audire, præter ci- " baria solum[1] quæ ad usum diurnum præparentur. 78 b. " Quod si feceritis, nihil unquam inchoabitis quod fine " bono non compleatur, vitamque feliciter consumma- " bitis." Rex autem militi, cui nomen Philippus de Mercros,[2] qui frenum equi tenebat, dixit lingua Gallica; " Quære a rustico, utrum hoc somniaverit." Et cum hoc Anglice miles exponeret, subjecit ille lingua priori ; " Sive hoc somniaverim, sive non, vide quis " hodie dies sit ;" loquens regi, non interpreti, " quia " nisi hoc feceris, vitamque maturius emendaveris, " priusquam annus iste prætereat, tales de re quam " plus in mundo diligis rumores audies, talemque tur- " bationem inde recipies quæ tibi usque ad exitum " vitæ non deficiet." Et cum rex, hoc dicto, equo calcaribus monito, parum versus portam et quasi passibus octo processisset, lora regyrans, " Vocate mihi," inquit, " bonum hominem illum." Et cum miles prædictus, et juvenis quidam, cui nomen Guillelmus, qui soli tunc in oppido cum rege remanserant, illum vocassent, et non inventum primum in capella, deinde per aulam et diversoria cuncta quæsiissent, nusquam comparuit. Rex autem, eo non reperto, cum tamen diutius eum solus in oppido dum alii quærerent expectaret, mœstus plurimum et plangens, quod amplius ei locutus non fuisset, versus Novumburgum per pontem de Remni iter arripuit. Sicut autem comminando vir ille promiserat, sic anno contigit non completo. Filii namque ipsius tres, primævus scilicet Henricus, et alii duo, Pictavensis et Brito, contra[3] ipsum in Quadrage-

---

[1] *solum*] D. Rd. ; sola, Hc.

[2] In the *De Princ. Instr.* and *Exp. Hib.*, it is added that this Philip de Mercros was the author's informant.

[3] *contra*] D. Rd., *De Princ. Instr.*, *Exp. Hib.* ; post, Hc., Camden.

sima sequente ad regem Francorum Ludovicum discesserunt. Unde tanta mota est ei inquietatio, quantam antea nunquam habuerat, et quæ semper ei, usque ad extremum spiritus halitum, per aliquem filiorum[1] fere incessanter perdurasset.

Multas et alias præmonitiones et castigationes rex iste divina miseratione, quæ magis conversionem pec-
79. catorum appetit quam eversionem, circa eadem tempora et fini propinquiora suscepit. Quas tamen omnes animo obstinato, et corde indurato, incorrigibiliter omnino contempsit: sicut in libro *De Principis instructione*, Deo propitiante, plenius ostendetur.

Barry island: whence Giraldus's family name.

Distat autem non magnis abhinc spatiis insula modica, in Sabrini maris litore sita, quam accolæ Barri vocant; a nomine Sancti Barroci, loci[2] ejusdem olim cultoris, sic dicta. Cujus et reliquiæ in capella ibidem sita, hederæ nexibus amplexata, in feretrum translatæ continentur. Ab hujus etiam insulæ nomine, viri nobiles[3] maritimarum australis Kambriæ partium, qui eidem insulæ cum terris finitimis dominari solent, sunt[4] denominati: a Barri scilicet primo agnomen, postea cognomen de Barri suscipientes.

Est autem hic notabile, quod in ipso insulæ introitu, in rupe marina apparet rima permodica, ad quam si aurem apponas, audies operæ strepitum quasi fabrilis; nunc follium flatus, nunc martellorum ictus, nunc cotis et ferri sonora fricamina,

" Stridentesque[5] cavernis
" Stricturas Chalybum, et anhelum fornacibus ignem."

---

[1] *per aliquem filiorum*] D. Rd., Camden, *Exp. Hib.* Not in Hc. The *De Princ. Instr.* has "filiorum," without the "per aliquem."

[2] *loci*] B. Hc. D., &c. Not in R. F.

[3] *nobiles*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] *sunt*] B. F. Hc. D., &c; super, R.

[5] Adapted from Virg. Æn. viii. 420:

" Striduntque cavernis
" Stricturæ Chalybum, et forna-
" cibus ignis anhelat."

Ceterum haud difficile credendum,[1] ex aquis marinis occulte subintrantibus sonum hujuscemodi provenire posse, nisi quoniam non minus, retrogradis et refluis fluctibus, vacuato prorsus litore continuatur quam repleto.

[CAP. VII.]

De sede Landavensi, et monasterio de Margan, cum partium illarum[2] notabilibus.

Igitur in crastino, crucis apud Landaph negotio publice proposito, astantibus hinc Anglis inde Gualensibus, ex utroque populo plurimis ad crucem allectis, ea nocte ibidem cum episcopo loci ejusdem Guillelmo, viro discreto et honesto, moram fecimus. Sonat autem Landaph ecclesia sita super Taph fluvium, quæ et ecclesia Sancti Teleauci,[3] ejusdem sedis olim episcopi, nunc dicitur. Mane igitur, missa in ecclesia cathedrali, principalique altari, ab archipræsule celebrata, statim versus nobile Cisterciensis ordinis monasterium de Margan, per cellulam de Ewennith, iter incunctanter arripuimus. Erat autem monasterium de Margan, præ aliis cunctis ordinis illius per Kambriam locis, præsidente tunc[4] viro literato et discreto abbate Cunano, caritativa largitione laudatissimum.[5] Unde et aliquoties, gravi ingruente famis articulo, certum noveris et indubitata veritate compertum, ob immoderatam largifluæ caritatis abundantiam, quam in peregrinos et pauperes infatiganter[6] exercuerant, deficiente aliquoties

At Llandaf.

Thence to Margan abbey.

79 b.

Great charity of this abbey.

[1] *credendum*] Hc. D., Camden; crediderim, R. B. Rd.

[2] *partium illarum*] R. B. Rd., Camden, and D. *supra* in Table of Chapters; part. suarum, Hc.; pertinentiis illarum et, D. here.

[3] *Teleauci*] D.; Teleau, R. B. St. Teilo, second bishop of Llandaf.

[4] *tunc*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[5] *laudatissimum*] D., Camden; laudabile, Hc.; laudatissimo, Rd.; laudabili, R. B.

[6] *infatiganter*] Hc. D., &c; infatigabiliter, R. B.

farre penuque, sensibile fuisse divinitus augmentum appositum; tanquam lecythi oleo, veri Helisæi beneficio, pauperi mulierculæ multiplicato.

3 Reg. xvii. 12, &c.

Circa prima vero fundationis tempora, juvenis quidam de finibus illis, genere Kambrensis, terras quasdam monasterio datas acriter sibi vindicans, et in usus proprios redigere parans, post multas infestationes, demum instinctu dæmoniaco grangiam monachorum optimam blado refertam igne combussit. Et statim, amens effectus, per patriam discurrere cœpit, rabie plenus et insania; nec ab errore[1] cessavit, donec a parentibus captus fuerat atque ligatus. Porro, ruptis mane vinculis, fatigatisque custodibus, ad monasterii denique portam evasit, clamans incessanter et ululans, se monachorum ministerio totum intrinsecus igne comburi. Et sic, planctu miserabili vociferando, spiritum infra paucos dies exhalavit.

Contigit etiam ut ab[2] alio quodam juvene in hospitum aula verberato, statim in crastino, divina ultione secuta, injuriosus ille ab hostibus interimeretur; et eodem aulæ loco, quo fuit injuria sacræ domui et fratribus astantibus irrogata, exanime corpus extenderetur.

The monks have to send to 80. Bristol for corn.

His quoque nostris diebus,[3] ingruente famis inedia, et maxima pauperum turba quotidie ad januam jacente, de communi fratrum consilio, ad caritatis explendæ sufficientiam, propter bladum in Angliam[4] navis Bristollum missa est. Quæ cum diutinam ibidem vento contrario moram fecisset, die quo in monasterio tam ad usus pauperum quam monachorum annona deficere debuit, nave non redeunte, sed locum potius miraculo

Miracle.

[1] *errore*] D. Rd., Camden; hoc errore, R. B. Hc.

[2] *ab*] R. Hc. D., Camden; an interlineation, in a later hand, in B. Not in Rd.

[3] *His quoque . . diebus*] D. Rd., Camden; His autem . . . . diebus, Hc.; His autem . . temporibus, R. B.

[4] *in Angliam*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

dante, contigit ut campus prope monasterium, per mensem et amplius ante commune maturationis tempus, et antequam messis aliqua per patriam meteretur, cum multorum admiratione subito maturus inveniretur: unde tam fratribus, quam pauperum turbis, sufficientem usque ad autumnum alimoniam divina miseratio ministraret. His igitur et aliis virtutum signis, locus Deo acceptus diligi a cunctis cœpit et venerari.

Accidit autem his nostris diebus, quatuor Caradoci filii Iestini filiis, et[1] Resi principis ex sorore nepotibus, his in finibus herili portione, sicut Gualensibus mos est, pro patre dominantibus; Morgano videlicet, et Mereducio, Oeneo, et Cadwallano; quod per invidiam et Caymiticam malitiam,[2] iterum renatam, Oeneum fratrem Cadwallanus interemit. Nec mora: divina ultione subsecuta, cum castrum quoddam hostiliter invasisset, muri subito super eundem facta ruina, minutim confractus interiit: et inter tot tam sui quam fratrum suorum exercitus viros, dignas perpetrati facinoris et fratricidii pœnas luens, solus miserabiliter exstinctus occubuit. The sons of Caradog ab Iestin.

Accidit hic quoque res memoratu non indigna. Leporarius enim prædicti Oenei magnus et pulcher, et virgea[3] varietate discoloratus, septem vulnera, sagittis et lanceis corpore perforato, non absque plurima tamen hostium et homicidarum caninis morsibus laceratione, in domini defensione suscepit. Qui et postea Anglorum tunc regi Henrico secundo, vulneribus recenter in cicatricem obductis, a comite Claudiocestriæ Guillelmo, ad tanti tam egregii[4] facinoris ostentum, est transmissus. Gallantry of a greyhound.

---

[1] *et*] B. Hc. D., &c. Not in R. F.

[2] Camden here adds, "quæ jam "inveterasset." It is in no MS. that I have seen.

[3] *virgea*] R. B. Hc. D.; mira, Rd., Camden.

[4] *egregii*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; egregium, D.

80 b. Duel between a dog and the murderer of his master, as related by St. Ambrose, &c.

Præ omni namque bestia plus hominem canis et diligit et dignoscit. Qui et interdum, sublato domino, vivere recusat; et pro domino mortis subire discrimina non formidat. Igitur et mori pro dominis, et commori dominis est paratus. Unde et exemplum unum, quod et[1] Suetonius tangit in libro, qui *De animantium naturis* inscribitur, et Ambrosius[2] quoque in *Examecron* narrat, hic interserere non superfluum reputavi. "Ferunt Antiochiæ in remotiore urbis parte crepus-"culo[3] virum necatum, qui canem sibi adjunctum "haberet. Miles quidam prædandi studio minister "necis extiterat. Tectus idem adhuc tenebroso diei "exordio, in alias partes secesserat.[4] Jacebat inhu-"matum cadaver: frequens spectantium vulgus asta-"bat: canis questu lacrimabili domini deflebat ærum-"nam. Forte is, qui necem intulerat, ut se habet "versutia humani generis,[5] quo, versandi in medio "auctoritate præsumpta, fidem assereret[6] innocentiæ, "ad illam circumstantis[7] populi coronam accessit, et "velut miserans appropinquavit ad funus. Tunc canis, "sequestrato paulisper luctu doloris, arma ultionis "assumpsit, atque apprehensum tenuit; et velut epi-"logio quodam miserabile carmen immurmurans, uni-"versos convertit in lacrimas. Probationem[8] detulit, "quod solum tenuit e plurimis, nec dimisit." Præsertim cum nec odii, neque invidiæ, aut injuriæ alicujus poterat objectione crimen illatum evacuari. Ob

[1] *et*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden. I find no mention of the *De animantium naturis* of Suetonius. The passage of St. Ambrose is in *Hexæmeron*, vi. 4, 24.

[2] *et Ambrosius . . . narrat*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *crepusculo*] R. B. Hc., &c., with *Hexæm.* Not in D.

[4] *secesserat*] Hc. D.; concesserat, R. B. Rd., Camden, with *Hexæm.*

[5] *generis*] R. B. Hc. D., &c.; ingenii, *Hexæm.*

[6] *assereret*] R. B. Hc. D., &c.; adsciseeret, *Hexæm.*

[7] *circumstantis*] D. Rd.; circumspectantis, R. B. Hc., Camden, with *Hexæm.*

[8] *Probationem*] R. B. Hc. D., &c.; Fidem probationi, *Hexæm.*

tantam igitur et[1] tam vehementem homicidii præsumptionem, milite tamen constanter inficiante, judicatum est duello rei certitudinem experiri.[2] In campo itaque constitutis, et vulgi circumstante corona, hinc cane dentibus armato, illinc baculo cubitali milite munito, tandem, cane victore, victus homicida succubuit; et ignominiosam publico patibulo pœnam dedit.

Refert Plinius, refert et Solinus,[3] regem quemdam, studio venationis non mediocriter datum, cum ab hostibus aliquando captus fuisset et incarceratus, quia canes dilexerat, per caninos demum regionis illius exercitus, ad montana et silvestria per se sponte sequestratos, et inde tam in homines quam in armenta[4] et pecudes impetus faciendo et atrociter desæviendo, demum absque alio quolibet necessariorum juvamine modo mirando liberatum.

A sportsman king rescued 81. from prison by dogs.

Præterea,[5] ea quæ de canum natura experientia didici, oculisque meis plerumque conspexi, explicabo. Canis in rebus agnoscendis, dominoque præcipue, quem forte[6] veluti in turba per aliquantulum tempus amiserit, plus naribus quam oculo credit. Primum enim, in domino seu ductore perdito reperiendo, oculis inspicit; deinde nares ad certius investigandum vestibus apponit; tanquam totas infallibiles experientiæ vires eidem in naribus natura plantaverit.

Giraldus's observations as to the nature of dogs.

Item medicinam portat lingua canina, sicut e contra mortem lingua lupina. Unde et sicut vulneribus canis lingendo medetur, sic vulnera lupus lingua corrumpit.

---

[1] *et*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[2] *experiri*] R. B. Hc. D. Rd. Over it, in R. and B., is the interlineation, "vel annotari." F. has "vel annotari vel experiri," in the text.

[3] Pliny (*Nat. Hist.*, viii. 61), and from him Solinus (cap. xv.), have this: "Garamantum regem canes "ducenti ab exilio reduxere, prœliati contra resistentes." I can find, in either writer, no further authority for Giraldus's fuller account.

[4] *armenta*] Hc. D., &c.; armamenta, R. B.

[5] The two next sections, *Præterea . . . . læsionem,* in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[6] *forte*] Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

Canis autem, si vel collo vel capite, vel alia quavis corporis parte, quo linguam flectere non valeat, vulnus acceperit, pede posteriori linguæ beneficium, quasi nuncio fideli, transfert ad læsionem.

[Cap. VIII.]

De Aveninæ et Neth fluviis transcursis; de Abertawe[1] *quoque, et Goher; cum notabilibus suis.*

Progress from Margan abbey to Swansea.

Profecti abinde, non procul a Margano, ubi sabulosi litoris et maris influentis alternæ incipiunt vicissitudines, Aveninæ fluvium, sub plurimo tamen refllui maris moramine, transvadavimus. Et inde versus Neth fluvium via maritima festinantes, primævum Karadoci filium Morganum ducem et prævium habuimus. Accedentibus itaque nobis ad aquam, præ aliis australis Kambriæ fluviis, vivi sabuli periculis, totumque subito quod ingeritur absorbentis, inaccessibilem, inter clitellarios multos, qui via versus mare venerant inferiore, unus quem solum qui scripsit hæc ibidem habebat, quanquam medius in turba conserta incederet, solus tamen quasi in abyssum descendit. Sed demum tamen, non absque sarcinæ detrimento librorumque, laboriosa simul et periculosa juvenum opera, vix extractus evasit. Quanquam igitur partium illarum principem Morganum viæ ducem haberemus, sub periculo tamen multo, plurimorumque lapsu, ad aquam pervenimus. Per sabulum quippe absorbens, contra ducis monita, nos viæ terror insolitæ festinare coegit, et

Dangerous quicksands.

81 b.

"Timor addidit alas;"

Virg. Æn. viii. 224.

cum per hujuscemodi pericula, sicut ibi[2] didicimus, sit potior incessus moderata maturatione[3] temperatior. Sed

---

[1] *Abertawe*] D.; Abertau, R. B. And so afterwards.

[2] *ibi*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; ibidem, D.

[3] *moderata maturatione*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

quoniam quolibet menstruo maris incremento amnis illius vada[1] mutantur, quolibet nubigero imbrium augmento non reperiuntur, pluvialibus inundationibus exuberantibus undis, navigio non vado transvecti sumus; monasterio de[2] Neth a dextra relicto, iterum Meneviæ partibus appropinquantes,[3] et Landavensis ecclesiæ diocesim, quam apud Abergavenni intravimus, post terga relinquentes.

Accidit autem his nostris diebus, Menevensi episcopo David secundo hac iter agente, et vado recente maris influentis procella turbato, quod capellanus quidam de finibus illis, Rederth[4] scilicet agnomine Falsus, quoniam transeundarum fuerat gnarus aquarum, vadi prætentandi periculum episcopo præcipiente suscepit. Sed cum equum episcopi grandem et fortem, et ex toto comitatu ad hoc fideliter electum, presbyter ascendisset, vado statim transmeato, quoniam suspensionis sententiam nuper incurrerat, ad ipsa quæ non procul aberant silvestria fuga maturata se proripuit; nec revocari ullatenus potuit, donec, sumpta securitatis et indemnitatis cautione, hinc equus et illinc missa restitueretur. Anecdote of bishop David and a chaplain.

Intrantes itaque provinciam quæ Goher dicitur, in castro de Sweineshe,[5] quod et Kambrice Abertawe[6] vocatur, id est, casus Tawe[6] fluvii, pernoctavimus. Mane vero, post missam, populo convocato, plurimisque ad crucem allectis, vir quidam partium illarum [ætate provectus],[7] cui nomen Kadorus, ad archipræsulem accedens, eum in hæc verba convenit; "Domine, si mihi "pristinæ vires suppeterent, et juventutis elapsæ robur Arrival at Swansea, or Abertawy. 82. Cador's offering of tithes.

[1] *vada*] He. D., &c., and F. by alteration; vaga, R. B., and F. originally.

[2] *de*] He. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *appropinquantes*] D. Rd., Camden; *appropiantes*, R. B. He.

[4] *Rederth*] D.; Retherch, R. B. "Rhydderch" is a not uncommon Welsh name.

[5] *Sweineshe*] D.; Sweinesie, R. B.

[6] *Abertawe*, and *Tawe*] D.; Abertau, Tau, R. B.

[7] *ætate provectus*] R. B. He., Camden. Not in D. Rd.

"adesset, laudabilem quem prædicas laborem nec ulla "mihi elemosina redimere, nec ullius desidiæ torpor "adimere posset. Verum quoniam desiderabilem hanc "gratiam ætas mihi debilior, deteriorque dies invidit; "quippe sicut

Hor. A. P. 175.

"'Multa ferunt anni venientes commoda secum,'

"sic

"'Multa recedentes adimunt;'

"si beneficium, corporis vexatione, consequi plenum "non sufficio, decimarum tamen omnium quæ possideo "largitione, consequi valeam vel semiplenum." Et sic ad pedes archiepiscopi [provolutus, et] [1] cum largo lacrimarum fonte genua ponens, in manu ejusdem, ad crucis obsequium, rerum suarum omnium decimas assignavit, et ab eodem dimidiam injunctæ pœnitentiæ remissionem impetravit. Cum autem, hoc facto, paulisper seorsum recessisset, reversus in hanc sententiam iterum prorupit; "Domine, si voluntas informat ac"tionem, et ipsa plerumque pro facto reputatur, cum "mihi hoc iter agendi sit plena et firma voluntas, "residuæ [partis] [2] pœnitentiæ relaxationem peto; et "insuper, renovato beneficio, decimarum mearum de "residuo [3] summam adæquabo." Subridens ad hæc archiepiscopus, devotam viri subtilitatem cum admiratione amplexatus est.

The facetious monk.

Eadem vero [4] nocte, monachis duobus, cubiculariis archiepiscopi, super his quæ acciderant, periculisque viæ ad invicem conferentibus, dixit unus eorum, "Pro"vincia dura est ista." Alter autem e contra facete respondit; "Quinimmo, nimis hesterna die mollis in-

---

[1] *provolutus, et*] Hc., Camden. Not in R. B. D. Rd.

[2] *partis*] R. B. Hc., Camden. Not in D. Rd.

[3] *de residuo*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] *Eadem vero . . . . . referente*] This section in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

venta est." Altero ad asperitatem patriæ, altero vero ad sabuli mollitiem sermonem referente.

Parum autem ante hæc nostra tempora, accidit his in partibus res memoratu non indigna; quam sibi contigisse presbyter Eliodorus constantissime referebat. Cum enim puerilis innocentiæ duodecimum jam ageret annum, quoniam, ut ait Salomon,[1] "Radix literarum "amara est, quanquam fructus dulcis," puer literis addictus, ut disciplinam subterfugeret, et verbera crebra præceptoris, in concava fluvii cujusdam ripa se fugitivus occultavit. Cumque ibidem, bis sole revoluto, jejunus continue jam latitasset, apparuerunt ei homunculi duo, staturæ quasi pygmææ, dicentes; "Si nobis-"cum venire volueris, in terram ludis et deliciis "plenam te ducemus."[2] Annuens ille, surgensque, secutus est prævios, per viam primo subterraneam et tenebrosam, usque in terram pulcherrimam, fluviis et pratis, silvis et planis distinctissimam, obscuram tamen, et aperto solari lumine non illustratam. Erant ibi dies omnes quasi nebulosi, et noctes lunæ stellarumque absentia teterrimæ. Adductus est puer ad regem, eique coram regni curia præsentatus: quem cum diu, cum admiratione cunctorum, rex intuitus esset, tandem eum filio suo, quem puerum habebat, tradens assignavit. Erant autem homines staturæ minimæ, sed pro quantitatis captu valde compositæ; flavi omnes, et luxuriante capillo, muliebriter per humeros coma demissa. Equos habebant suæ competentes modicitati, leporariis in quantitate conformes. Nec carne vescebantur, nec pisce; lacteis plerumque cibariis utentes, et in pultis modum quasi croco confectis. Juramenta

82 b.

Adventure of a boy with fairies.

[1] In *Top. Hib.* (Vol. V., 191, n. 6), these words are ascribed to St. Jerome. Jerome has, "De "amaro semine literarum dulces "fructus carpo" (*Ep. ad Rusticum monachum*, N° 4 of old editions, 125 of late), which I suppose to be the passage referred to.

[2] *ducemus*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; deducemus, D.

eis nulla: nihil enim adeo ut mendacia detestabantur. Quoties de superiori hemisphærio revertebantur, ambitiones nostras, infidelitates, et inconstantias exspuebant. Cultus eis religionis palam nullus: veritatis solum, ut videbatur, amatores præcipui et cultores. Solebat autem puer ille ad nostrum hemisphærium pluries ascendere; interdum per viam qua venerat, interdum
83. per aliam; primo cum aliis, et postea per se. Solumque matri suæ se committebat; patriæ modum, gentisque naturam, et statum suum [1] ei declarans. Monitus igitur a matre, ut auri, quo abundabat regio, munus ei quandoque referret, pilam auream, qua regis filius ludere consueverat, ab ipso rapiens ludo, per viam solitam ad matrem deproperans cursim asportavit. Et cum ad ostium domus paternæ, populi tamen illius non absque sequela, jam pervenisset, intrare festinanti [2] pes hæsit in limine; et sic intra tectum cadenti, matre ibidem sedente, pilam manu [3] elapsam duo pygmæi e vestigio sequentes arripuere, exeundo in puerum sputa, contemptus, et derisiones emittentes. Ipse vero resurgens, ad seque reversus, mira facti confunditur erubescentia; et matris plurimum consilia devovens et [4] detestans, cum via redire pararet quam assueverat, ad aquæ descensum hypogeumque meatum cum pervenisset, aditus ei jam nullus apparuit; cum tamen, per anni fere spatium, intra concavas aquæ prædictæ ripas viam inutilis explorator inquireret. Sed quoniam ea, quæ ratio non mitigat, temporis interdum mora mitescunt; et diuturnitas sola laxatos hebetat plerumque dolores; siquidem malis multis finis de tempore venit; demum
Who afterwards be- tamen ab amicis, et matre præcipue, vix revocatus,

---

[1] *suum*] B. Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. F., Camden.

[2] *festinanti*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; festinavit, D., Camden.

[3] *manu*] D. Rd.; a manu, R. B. Hc.; e manu, Camden.

[4] *et*] D. Rd.; ac, R. B. Hc., Camden.

sibique restitutus, et literis denuo datus, tandem[1] processu dierum in sacerdotii gradum est promotus. comes a priest.

Cum autem Menevensis episcopus David secundus super hujus[2] eventus inquisitione[3] presbyterum jam senio confectum multoties solicitasset, nunquam ei negotii seriem potuit citra lacrimas replicare. Habuerat etiam gentis illius linguæ notitiam; cujus et verba recitare consueverat, quæ sibi puerilibus, ut moris est, annis rapide comparaverat. Erant autem verba, sicut ab episcopo prædicto mihi sunt sæpe proposita, Græco idiomati valde conformia. Cum enim aquam requirebant, dicebant *Ydor ydorum;* quod Latine sonat, aquam offer. *Ydor* enim aqua eorum lingua, sicut et Græca, dicebatur: unde et vasa aquatica *Ydriæ* dicuntur: et *Duur*[4] lingua Britannica similiter aqua dicitur. Item salem requirentes dicebant, *Halgein ydorum*, id est, salem affer. *Hal* vero Græce sal dicitur, et *haleyn* Britannice. Lingua namque Britannica, propter diutinam quam Britones, qui tunc Trojani, et postea Britones a Bruto eorum duce sunt vocati, post Trojæ excidium moram in Græcia fecerant, in multis Græco idiomati[5] conformis invenitur.

And relates the tale himself to the bishop of St. David's.

Fairy language very like Greek.

83 b.

Hic autem mihi notabile videtur, quod in uno verbo tot linguas convenire non invenio, sicut in isto. *Hal* enim Græce, *Halein* Britannice, *Halein* similiter Hibernice; *Halgein, g* interposita, lingua prædicta. Item *sal* Latine,—quia, ut ait Priscianus, in quibusdam dictionibus pro aspiratione ponitur *s;* ut *Hal* Græce, *sal* Latine; *hemi, semi; hepta, septem,*—*Sel* Gallice, mutatione *a* vocalis in *e*, a Latino; additione *t* literæ, *salt* Anglice, *sout* Teutonice. Habetis ergo septem

De Arte Grammatica, xiii. 5, 25.

---

[1] *tandem*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; tamen, D.

[2] *hujus*] R. B. Hc., &c.; hujusmodi, D.

[3] *inquisitione*] R. B. Hc., &c.; inquisitionem, D.

[4] *Duur*] D.; Dur, R. B. Hc., &c. Dwfr, in modern Welsh.

[5] *idiomati*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

linguas, vel octo, in hac una dictione plurimum concordantes.

Giraldus's opinion as to the truth of this tale. Sin autem interpositæ relationis de veritate quid sentiam scrupulosus investigator inquiras,[1] cum Augustino respondeo, admiranda fore divina miracula, non disputatione[2] discutienda: nec ego negando divinæ potentiæ terminos pono, nec affirmando eam quæ extendi non potest insolenter extendo. Sed illud Ieronymi semper in talibus ad animum revoco: "Multa,"[3] inquit, "incredibilia reperies, nec[4] verisimilia, quæ "nihilominus tamen vera sunt. Nihil enim contra "naturæ Dominum prævalet natura." Hæc igitur, et his[5] similia, si quæ contigerint, juxta Augustini sententiam inter illa locaverim, quæ nec affirmanda plurimum, neque neganda decreverim.

[Cap. IX.]

De Lochur et Wendrayth[6] *fluviis transcursis; de Kedwely quoque; cum notabilibus suis.*

84. Progress from Swansea to Cydweli. Transivimus inde versus aquam de Locher per campestria, in quibus Howelus, filius Moreduci[7] de Brecheniauc, post obitum regis Henrici primi, Anglos de finibus illis, et milites multos, publico bello confectos interemit. Fluvio vero de Locher transvadato, et aquis postea quæ Wendraith dicuntur transmeatis, ad castrum de Kedwely via duce pervenimus. In partibus

---

[1] *inquiras*] D. Rd., Camden; inquiris, R. B. Hc.

[2] *disputatione*] Hc. D., &c.; dispositione, R. B.

[3] After *Multa* Rd. adds, "in Scripturis." See Vol. V., 210, l. 2, and 356, l. 25. I have not succeeded in verifying this quotation from Jerome.

[4] *nec*] D. Rd.; et non, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *his*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

[6] *Wendrayth*] D.; Wandrez, R. B. And so afterwards, and so *supra*, p. 9, n. 8.

[7] *Moreduci*] D.; Mereduci, R.; Mereducii, B. Howel ab Mareddudd of Brecheiniog. See *Brut*, A° 1135.

istis, Anglorum rege Henrico primo rebus humanis exempto, dum Griphinus Resi filius, Sudwalliæ tunc princeps, in Norwalliam auxilium corrogaturus ivisset, uxor ejus Guendoloena,[1] tanquam Amazonum regina et Pentesilea secunda, in partes illas exercitum ducens, a Mauricio Londoniensi, loci illius tunc domino, et viro egregio Gaufrido, præsulis constabulario, bellico in[2] certamine confecta, interempto ibidem filio ejusdem Morgano, et altero capto, scilicet Mailgone, quos pueros secum in expeditionem arroganter adduxerat, cum aliis multis ipsa demum ferro confossa caput amisit.

Death of Gwenllian, wife of prince Gruffudd, in battle.

Tempore vero Anglorum regis Henrici primi, tranquillum pacis statum Gualia sortita, cum prædictus ille Mauricius silvam in partibus illis haberet, ferarum multitudine, cervorumque præcipue valde copiosam, nimiæque[3] parcitatis in ferina fuisset; quoniam, ut moris est, semper in viri fallacia est uxor astuta, miro mulier est usa commento. Habebat enim vir ille a latere silvæ versus mare pascua magna, et ovium in pascuis copiam multam. Mulier itaque, pastores omnes, et majores domus, figmenti sui complices habens et fautores, simplicis utendo commoditate viri, in hæc verba ad maritum accessit; erat enim simplicis naturæ simul et tenacis; "Mirum," inquit, "quod bestiarum "dominator bestiis dominari jam desiisti, et cervis "non utendo, cervis[4] jam non imperas sed servis. "Et ecce quantus abusus ex nimia surgit patientia. 84 b. "Inaudita namque rabie, et insueta voracitate, adeo "in oves nostras desæviunt, ut ex multis paucæ, et[5] "ex fere innumeris jam reddantur numerosæ." Ut autem probabiliorem redderet assertionem, evisceratis

Trick put upon Maurice de London by his wife.

---

[1] *Guendoloena*] D.; Guenliana, R. B. This defeat, and death of the princess Gwenllian, not mentioned in *Brut* or *Annal. Camb.*

[2] *in*] D., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Rd. has "belli certamine."

[3] *nimiæque*] B. Hc. Rd., Camden; nimiæ, R. D.

[4] *cervis*] Hc. D., Camden; servis, R. B. Rd. is here corrupt.

[5] *et*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden. Rd. is corrupt.

cervis duobus, inter ipsa intestina lanam interseri procuravit. Sic itaque vir, deceptus muliebri astutia, canum rapacitati cervos exposuit.

[Cap. X.]

De fluvio Tewiensi navigio transcurso; de Kaermerdhyn quoque, et Albælandæ monasterio; cum notabilibus suis.

Progress to Carmarthen

Transeuntes inde navigio flumen Tewiense, et versus Kaermerdin iter arripientes, Laudestephan et Talacharn marinis in scopulis a læva reliquimus. Erant autem hæc duo castra, quæ Resus filius Griphini, post obitum Anglorum regis Henrici secundi, desperatione custodum,[1] citra insultum occupavit: deinde provinciis de Pembroch et Ros cædibus, incendiis, et deprædationibus fere exterminio datis, frustrato conamine Kairmerdin obsedit. Sonat autem Kairmerdin urbs Merlini; eo quod, juxta Britannicam historiam, ibi ex incubo genitus inventus fuerat Merlinus. Est igitur hæc urbs antiqua, coctilibus muris, partim adhuc extantibus, egregie clausa, super nobilem Tewi fluvium sita, silvis et pratis abundans. Habet autem Kantrefmaur,[2] id est, Kantaredum magnum, ab oriente, copiosa silvarum condensitate australis Kambriæ civibus[3] tutissimum in necessitate refugium: ubi et castrum Dynewr,[4] in collis excelsi vertice super fluvium[5] Tewi situm, quod et principalis Sudwalliæ curia dicitur.

Geoffrey, vi. 17, 18.

Roman remains.

[1] *desperatione custodum*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Compare *Brut* and *Annal. Camb.*, A° 1189.

[2] *Kantrefmaur*] D.; Kantermaur, R. B. And so in other case. So also "Kantrefbochan" in D., and "Kanterbochan" in R. B., a few lines further on.

[3] *civibus*] R. B. Hc., &c. Not in D.

[4] *Dynewr*] D.; Dinevor, R. B. In the course of a few lines, D. has "Dynevur," and "Dinevur."

[5] *fluvium*] D., Camden; flumen, R. B. Hc. Rd.

Fuerant enim antiquitus tres principales in Wallia curiæ; Dynevur in Sudwallia; Aberfrau in Norwallia, scilicet apud Moniam; in Powisia apud Pengwern,[1] quod et nunc Slopesburia dicitur. Sonat autem[2] Penguern caput alneti. 85.

In his[3] autem de Kantrefmaur finibus, kemmoto videlicet de Kaoc, illud ad animum revocans,

"Dolus, an virtus, quis in hoste requirat?" Virg. Æn. ii. 390.

et illud,

"Et si non recte possis, quocunque modo rem;" Hor. 1 Ep. i. 66.

quam enormiter in subditos, hoc nostro tempore, curia vindictam exercuerit, noster explicare stilus abhorruit.

Juxta Dinevur, trans flumen scilicet Tewi, in Cantrefbochau, id est, kantaredo brevi, est fons[4] qui die naturali bis undis deficiens, et toties exuberans, marinas imitari solet instabilitates.

Non procul a Kairmerdhin, ex parte boreali scilicet,[5] A.D. 1163. apud Pencadeir, id est, cathedræ caput, Reso Griphini filio, nostris diebus, ad deditionem dolose magis quam virtuose compulso, et in Angliam ducto, rex Anglorum Henricus secundus de Armorica oriundum Britannia militem quemdam, de cujus prudentia simul et fidelitate confidebat, sub decani de Cantrefmaur conductu cui nomen Guaidanus, castrum Dinevur, locique situm, et patriæ munitionem exploraturum transmisit. Presbyter autem, monitus ut per viam meliorem ad castrum et faciliorem militi præberet iter, per magis difficiles et inaccessibiles aditus ipsum ex industria circumduxit. Et ubicunque per saltus herbosos trans-

Trick played upon an envoy of Henry II.

---

[1] *Pengwern*] D.; Penguern, R. B., and D. in next line.

[2] *sonat autem . . . alneti*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *In his . . . . abhorruit*] This section in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] This well is mentioned in *Top. Hib.* (Vol. V., 85).

[5] *scilicet*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B. As to Rhys ab Gruffudd's submission to Henry II. in 1163, compare *Brut*, A° 1162, and *Annal. Camb.* 1164.

situm[1] faciebant, cum intuentium admiratione presbyter herbam pascebatur; asserens accolas et indigenas herbis et radicibus, ingruente inedia, vivere et vesci solere. Ad regem itaque milite reverso, cunctisque relatis quæ vel digna relatu viderat vel audierat; terram scilicet inhabitabilem, terram inviam et inaccessibilem, nullique genti nisi bestiali et bestiarum more viventi victui necessariam; demum fidei sacramentique nodis, necnon et obsidum vinculis astrictum, Resum rex ad sua remisit.

85 b. Progress to Whitland abbey; Progressis inde nobis versus Cisterciense monasterium quod Alba domus dicitur, adsunt quidam nuntiantes archiepiscopo juvenem quemdam Kambrensem, ei devote occurrentem, obiter ab hostibus interemtum. Ad quem non procul a via divertens, corpusque cruentum elemosynarii sui operiri pallio jubens, jugulati juvenis animam pia supplicatione commendavit. Igitur in crastino, sagittariis duodecim de Sancti Clari castello satis propinquo, qui juvenem prædictum jugulaverant, apud Albam domum in pœnam criminis crucesignatis; tribusque fluviis, primo Taph, deinde Cledeu[2] sub Lanwadein, alteroque Cledeu[3] sub Haverfordia transmeatis, demum Haverfordiam pervenimus. Sortita est autem inde provincia nomen, inter duos hos fluvios sita, Deugledeu; eo quod duobus his fluviis quasi duobus gladiis cingatur et terminetur. *Cledeu* namque Britannice gladius Latine.

and thence to Haverford.

[Cap. XI.]

De Haverfordia et Ros; cum notabilibus suis.

Miraculous effect on the Welsh

Apud Haverfordiam itaque primo ab archipræsule sermone facto, deinde ab archidiacono Menevensi, cujus

---

[1] *transitum*] Hc. D., &c.; transitus, R. B.

[2] *Cledeu*] D.; Cledu, R. B.

[3] *Cledeu*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

nomen præsentis opusculi titulus tenet, verbo Domini gratiose prolato, turbæ allecta est multitudo tam militaris quam plebiæ. Ubi et[1] pro mirando, et quasi pro miraculo ducebatur a multis, quod ad verbum Domini ab archidiacono prolatum, cum tamen lingua Latina et Gallica loqueretur, non minus illi qui neutram linguam noverunt, quam alii, tam ad lacrimarum affluentiam moti fuerunt, quam etiam ad crucis signaculum catervatim accurrerunt.

of Giraldus's Latin or French sermon.

Accidit autem aniculam partium istarum, quæ per triennium antea cæca fuerat, audito archipræsulis adventu, filium suum adolescentem, ut vel de fimbria vestimenti ejusdem aliquam particulam ei referret, ad locum prædicationis destinasse. Qui cum ad archiepiscopum ob turbam consertam accedere non potuisset, glebam quam sub pedibus prædicantis turba dilapsa signaverat secum matri reportavit. Ipsa vero munus oblatum cum gaudio magno suscipiens, et in orientem cum orationum instantia genua ponens, ori et oculis cespitem apposuit; et statim luminis lætitiam, quam penitus amiserat, tam viri sancti meritis, quam fide propria et devotione recuperavit.

A blind woman restored to sight.

SC.

Erat autem gens hæc originem a Flandria ducens, ab Anglorum rege Henrico primo ad hos fines inhabitandum transmissa.[2] Gens fortis et robusta, continuoque belli conflictu gens Kambrensibus inimicissima; gens, inquam, lanificiis, gens mercimoniis usitatissima; quocunque labore sive periculo terra marique lucrum quærere gens pervalida; vicissim loco et tempore nunc ad aratrum, nunc ad arma, gens promptissima; gens utique felix et fortis, si vel regibus ut deceret Kambria

This district colonized from Flanders by Henry I.

Characters of the people.

[1] *Ubi et . . . accurrerunt*] This clause in D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Giraldus gives a fuller account of the doings at Haverford, in the *De Rebus*, &c. (Vol. I., 75).

[2] The *Brut* places the Flemish immigration into Rhos under the year 1105, the *Annal. Camb.* under 1107; Florence of Worcester (II., 64) under 1111. There were detachments, probably, at different times.

cordi fuisset, vel præstitutis saltem et præfectis injuriarum dedecus animo vindice displicuisset.

Successful stratagem of a prisoner.

Contigit autem prædicto in castro, nostris diebus, res nequaquam prætereunda. In ejusdem castri turre tenebatur in vinculis latro famosus;[1] ad quem pueri tres, filius scilicet comitis Clarensis, ibi nutrituræ commissus, et alii[2] duo, quorum alter herilis filius, alter ejusdem ex filia nepos, propter missilia lignea, quæ eis arcu mittenda ferro formare consueverat, frequenter conveniebant. Quadam autem die, puerorum precibus, ad auras ab imo nequam extractus, captata carcerarii absentia, ocius ostia claudens, tam ipsum exclusit, quam pueros quoque secum inclusit. Quo perpetrato, statim clamor factus est magnus, tam intus puerorum, quam exterius populorum; nec cessavit ille elevata securi mortem pueris acriter interminare, donec ei tam indemnitatis quam vitæ securitas sub cautione certissima fuerat indulta.

A somewhat similar instance in France.

In Francorum quoque regno quondam,[3] [apud castellum Radulphi,][4] casus accidit haud dissimilis. Dominator enimvero[5] loci illius quem olim exoculaverat in castro quemdam alebat: qui cum, ex diutina frequentia, vias castri cunctas, turriumque gradus et as-
86 b. census, cordis oculo jam tenuisset, semel, ira vindice, opportunitate captata, puerum quemdam castellani filium, quem unicum habebat et heredem, ad summa turris propugnacula secum adduxit. Stans igitur in alto, et, clausis intus ostiis, ruinam puero parans, ad clamorem magnum et mœrorem universos provocavit.

---

[1] *famosus*] D. Rd. Camden; famosus et Kambrensis, R. B. Hc.

[2] *et alii*] D.; aliique, R. B. Hc., &c.

[3] *quondam*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[4] *apud castellum Radulphi*] Hc., Camden. Not in R. B. D. Rd. Châteauroux, in Berry. "Castellum "Radulfi, quod a doloribus nominis "appellationem sortitur, fundatum "est in pago Biturico;" *Diceto*, 599, l. 52. See *infra*, 85, l. 23.

[5] *enimvero*] D. Rd.; enim, R. B. Hc., Camden.

Procedens itaque pueri pater, et non mediocri dolore concussus,[1] cum filii redimere sospitatem modis omnibus attemptasset, responsum accepit, nisi per partium inferiorum mutilationem, quam et sibi intulerat, hoc nullatenus fieri posse.

Ipse vero, multis antea frustra allegatis, demum hoc concesso, quasi præcisis illis, cum lugubri circumstantium clamore ictum in trunco fieri fecit. Cæcus autem graviores angustias ubi sentiret cum requisisset, et responsum[2] quoniam in renibus falsum esse proclamans, puerum iterum præcipitare paravit. Ictu itaque denuo dato, et angustias sibi in corde majores esse responso, dominum arguens falsitatis, puerum ad præcipitium exportavit. Tertio vero, genitum ut redimat genitor, instrumenta gignendi vere præcidit. Et cum in dentibus se sentire dolorem proclamasset; "Verum," inquit ille, "quia experto credendum; et jam injurias "ultus ex parte, mortem mitius aggrediar; et tu de "cetero nec alium gignes, nec isto gaudebis." Eoque dicto, exsiliens ab alto, se cum puero præcipitem dedit: et statim in ima corruens, membris minutim confractis, expiravit uterque. Miles autem pro anima pueri monasterium, quod adhuc extat, et *De doloribus* dicitur, ibidem construxit.

Richard Fitz-Tancard, castellan of Haverford.

Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod ad prædicti loci castellanum, Ricardum scilicet Tancardi filium, cum tamen fratres habuerit plurimos et probos, et omnium junior extiterit,[3] præmortuis aliis, universa est hereditas devoluta. Similiter et ad Resum Griphini filium, sublatis de medio multis antea fratribus probis et pulcherrimis, 87.
dextralis Kambriæ dominium est devolutum.

His intercourse, when a boy,

Contigit autem, prædicto Ricardo pueriles annos agente, virum sanctum, cui nomen Karodocus, apud

[1] *concussus*] R. B. Hc. Rd., Camden; percussus, D.

[2] *responsum*] D.; responsum audiret, R. B. Hc., Camden; resp. acciperet, Rd.

[3] *extiterit*] R. B. Hc.; extiterat, D. Rd., Camden.

with St. Caradog.

Sanctum Hysmaelem in Rosensi provincia eremiticam et sanctissimam vitam ducere: ad quem puer tam a patre sæpius quam a[1] matre transmissus, cibariorum exenia quia frequenter ferre consueverat, tantam in oculis viri boni gratiam obtinuit, ut ei sæpissime cum sua benedictione fratrum omnium felicitatem et paternam hereditatem compromitteret.

St. Caradog and the hounds.

Accidit autem aliquando, prædictum Ricardum ob pluviam inundantem ad domum eremiticam divertisse. Et cum canes, quos secum ad venatum adduxerat, nec vocatione, nec adulatione, nec etiam cibi[2] oblatione, ad se introducere posset, subridens vir sanctus, et ipsos manu leniter annuens, statim ad se venientes cunctos suscepit.

Tancard's vain attempt to alter the destination of St. Caradog's burial.

Processu vero temporis, cum diem Karadocus jam clausisset extremum, et vitæ labentis cursum fine felici consummasset, corpus suum, quod libero postremæ voluntatis stilo Menevensi ecclesiæ delegaverat, Ricardi pater Tancardus violenta præsumptione detinuit: sed statim ægritudine gravi correptus,[3] mandatum ocius revocavit. Cum itaque semel et iterum hoc ei contigisset, Pharaoni[4] in hoc haud dissimilis, qui populum Dei plagis urgentibus abire promisit,[5] cessantibus eisdem in irritum revocavit, tertio tam morbo laxato quam mandato, cum corpus versus Meneviam per sabulum de Neugol[6] deferretur, et exuberantem in pluviam nube resoluta, totoque comitatu pluvia perfuso, sacræ vecturæ duces a latebris exeuntes, palla[7] serica feretrum opertum ab omni imbrium madore in-

---

[1] *a*] Hc. D., Camden; et, R. B.; et a, F. Rd. is here corrupt.

[2] *cibi*] R. B. Hc. Not iu D. Rd., Camden.

[3] *correptus*] D. Rd., Camden: arreptus, R. B. Hc.

[4] *Pharaoni . . . . revocavit*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *promisit*] D.; permisit, Rd.

[6] *Neugol*] D.; Niwegal, R. B.

[7] *palla . . . opertum*] R. B. Hc. D.; pallium sericum quo pharetrum opertum fuerat, Rd. Camden has, "pallam sericam qua feretrum op. "fu."

demne[1] reperiunt et immune.[1] Et sic Meneviam corpus allatum, crebra miraculorum tam præsentium quam sequentium quoque coruscatione, in ecclesiæ Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David ala sinistra, juxta altare sancti protomartyris Stephani, debita est celebritate tumulatum. 87 b.

Divination from the shoulder-bone of a ram, as practised by the Flemings.

Hoc autem mihi videtur hac de gente notandum, quod in armis arietum dextris, carne nudatis, et non assis sed elixis, tam futura prospiciunt, quam præterita et antea incognita longe respiciunt; tempore quoque præsentia, sed loco absentia, quasi prophetico quodam spiritu arte miranda cognoscunt; pacis et guerræ signa, cædes et incendia, domestica adulteria, regis statum, vitam, et obitum, rimularum quarundam et notularum indiciis certissime declarant. Unde et nostris contigit temporibus, virum quemdam partium istarum non ignobilem, et in arte prædicta præ aliis instructum, cui nomen Guillelmus Mangunel, uxorem habere de proprio[2] viri nepote prægnantem. Cujus eventus vir non ignarus, arietem de ovili proprio sumptum, ex parte cujusdam vicini sui, coram uxore, sibi præsentari procuravit. Quo statim ad coquinam transmisso, cum eodem die in prandio sedissent, armum arietis, debito more decoctum et purgatum, ad inspiciendum vir mulieri, quam in hoc peritam noverat, ex industria porrexit. Quem cum paulisper intuita fuisset, rimulas notans et signa secreta, os et oraculum[3] in mensa subridendo projecit. Ille vero cuncta dissimulans, cum risus causam reique notitiam tanto vehementius efflagitasset, illa demum, tanquam importuna viri victa instantia, respondit: "Vir, de cujus ovili aries hic fuerat, uxorem habet "adulteram, et proprii nepotis incestu jam gravidam

By means of which the incestuous wife of William Mangunel self-convicted.

---

[1] *indemne*, and *immune*] R. B. Hc. D.; indemnem, immunem, Rd., Camden.

[2] *proprio*] R. B. Hc., &c.; proprii, D.

[3] *oraculum*] Hc. D., and Rd. (with no "os"); orculum, B.; oculum, R. F.

"effectam." Ad hæc autem vir subtristis, vultuque demisso; "Verum," inquit, "oraculum profers, et nimia veritate subnixum, unde et tanto mihi dolendum fortius, quanto in propriam injuriam publicata redundat ignominia." At illa tantam sui comperto crimine confusionem dissimulare non prævalens, interiorem animi passionem signis exterioribus, urgente vicissim tam pudore quam angustia, nunc rubore vultus, nunc pallore, demum vero lacrimis more muliebri est protestata.

Other instances. 88. Præterea[1] oblatus est cuidam armus caprei quasi pro ovino, quia simillima sunt ossa purgata. Qui, notatis rimulis parumper et signis, cum admiratione subjecit; "Infelix pecus, quia[2] nunquam novit multiplicari; "infelix et pecudis dominus, qui nunquam ultra tres "vel quatuor in uno grege habere prævaluit." Destructionem quoque patriæ post obitum regis Henrici primi, per annum ante vel dimidium, multi in humeris præviderunt; qui, venditis universis quæ possidebant, tam mobilibus quam immobilibus, indemnes per industriam patria relicta imminens excidium evaserunt.

Contigit etiam[3] in Flandriæ finibus, unde gens ista descenderat, viro quodam vicino suo os hujusmodi ad inspiciendum transmittente, quod portitor obiter fossam transiliendo [fissa nate][4] crepitum dedit, quem[5] statim viri naribus, cujus causa vexabatur, verbis et votis adoptavit. Ille vero cui portabatur, armo inspecto, illico subjecit; "Sed tu, frater,[6] quod mihi optaveras[7] "in naribus habeas."

---

[1] *Præterea, &c.*] Rest of this chapter in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[2] *quia*] D.; qui, Hc. Rd.; quæ, Camden.

[3] *etiam*] D. Rd., Camden; autem, Hc.

[4] *fissa nate*] Hc. Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[5] *quem*] Hc. Rd., Camden; quod, D.

[6] *frater*] Hc. D., Camden; semper, Rd.

[7] *quod mihi optaveras*] D. Rd.; id ipsum quod opt., Hc.; id quod mihi adoptaveras, Camden.

Accidit autem, quod et notabile censui, quemdam nostris diebus ensis[1] inspectorem non solum furtum, furtique tenorem, furem ipsum, furandique modum et circumstantias omnes inspiciendo notasse; verum etiam campanæ pulsum, et tubæ sonitum, ac si præsentialiter adhuc agerentur quæ jam præterita fuerant, audisse. Mirum itaque quod sicut conjurationes illicitæ imaginaria quadam similitudine oculis acta, sic et auribus repræsentant accidentia.

[Cap. XII.]

De Pembrochia,[2] cum notabilibus suis.

Adjacet autem territorio Rosensi, meridionali maritimoque ex latere, interlabente brachio marino, provincia Pembrochiensis; cujus principale municipium, totiusque provinciæ Demeticæ[3] caput, in saxosa quadam et oblonga rupis eminentia situm, lingua marina de Milverdico portu prosiliens in capite bifurco complectitur. Unde et Pembrochia *Caput maritimæ* sonat. Province of Pembroke, its principal city, and castle.

Primus hoc castrum Arnulfus de Mungumeri,[4] sub Anglorum rege Henrico primo, ex virgis et cespite, tenue satis et exile construxit. Quod postmodum, in Angliam revertens, viro probo prudentique Giraldo de Windesora, constabulario suo primipiloque, cum paucis custodiendum exposuit. Nec mora. Totius australis Kambriæ Gualenses, principe ipsorum viro bellicoso, Reso scilicet Theodori filio, paulo ante dolo suorum A castle here first built by Ernulf de Montgomery (circa 1091). 88 b. This besieged by

[1] *ensis*] Hc. D. Rd; ossis, Camden.

[2] *Pembrochia*] D.; Penbrochia, R. B., and D. several times *infra*.

[3] *Demeticæ*] B. D.; Demetiæ, R. F.

[4] *Mungumeri*] D. Hc.; Mungumin, R. B. It was not in the reign of Henry I., as Giraldus says, but in that of Rufus, about 1090, or soon afterwards, that Ernulf de Montgomery first erected a fortress at Pembroke. The castle of Penvro is mentioned in *Brut* in 1092; and Gerald de Windsor, its constable, in 1095.

the Welsh (in 1092). apud Brecheniauc[1] interempto, et Grifino filio suo puero relicto, castrum obsidione cinxerunt. Contigit autem ut nocte quadam, cum milites quindecim castri desertores ex desperatione scapham intrantes navigio fugam attemptassent, in crastino mane Giraldus eorum armigeris arma dominorum cum feodis dedit, ipsosque statim militari cingulo decoravit. Invalescente vero et gravius incumbente per moram temporis obsidionis incommodo, cum ad ultimam fere inediam jam in castro perducti fuissent, Giraldus, ex summa prudentia spem simulans et solatia spondens, quatuor qui adhuc supererant bacones a propugnaculis frustatim ad hostes projici fecit. Die vero sequente ad figmenta recurrens exquisitiora, literas sigillo suo signatas coram hospitio Menevensis episcopi, cui nomen Wilfredus,[2] qui forte tunc aderat, tanquam casu a portitore dilapsas inveniri procuravit. Erat autem literarum continentia, quod infra menses quatuor comitem Arnulfum super castri subventione solicitari non oporteat. Quo per exercitum literis lectis audito, statim obsidione dispersa ad propria singuli sunt reversi.

Successful stratagems of the castellan Girald de Windsor, when in bad case.

[1] *Brecheniauc*] D.; Brechenieu, R. B. Rhys ab Tewdwr was killed in battle in 1091 (*Brut*, and *Annal. Kamb.*). The siege of Pembroke castle, here described by Giraldus, would seem to have taken place in 1092 (*Brut*).

[2] If the date given in the last note to this siege be correct, then Wilfred, according to Giraldus, must have been bishop of St. David's in 1092. Professor Stubbs (*Episc. Success.* 155), a most perilous person to differ from, places Rithmarch as bishop from 1088 to 1096, when he was succeeded by Wilfred; but I think he must be for once wrong. The *Brut* and *Annal. Camb.* say that Sulien resigned in 1076, and was succeeded by Abraham, who died in 1078. Sulien then again assumed the bishoprick; and again resigning it in 1083, was succeeded, according to *Annal. Camb.*, by his brother, and according to *Brut*, by Wilfre. *Brut*, in 1097, records the death of "Rythmarch the Wise, son "of bishop Sulien, the wisest of "the wise amongst the Britons," but says nothing of his having been a bishop. Giraldus (*infra*, 104) gives the succession thus, "Sulghein, "Abraham, Wilfre," naturally not mentioning Sulien's temporary resumption after Abraham's death.

Nec mora. Giraldus ille,[1] ut altiores in finibus illis sibi suisque radices figeret, Griphini principis Sudwalliæ sororem, cui nomen Nesta, sibi lege maritali copulavit. De qua, processu temporis, egregiam utriusque sexus prolem suscepit; per quam et Anglis australis Kambriæ maritima retenta, et Hiberniæ mœnia [postmodum][2] sunt expugnata, sicut *Vaticinalis* declarat *Historia*. Soon after, Girald de Windsor marries the princess Nest.

Contigit[3] in hoc Penbrochiæ castro nostris temporibus, virum quemdam intra septa domus suæ mustelæ catulos in vellere quodam invenisse. Quos cum illæsos ex industria cum ipso vellere a loco removens abscondisset, bestiola rediens, post crebros undique quærendo nec inveniendo discursus, materno tandem mota dolore, ad vasculum lacte plenum quo parvulus educebatur filius 89. herilis accessit, et statim se supra vas erigens collectum intra se virus evomuit, et lacteum condimento letali potum infecit; tanquam perditæ prolis angustias prolis amissione compensans. Vir autem, his observatis omnibus, vellus ad locum reportavit. Et ecce mustela, materna solicitudine inter spem et metum anxia, Anecdote of a weasel.

"Falsosque frequens mentita dolores,"

depositum invenit; et continuo lætitiam tam gestu quam voce professa, ad vasculum præscriptum celerrime reversa est; eversoque statim continente, totum quod continebatur effudit; tanquam recuperatæ prolis ob gratiam, hospitem illæsum fore statuens et indemnem.

Contigit et alibi, cum bestiola hujusmodi fetus teneros, ob solis et auræ temperiem, extra dumos in planitiem eduxisset, quod milvus insidians unum ex catulis asportavit: et statim illa intra fruticum septa cum prole residua se suscepit, et exquisitæ vindictæ decipu- Another.

---

[1] *ille*] D., Camden; iste, R. B. Hc. Not in Rd.

[2] *postmodum*] Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. D.

[3] This, or a very similar anecdote of a weasel, is related by Neckam, *De Naturis Rerum*, 201.

lam matri dolor ministravit. Exiens igitur, in tumulo[1] quodam se resupinam dedit, et in ipso prædonis prospectu jam reversi se quasi mortuam finxit. Et quoniam semper successus augent aviditatem, statim avis eam avide rapiens ad alta transvexit. Nec mora: et ecce a vindicis animi bestia, venenosi dentis morsu, ad ima corruit jugulata.

Maenor Pyr, or Manorbeer, where Giraldus born.

Distat autem a Penbrochiæ castro quasi miliaribus tribus castellum quod Maynaurpir dicitur,[2] id est, Mansio Pirri: qui et insulam Caldei[3] habebat, quam Kambri[4] Enispir, id est, Insulam Pirri vocant. Stat autem hoc castrum, turribus et propugnaculis eximium, in collis cujusdam capite versus marinum ab occidente portum extenti;[5] a circio et borea sub ipsis muralibus vivarium habens egregium, tam sui majestate quam aquarum profunditate conspicuum; pomerium quoque perpulchrum ab eodem latere, hinc vivario, inde nemore conclusum, tam saxorum prominentia, quam corylorum quoque proceritate præclaro. A dextra[6] vero cas-
89 b. trensis promontorii parte, inter castrum scilicet et ecclesiam, ad stagni amplissimi statum et molendini situm, sabulosam vi ventorum convallem indeficientibus undis rivus inserpit. Ab occidente sinuoso quodam in angulo mare Sabrinum, jamjam prope in Hibernicum vergens, non procul a castro distante subintrat; australi scopulo, si paulo in boream se plus protenderet, aptum navium receptioni portum faciente. Naves igitur quascunque fere a majori Britannia in Hiberniam eurus impellit, ab hoc prospectu tam formidandam ventorum inconstantiam, quam furibundam et cæcam fretorum rabiem videas audacter attentare. Terra triticea;

---

[1] *tumulo*] D. Rd., Camden; cumulo, R. B. Hc.

[2] *quod Maynaurpir dicitur*] R. B. D., &c. Hc. has "Manorpir" only.

[3] *Caldei*] D.; Kaldei, R. B.

[4] *Kambri*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[5] *extenti*] D. Rd.; extensi, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[6] *dextra*] R. B. Hc., &c.; dextris, D.

piscibus marinis, vinoque venali copiose referta; et, quod omnibus præstat, ex Hiberniæ confinio aeris salubritate temperata.

In the most delightful spot of all Wales.

Terrarum igitur omnium Kambriæ totius, septem cantaredis conserta Demetia tam pulcherrima est quam potissima; Demetiæ vero, Pembrochia; Pembrochiæ quidem, terra præscripta. Restat igitur,[1] ut Kambriæ totius locus sit hic amœnissimus.

Non itaque mirandum, non venia indignum, si natale solum, genialeque territorium, profusioribus laudum titulis auctor extulerit.

Evil spirits sensibly conversing with men.

In his autem Pembrochiæ partibus nostris accidit temporibus, spiritus immundos cum hominibus non visibiliter sed sensibiliter conversatos.[2] In domibus namque primo Stephani cujusdam Wiriet,[3] et postea processu temporis Willelmi Not, jactu sordium, et eorum quibus illudere potius quam lædere videntur,[4] sui præsentiam ostendebant.[5] In domo Guillelmi, non absque frequenti tam hospitis quam hospitum damno, tam lineis quam laneis scissuras in vestibus atque foramina faciebat; a quibus eas incommodis nulla poterat diligentia, nulla penitus sera tueri. In domo Stephani, majori miraculo, cum hominibus sermocinari consueverat; et conviciantibus ei, quod plerique ludrico
faciebant, a nativitatis tempore[6] gesta, quæ minus ab 90.
aliis vel audiri vel sciri voluerant, palam improperabat.

Si causam quæris eventus hujus[7] et rationem, assignare non præsumo: nisi quod subitæ mutationis, vel

---

[1] *igitur*] R. B. Hc., Camden; ergo, D. Not in Rd.

[2] See the *Margan Annals*, A° 1184. Is not "Devoniensi" there a mistake for *Demeticensi*, or some such word?

[3] *Wiriet*] D.; Wnriet, R. B.

[4] *videntur*] R. B. Hc., &c.; viderentur, D.

[5] *ostendebant*] D. Rd.; ostentabant, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[6] *tempore*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[7] *hujus*] D.; ejus, Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

paupertatis in divitias, vel potius divitiarum in paupertatem et desolationem, præsagium, ut dicitur, esse solebat: sicut et in his ambobus paulo post compertum fuit.

Illud autem hic notabile censui, quod nec aquæ benedictæ respersione, non tantum communis sed etiam magnæ, nec ullius ecclesiastici sacramenti remedio, ab illusionibus hujusmodi loca mundantur. Quinimmo[1] sacerdotes ipsi, cum devotione intrantes, et tam cruce bajula quam aqua benedicta muniti, statim inter primos sordium jactu dehonestantur. Ex quibus constare videtur, quod a nocivis, non innocuis, a læsionibus, non illusionibus, tam sacramentalia quam[2] sacramenta tuentur.

The woman possessed by a devil in Poitou.

Notandum[3] hic autem, his nostris diebus in Pictavia energumenam fuisse a diabolo possessam, qui et per os ejus loquebatur, disserens et disputans acute et artificiose[4] cum literatis et disertis. Exprobrabat etiam interdum hominibus ea quæ secretius gesserant, et quæ minus audire voluerant. Cum autem liber evangelicus, vel sanctorum reliquiæ, super os obsessæ quandoque ponerentur, ad inferiorem gutturis partem fugiebat: et cum ibi ponerentur, in ventrem descendebat. Apparebat autem per inflationes quasdam et commotiones partium illarum quas possidebat: et cum iterum ponerentur reliquiæ ad partes inferiores in quibus apparebat, statim redibat ad superiores. Cum autem demum attulissent corpus Christi, et laboranti dedissent, respondit dæmon; "Stulti, nihil est quod agitis; non "enim cibus est corporis sed animæ quod ei datis. "Mihi autem non est data potestas in animam, sed "in corpus." Cum autem hi, quibus secretiora sua

---

[1] *Quinimmo*] Hc. D., &c.; Quinimmo et, R. B.

[2] *tam sacr. quam*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[3] *Notandum, &c.*] This section in D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Related more briefly in the *Gemma Ecclesiastica* (Vol. ii. 53).

[4] *artificiose*] Rd., Camden; artifice, D.

improperaverat, confessione super his facta et pœnitentia secuta, redissent, nihil eis improperabat. Quinimmo quibusdam dicebat, "Scivi quidem, scivi; sed "nunc ignoro:" aliis autem quasi convicium hoc emittebat, "At[1] ego taceo; [quod enim scio, nescio."][2] Ex quibus apparet, quia post confessionem et pœnitentiam vel omnino hominum peccata dæmones nesciunt, vel ad damnum eorum et dedecus ea nesciunt. 90 b. Quia, ut ait Augustinus, "Si homo tegit, Deus detegit; "si homo detegit, Deus tegit."

Churches, crosses, &c. struck by lightning.

Nonnullos etiam movere solet, quod fulmina frequenter ecclesias nostras et templa cadendo dejiciunt; cruces quoque et Crucifixi imagines, coram oculis cuncta cernentis et hoc[3] permittentis, plerumque feriendo diminuunt. Quibus nihil aliud ad præsens nisi illud Ovidii respondere dignum duxi;

Ov. Rem. Am. 369.

"Summa petit livor, perflant altissima venti,
"Summa petunt dextra fulmina missa Jovis."

Abelard's retort on a Jew.

Sicut et Petrus Abaelardus egregie suo in tempore, in præsentia Philippi Francorum regis, cuidam Judæo respondisse memoratur, hæc et similia in opprobrium fidei objicienti. "Verum," inquit, "quia fulmina, ab "alto descendentia domicilio, ad ea quæ in terris "sublimiora reperiunt, suæque naturæ similiora, se "frequentius applicant.

"Interdum[4] etiam ministerio dæmonum et malitia, "dum nubium collisione exorta pariter et extorta "vage per aerem in ima feruntur, inter res prædictas, "aut ipsas etiam hominum personas, ut vel fidem "lædere valeant vel fideles, impelli permittuntur. "Ideoque in synagogas vestras nunquam fulmina

[1] *At*] D.; Id, Rd.; Et, Camden.
[2] *quod enim scio nescio*] Rd., Camden. Not in D.
[3] *hoc*] D., Camden; hæc, R. B. Hc. Rd.
[4] *Interdum . . . . permittuntur*] This clause in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

"cadunt, quia nec in cloacas unquam[1] ea cecidisse "vel vidit quispiam vel audivit."

And of a Cistercian abbot on a French knight.

Unde et[2] hic notabile censui, quod cum in Francia nostris diebus inter monachos Cisterciensis ordinis et militem quemdam, super metis agrorum et terrarum suarum terminis, contentio sæpe fuisset, et acciderit aliquando vi tempestatis ingruente culturam monachorum, damno eorundem non modico, nocte quadam funditus destructam et demolitam fuisse, cultura militis ei contermina et quasi continua indemni penitus et illæsa manente, miles ea occasione in monachos insolenter invectus, monachorum injuriam in agri illius possessione divinitus declaratam publice proclamavit. Abbas autem, hoc audito, satis facete respondit, nequaquam ita esse, sed plures habuisse militem amicos in illo equitatu quam monasterium, monachos e contra
91. hostes ibidem plures et inimicos, verius esse demonstravit.

Sensible and visible appearance of the son of an incubus demon.

In hac[3] eadem provincia de Pembroch, tertio in loco, domo videlicet Eliodori de Stakepole, circa eadem fere tempora, non solum sensibiliter sed et visibiliter, sub juvenis rufi specie, qui et Simonem se vocabat, quidam apparuit. Hic primo claves a clavigero præripiens, se ad seneschaliam domus regendam impudenter ingessit. Eam tamen tam provide, ut videbatur, tamque[4] prudenter administrabat, ut omnia sub ejus manibus abundare, nullusque defectus in domo fieri posse videretur. Quicquid autem herus et hera ad quotidianos usus vel esus aut præmeditati fuerant, aut secreto[5] prælocuti, id ipse non præmonitus, non invitatus, mirabili explebat agilitate, dicens, "Id fieri "vultis, hoc vobis fiet." Thesauros autem ipsorum, et

---

[1] *unquam*] R. B. Hc., &c.; nunquam, D.

[2] This section, *Unde et . . . . . demonstravit*, in D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[3] This section, *In hac . . . professa*, in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] *tamque*] Hc. Rd., Camden; tam, D.

[5] *secreto*] D., &c. Not in Hc.

secretas repositiones omnes[1] sciebat, eisque aliquoties exprobrabat. Nam quoties avare aliquid aut parce nimis[2] agi volebant, dicebat; "Ut quid acervum illum "aut illum[3] auri vel argenti tangere timetis et "expendere? Brevissimi nempe dies vestri sunt: "pecuniaque, quam tantopere congeritis, nunquam "vobis erit ad usus aliquos proventura." Rusticis autem, ministrisque domus mercenariis,[4] pretiosiora libentius cibaria atque pocula ministrabat, dicens ea illis præcipue cum abundantia largiri debere, quorum erant laboriosis operibus acquisita. Quicquid autem agi statuerat, quanquam id domino vel dominæ displiceret, quoniam secreta eorum, ut diximus, omnia noverat, et quoniam cuncta fere tam expedite tamque mature gerebat, sine omni contradictione complebat. Ecclesiam autem[5] nunquam adibat, nec verbum aliquod catholicum unquam pronunciabat. In domo nocte non jacebat, sed mane quotidie ad obsequia promptus astabat. Observatus tandem a familia domus cum[6] forte fuisset, circa molendinum et aquæ stagnum nocturna ejusdem inventa est conversatio. Quo comperto, statim in crastino coram domino domus constitutus et domina, claves, quas quadraginta diebus vel amplius gestaverat, eis licentiam accipiendo porrexit. Interrogatus autem in discessu et obtestatus quisnam esset, respondit, se in uxore rustici cujusdam de parochia eadem sub specie mariti ab incubo spiritu fuisse 91 b.
progenitum, nominans virum ac vitricum[7] suum jam defunctum, et matrem suam[8] adhuc susperstitem. Cujus inquisita diligentius rei certitudine, sic in veritate fuisse palam mulier est professa.

---

[1] *omnes*] D. Rd. Not in Hc., Camden.

[2] *nimis*] D., &c. Not in Hc.

[3] *aut illum*] D. Not in Hc. Rd., Camden.

[4] *mercenariis*] D., &c.; et mercenariis, Hc.

[5] *autem*] D., &c. Not in Hc.

[6] *cum*] D., &c.; ubi, Hc.

[7] *vitricum*] Rd., Camden; victricum, Hc. D.

[8] *suam*] D., &c. Not in Hc.

A similar instance in Denmark.

Similis[1] hujus in Dacia nostris diebus casus accidit. Archiepiscopo namque clericus quidam ignotus adhæsit, qui sub obtentu obsequii, quia diligens et discretus esse videbatur, literarum etiam et historiarum omnium promptissimam habebat notitiam atque memoriam, magnam cum ipso familiaritatem in brevi contraxit. Quadam autem die, cum narraret archiepiscopo de historiis antiquis et ignotis rerum eventibus, unde ipsum libenter et frequenter audiebat, accidit ut de tempore incarnationis Dominicæ loqueretur; qui et inter alia et hoc subjunxit; "Antequam Christus car-"nem sumpsisset, magnam habebant dæmones in genus "humanum potestatem; sed in adventu ipsius valde "diminuta fuerat eorum potestas; adeo quidem ut a "facie ipsius undique diffugerint et dissipaverint.[2] "Alii namque in mare se præcipitaverunt; alii in "concavitates arborum, et rimas petrarum; et ego "ipse in fontem quemdam insilii." Quo dicto, quasi verecundans erubuit, et surgens statim exivit. Archiepiscopus autem, et qui cum eo fuerant, vehementer admirantes, cœperunt de verbo illo ad invicem inquirere, et plurima conjecturare.[3] Et cum moram aliquantam ille fecisset, putabatur enim statim reversurus, præcepit archiepiscopus cuidam suorum illum vocare. Ipse vero, vocatus et quæsitus undique, nusquam comparuit. Nec longe post duo clerici, quos archiepiscopus Romam miserat, reversi sunt. Quibus cum archiepiscopus et sui rem gestam et eventum illum retulisset, cœperunt illi inquirere diem eventus illius et horam. Quod cum audissent, dixerunt quod eodem die et hora eadem obviaverat eis in Alpibus, dicens se propter negotia domini sui, scilicet archiepiscopi, nuper emersa, ad curiam Romanam fuisse transmissum. Sic-

[1] This section, *Similis . . . delusisse,* in D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

[2] *dissipaverint*] D. Rd.; disparuerint, Camden.

[3] *conjecturare*] D. Rd.; conjectare, Camden.

que compertum est dæmonem ipsos in humano corpore delusisse.

De falconibus quoque partium istarum egregiis et generosis, qui gravissimam in aves tam fluviales quam campestres tyrannidem exercent, prætereundum non putavi. Unde et Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, cum in partibus istis iter in Hiberniam parando moram aliquamdiu faceret, et avium aliquando volatu delectari voluisset, "falconem[1] nobilem in saxo quodam sedentem cum "forte conspiceret, eundem lateraliter[2] ambiendo, accipitrem "Norwagiensem generosum et grandem quem gestabat a[3] "læva projecit. Falco vero, quanquam in primis tardior, ad "alta tamen vix subvectus, iraque[4] vindice vice versa de "præda prædo jam effectus, a summis impetuosius ad ima "descendens, quadrati pectoris ictu vehementi, præpositaque "talorum armatura, talionem reddens, ad pedes regios accipi-"trem confodiendo prostravit. Unde et ab hac hora singulis "rex annis, circa nidificationis tempora, propter falcones "terræ illius qui marinis in rupibus excluduntur, mittere "consuevit. Nec in terra sua nobiliores illis aut præstan-"tiores invenit." Sed hæc hactenus: ad viam de cetero revertamur.

Falcons of these parts.

92.

Henry II. and his Norway hawk.

[Cap. XIII.]

De transitu per Kamros et Neugol,[5] cum notabilibus suis.

Iter igitur ab Haverfordia versus Meneviam, quasi miliaribus duodecim inde distantem, aggredientes, primo per Kamros; ubi pro juvenis egregii, Giraldi scilicet filii Guillelmi nece, multorum cædibus cruen-

Progress from Haverford to St. David's.

---

[1] *falconem, &c.*] This from *Exp. Hib.* (vol. v. 274). Henry II. was here, on his way to Ireland, in October 1171.

[2] *lateraliter*] B. Hc. D., &c., and F. by alteration; letaliter, R., and F. originally.

[3] *a*] D. Not in R. B. Hc. Rd., &c.

[4] *iraque*] R. B. Hc. Rd., &c.; ira, D.

[5] *Neugol*] D.; Niwegal, R. B. And so in other cases. See *supra*, 10, n. 2; 86, n. 6.

tam[1] nimis et gravem, tempore Stephani regis, propinqui et necessarii sui, quanquam minus in hoc necessarii, vindictam in Rosenses exercuerant; deinde per sabulum de Neugol transivimus; ubi et ea tempestate qua prædictus Anglorum rex Henricus secundus in Hiberniæ finibus hyemavit, necnon et aliis fere cunctis partium illarum portubus[2] ab occidente marinis, res contigit non indigna memoratu. "Ex nimia"[3] nimirum "præter solitum procellæ vehementia, sabulosis "australis Kambriæ litoribus solo tenus sabulo nudatis, lon- "gis operta retro seculis terræ facies apparuit; arborumque "in ipsum mare stipites stantium undique præcisarum, ictus- "que securium tanquam hesterni, terra quoque nigerrima, "lignaque truncorum ebeno simillima; mirandis[4] rerum mu- "tationibus, ut[5] olim navium via nunc navibus invia, non[6] "litus jam sed lucus esse videretur, aut forte a diluvii tem- "pore, aut potius longo[7] post, antiquitus tamen tam præcisus, "quam maris violentia, semper excrescentis et terram am- "plius eluentis, paulatim absumptus et absorptus."

Denudation of an ancient forest, in the stormy winter of 1171–2.

92 b.

Contigit etiam inaudita tempestatis ejusdem rabie congros, aliosque marinos pisces perplurimos, trans rupes maris altissimas vi ventorum intra dumeta projectos a multis reperiri. Apud Meneviam igitur a loci ejusdem antistite Petro, viro videlicet personali et liberali, qui nobis individuus hactenus in via comes extiterat, decenter exhibiti pernoctavimus.

Explicit[8] *Liber primus.*

---

[1] *cruentam*] R. B. Hc., &c.; cruentatam, D.

[2] *portubus*] R. B. Hc., &c.; partibus, D.

[3] *Ex nimia, &c.*] This from *Expug. Hibern.* (vol. v. 284).

[4] *mirandis*] R. B. Hc., &c., *Exp. Hib.*; mirandisque, D.

[5] *ut*] R. B. Hc., *Exp. Hib.*; quod ubi, D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[6] *non*] R. B. Hc., &c., *Exp. Hib.*; nec, D.

[7] *longo*] longe, *Exp. Hib.*

[8] *Explicit, &c.*] B. Hc. D. Rd. Not in R. F.

INCIPIT[1] SECUNDUS.

Quoniam igitur caput est Kambriæ Menevia, et urbs olim metropolitana, quanquam hodie plus nominis habens quam ominis, antiquæ tamen et authenticæ matris nostræ tanquam exsequias plangere, et funus prosequi lamentabile, cineresque semisepultæ lacrimosis deplorare singultibus non abstinui. Qualiter huc igitur, et unde,[2] et a quo tempore pallium allatum, et qualiter ablatum,[3] quot palliis induti antistites, et quot spoliati, eorumque nomina, usque ad hæc tempora nostra paucis absolvam.

[Cap. I.]

De sede Menevensi, cum notabilibus suis.

Sicut Britannicæ referunt historiæ, apud urbem Legionum, in curia illa magna quam prætaxavimus, beatus Dubricius, loci ejusdem tunc temporis archiepiscopus, David, qui regis Arthuri ut dicitur avunculus extiterat, propter ætatis defectum, et quoniam contemplationi potius indulgere volebat,[4] cessit honorem: et ex tunc, procurante David, usque Menevian sedis facta est translatio: quanquam tamen prior ille

Geoffrey, ix. 15, *supra*, 56.

Primacy transferred by David

---

[1] *Incipit, &c.*] B. Hc. D. Not in R. F. In Hc. and D. it forms one rubric with the "Explicit" *supra* of Lib. I. Rd. has instead, "Incipit Præfatio Secundi Libri."

[2] *unde*] Hc. D., &c., and F. by alteration; unum, R. B., and F. originally.

[3] *ablatum*] Hc. D., &c.; suballatum, R. B.

[4] *volebat*] D., &c.; voluerat, R. B. Hc.

from Caerleon to St. David's.

locus, sicut in priori Libro descripsimus, longe metro-
politanæ sedi plus congruerit.[1] Hic etenim angulus
est supra Hibernicum mare remotissimus: terra saxosa,
93. sterilis, et infecunda; nec silvis vestita, nec fluminibus
distincta, nec pratis ornata; ventis solum et procellis
semper exposita; inter hostiles hodie populos, hinc
Flandrensem, inde Kambrensem, frequenter attrita. Ex
industria namque viri sancti talia sibi delegerunt
habitacula, ut populares strepitus subterfugiendo, vi-
tamque eremiticam longe pastorali præferendo, parti
liberius quæ non auferetur indulgerent. Fuerat autem
David[2] sanctitate conspicuus et religione, sicut de vita
ipsius testatur liber conscriptus. Inter omnia vero
quæ de ipso leguntur miracula, tria mihi videntur
admiratione dignissima: de origine videlicet ipsius et
conceptione; et triginta annis ante ortum præelectione;
et quod omnibus præstat, de terra quæ apud Brevi,
vidente populo et admirante, sub pedibus prædicantis
in collem excrevit.

David's sanctity; miracles.

Succession of archbishops.

Sederunt autem a tempore David,[2] successivis tem-
porum curriculis, archiepiscopi ibidem viginti quinque,[3]
quorum hæc nomina: David,[4] Eliud qui et Theliau
vocatur, Keneu, Morwal, Haernueu, Elwaid, Gurnueu,
Leudiwit, Gorwiust, Gogaun, Cledauc, Aman, Eludged,
Elduven, Elave, Mailswid, Sadurnueu, Catulus, Sul-
haithuai, Novis, Sadurnueu, Doithwal, Asser, Archuail,
Sampson.

---

[1] *congruerit*] Hc. D., &c.; congruit, R. B.

[2] *David*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *quinque*] D. Rd., Camden; tres, R. B. Hc. Compare *Descr. Kamb.*, i. 4 (*infra*); and the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 151).

[4] *David, &c.*] I give this list as in D. The names of the twenty-three archbishops, in R. B. Hc., are as follows, with no variations worth noticing: "David, Kenauc, Eliud, " Keneri, Morwal, Haernueu, El- " wid, Gurneu, Lhendivord, Gor- " wiust, Gugaun, Cledauc, Amman, " Eluoed, Ethelemun, Elauc, Mais- " coit, Sadernueu, Nortwal, Aser, " Artwail, Idwalauri, Sampson." See Professor Stubbs' *Episcopal Succession*, 154.

Tempore[1] Sampsonis hujus, pallium in hunc modum est translatum. Ingruente per Kambriam, isto præsidente, peste quadam, qua catervatim plebs occubuit, quam flavam pestem vocabant, quam et physici ictericiam dicunt passionem, præsul, quanquam sanctus et ad mortem intrepidus, tamen ad suorum instantiam navem scandens, flante Circio, cum suis indemnem in Armorica Britannia se suscepit: ubi et vacante tunc forte sede Dolensi, statim ibidem in episcopum est assumptus. Unde contigit ut ob pallii gratiam, quod Sampson secum hinc illuc attulerat, succedentes ibi episcopi usque ad nostra hæc fere tempora, quibus prævalente Turonorum archipræsule adventitia dignitas evanuit, pallia semper obtinuerunt. Nostri vero vel propter ignaviam vel paupertatem, aut potius[2] propter Anglorum adventum in insulam, et Saxonicam interpositam hostilitatem, ea occasione continue pristina caruerunt dignitate. Semper tamen usque ad plenam, quæ per Anglorum regem Henricum primum facta est, Kambriæ subactionem, episcopi Gualliæ a Menevensi antistite sunt consecrati;[3] et ipse similiter ab aliis[4] tanquam suffraganeis est consecratus;[5] nulla penitus alii ecclesiæ facta professione vel subjectione.

The pall removed by Sampson to Dol in Britanny.

93 b.

Sederunt autem a Sampsonis ibidem tempore, usque ad prædicti Henrici primi tempora, novemdecim,[6] quo-

Bishops of St. David's after Sampson.

---

[1] *Tempore*] D., Camden; Tempore autem, R. B. Hc. Rd. This section is repeated in the *De Jure*, *&c.* (vol. iii. 151).

[2] *aut potius . . hostilitatem*] D. Rd., Camden, *De Jure*. Not in R. B. Hc.

[3] *sunt consecrati*] R. B. Hc., &c., and *De Jure*; munus consecrationis obtinuisse feruntur, D.

[4] *aliis*] R. B. Hc., &c., and *De Jure*; illis, D.

[5] *est consecratus*] R. B. Hc., &c., and *De Jure*; consecrari solet, D.

[6] *novemdecim . . Wilfre*] D. In R. B. Hc., with scarcely any variation in the spelling of the names, we have this: "episcopi xxi., quorum "hæc nomina; Ruelm, Retherch, "Elgiun, Morbiu, Lunuerd, Nergu, "Sulhidir, Eneuris, Morgeneu, Na-"than, Johannes, Augustus, Mor-"genueth, Blethuth, Eruin, Trame-"rin, Joseph, Blethuth, Sulgen, "Abraham, Wilfridus." Compare *Descr. Kamb.*, i. 4 (*infra*), and the *De Jure* (vol. iii. 151). See Professor Stubbs' *Episc. Success.*, 155.

rum hæc nomina; Kuielm, Retherth, Eluin, Lunuerc, Nergu, Sulidir, Eneuris, Morgeneu; qui primus inter episcopos Meneviæ carnes comedit, et ibidem a piratis interfectus est; unde et eadem nocte quam duxit extremam apparuit cuidam episcopo in Hibernia, ostendens vulnera sua et dicens, "Quia carnes comedi, caro "factus sum;" Nathan, Iewan, hic Iewan una sola nocte vixit episcopus, Arwistel, Morgenennith, Eruin, Tramerin, Joseth, Bleidhud, Sulghein, Abraham, Wilfre. Post hos vero, subacta jam Wallia, usque hodie tres: tempore regis Henrici primi Bernardus, tempore[1] regis Stephani David secundus, tempore regis Henrici secundi Petrus Cluniacensis monachus. Qui tres, regio urgente mandato, Cantuariæ[2] consecrationem susceperunt.[3] Sicut et[4] quartus, his succedaneus tempore regis Johannis, nomine Gaufredus, Lanthoniensis prior et canonicus, per operam Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi in eadem sede promotus, et ab eodem consecratus.

Baldwin the first archbishop of Canterbury to enter Wales.

De nullo vero Cantuariensi antistite legitur, vel post subjectionem[5] istam vel ante, Kambriæ fines intrasse, præter hunc solum; qui legationis hujus occasione, et salutiferæ crucis obsequio, terram tam[6] hispidam, tam inaccessibilem et remotam laudabili devotione circuivit,

---

[1] *tempore . . secundus*] Omitted, by mistake, in R. B.; more is omitted in Rd. Hc. has "vero" after *tempore.*

Bernard was consecrated Sept. 19, 1115, and died in 1147; David, consecrated Dec. 19, 1148, died May 8, 1176; Peter, consecrated Nov. 7, 1176, died July 16, 1198.

[2] *Cantuariæ*] R. B. Hc., &c.; a Cantuariensi, D. Either reading involves a mis-statement. David and Peter were consecrated at Canterbury, but Bernard at Westminster. Bernard and David were consecrated by archbishops of Canterbury; but the officiating bishop at Peter's consecration was Gilbert Foliot, bishop of London.

[3] *susceperunt*] R. B. Hc., &c.; acceperunt, D.

[4] *Sicut et . . consecratus*] D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc. Geoffrey was consecrated Dec. 7, 1203, and died in 1214.

[5] *subjectionem*] Hc. D., &c.; subactionem, R. B.

[6] *tam*] B. Hc. D., &c. Not in R. F.

et in[1] singulis cathedralibus ecclesiis, tanquam[2] investituræ cujusdam signum, missam celebravit.

Adeo autem, ante finales hos dies et tempora novissima, Menevensis ecclesia Cantuariensem nullo subjectionis vinculo respiciebat, ut etiam in *Anglicana Historia*, Beda[3] referente, legatur; Augustinum Anglorum episcopum, post conversionem regis Æthelfridi et Anglorum populi, episcopos Gualliæ in confinio Occidentalium Saxonum et Britonum, tanquam sedis apostolicæ legatus,[4] convocasse. Et cum septem episcopi venissent, quoniam Augustinus in sella sedens venientibus Romano fastu non assurrexit, eum superbiæ notantes, sumpto quidem a viro quodam anachorita de gente sua sanctissimo experimenti illius documento, tam ipsum quam ejus statuta statim reversi spreverunt; nec ipsum pro archiepiscopo se habituros publice proclamabant; testantes ad invicem quia "Si nunc nobis assurgere "noluit, quanto magis, si ei subdi cœperimus, jam nos "pro nihilo contemnet?"

Until just latterly, the church of St. David's in no way subject to Canterbury. 94.

Quod[5] autem septem tunc erant episcopi Britonum, cum hodie non nisi quatuor, hæc ratio assignari potest; quia plures tunc forte fuerant in hoc Gualliæ spatio, quam nunc sunt, sedes cathedrales; vel potius, se tunc ampliori Guallia fine, quia[6] usque ad Sabrinæ fluvium, dilatabat.

Inter tot[7] igitur episcopos tanto privatos honore, solus Bernardus ille, primus Francorum apud Meneviam episcopus, ecclesiæ suæ jura publice protestans, post multas sumptuosas et graves ad curiam Romanam

Bishop Bernard.

---

[1] *et in . . . celebravit*] R. B. D., &c. Not in Hc.

[2] *tanquam*] D. Rd., Camden; tanquam in, R. B.

[3] *Hist. Eccl.*, ii. 2, in brief substance only.

[4] *legatus*] R. B. Hc. D. Rd.; legatum, Camden.

[5] *Quod*] Hc. D., &c.; Idem, R. B., and F. originally, but altered to "ibidem."

[6] *quia . . fluvium*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[7] *Inter tot, &c.*] This section and the following one are repeated in the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 152), not quite word for word.

vexationes, demum nisi[1] professionis factæ, et subjectionis exhibitæ Cantuariensi ecclesiæ veri aut falsi testes, coram Eugenio papa Meldis in Francia palam prodiissent, non inefficaciter reclamasset. Tribus igitur fultus auxiliis, tam formidabiles tantæ causæ conflictus confidenter est aggressus; regis videlicet Henrici primi familiaritate subnixus plurima et favore, tempore pacifico gaudens, et pacis sequela sufficienti.[2] Adeo quidem, ex nimiæ securitatis audacia, debito de jure [confidebat][3] quandoque [et][3] præsumpsit, ut et[4] crucem interdum sibi præferri per Kambriæ fines attemptasset.

Bernardus iste, quanquam in aliquo commendabilis, pompositatis tamen et ambitionis vitio trans modestiam notabilis fuerat. Quoniam enimvero de curia exierat,
94 b. et plantatio regis extiterat, ad Anglicanas opulentias per translationem semper anhelans, quo morbo laborant [fere][5] singuli ab Angliæ finibus hic intrusi, terras ecclesiæ suæ plurimas infructuose penitus et inutiliter alienavit. Alias vero tam improvide et tam indiscrete divisit, ut ubi militaribus officiis decem terræ carucatas, viginti, vel[6] triginta amplissima manu largiretur, ibi divinis sanctique David obsequiis et canonicis, ab ipso misere nimis et infeliciter institutis, vix unam, vix duas vel tres impertiret.

---

[1] *nisi . . prodiissent*] D. Rd., *De Jure;* nisi factæ professionis falsi testes in Remensi concilio palam prodiissent, R. B. Hc. Camden's text is compounded from these two readings. See the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 180), where is a letter of pope Eugenius on the subject to archbishop Theobald, dated "Mel-"dis." At p. 168 of the *De Jure,* Giraldus states that Bernard moved the question before pope Eugenius, "quasi xxvii. suæ promotionis an-"no," which would be in 1141 or 1142; but Eugenius did not become pope until February 27, 1145. See also *De Invectionibus* (vol. iii. 50–53).

[2] *sufficienti*] D. Rd.; sufficientia, R. B. Hc., Camden, *De Jure.*

[3] *confidebat* and *et*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c., or *De Jure.*

[4] *et*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[5] *fere*] Not in R. B. Hc. D. In Rd., Camden, *De Jure.*

[6] *viginti vel*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

De duabus[1] autem sedibus istis de quibus facta est mentio, Cantuariensi videlicet et Menevensi, quod mihi videtur juxta moderna tempora paucis edisseram. Illinc hodie regum favor, opum affluentia, suffraganeorum antistitum opulenta numerositas, literatorum et juris-peritorum copia multa; hinc autem omnium istorum defectus, et jus remotum. Quapropter, nisi per regnorum forte mutationes, rerumque vicissitudines magnas, quæ variis et inopinatis eventibus accidere solent, difficilis erit [antiqui juris][2] recuperatio. Probable future of St. David's in regard to Canterbury.

Dicitur autem locus ubi ecclesia Menevensis sita est, et in honore beati Andreæ apostoli primo fundata, Vallis Rosina. Quæ tamen marmorea potius quam vel[3] rosea vel rosina dici posset; quoniam rosis minime, marmore vero plurimum abundat. Name of the site of St. David's.

Labitur hic autem Aluni fluvius, aqua turbida et infecunda, cœmiterium lateraliter a borea disterminans, sub lapide Lechlavar marmoreo pedibus transeuntium perpolito; de cujus quantitate, qualitate, et nominis ratione, in *Vaticinali Historia* disseruimus. Ubi rex Anglorum Henricus secundus, ab Hibernia rediens, per eundem lapidem transeundo devote Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David ecclesiam intrasse describitur, in hunc modum.[4] The river Alan, and the stone Lechlavar, vol. v. 287.

" Relictis ergo demum custodibus; apud Dubliniam videlicet
" Hugone de Lacy, cui jam Midiam in feodum donaverat,
" cum militibus viginti, Stephanide quoque et Mauricio Gi-
" raldide, cum aliis viginti; Guaterfordiæ vero Humfredo 95.
" Bohonensi, Roberto filio Bernardi, et Hugone de Gundevilla,
" cum militibus quadraginta; Gueiseforddiæ Guillelmo Alde-
" lini[5] filio, et Philippo de Breusa, cum viginti; Paschali luce

[1] *De duabus, &c.*] This section repeated in the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 103).

[2] *antiqui juris*] Rd., Camden, *De Jure.* Not in R. B. He. D.

[3] *vel*] R. B. He., &c. Not in D.

[4] *in hunc modum*] This, and the three sections which follow, repeated here from *Expug. Hibern.*, i. 38 (vol. v. 286), are in D. Rd., Camden; but not in R. B. He.

[5] *Aldelini*] It is quite uncertain, in D., whether this or Aldelmi be the reading intended. I write "Al-" delini" because such is certainly the reading of the early and best

"secunda, sole recens orto, apud Gueiscfordiam, exteriore "scilicet portus limbo, navem scandens, circio flante, pro-"spero navigio in portu Menevensi circa meridiem rex appli-"cuit. Accedens itaque Meneviam devote, peregrinantium "more, pedes baculoque suffultus, canonicorum ecclesiæ "processionem, ipsum debita reverentia et honore suscipien-"tium, apud albam portam obviam invenit.

Henry II. and the abusive Welsh-woman. "Accidit autem ut procedente seriatim processione, et rite "præcedente, mulier Kambrica ad pedes regis se subito "provolveret; quæ et, querimonia de loci illius episcopo facta, "et regi per interpretis linguam exposita, quoniam jus suum "incontinenti non est assecuta, voce altisona et proterva, cum "manuum quoque complosione non modica, cœpit coram "omnibus exclamando ingeminare, 'Vindica nos hodie, "'Lechlavar; vindica genus et gentem de homine hoc.' Cum-"que ab illis qui Britannicam linguam noverant inhiberetur "et expelleretur, ipsa quoque tanto fortius et acrius in hunc "modum vociferabat; alludens illi fictitio vulgari, nec vero "Merlini proverbio, quo dici solebat, Angliæ regem Hiberniæ "triumphatorem, ab homine cum rubra manu in Hibernia "vulneratum, per Meneviam redeundo super Lechlavar mori-"turum. Erat autem hoc nomen lapidis, qui trans flumen "Aluni, quod cœmiterium a boreali ecclesiæ parte præter-"fluendo disterminat, jacens, [quo][1] vice pontis fungebatur. "Erat autem lapis hic marmoreus et pulcher, transeuntium "pedibus superficie tenus perpolitus, decem pedes in longum "et sex in latum præferens,. et unius pedis spissitudinem ha-"bens. Sonat autem Lechlavar Britannica lingua *Lapis* "*loquax*. Erat enim de lapide hoc ab antiquo vulgata relatio,
95 b. "quod cum hominis cadaver super illum aliquando deferretur, "eadem hora in sermonem erumpens ipso conatu crepuit "medius, fissuram[2] adhuc per medium prætendens. Unde "et de barbarica superstitione illi antiquitus exhibita, usque "in hodiernum quoque per ipsum mortuorum corpora non "efferuntur.

"Accedens igitur ad lapidem rex, quia forte illius vaticinii "mentionem audierat, ad pedem lapidis paulisper gradum "sistens, et eundem acriter intuens, incunctante tamen passu "audacter pertransiit, Verso itaque vultu ad lapidem re-"spiciens, in vatem invectus, verbum hoc indignanter emisit;

---

manuscripts of the *Expugnatio*. See vol. v. 219, n. 2. After *Aldelini filio*, the *Exp. Hib.* has, "Philippo "de Hastinges;" and it assigns to the three 30 milites.

[1] *quo*] Not in Rd., Camden, *Exp. Hib.* In D.

[2] *fissuram*] Rd., Camden, *Exp. Hib.*; fixuram, D.

" 'Merlino mendaci quis de cetero fidem habeat?' " Lecator[1] autem ibi eum aliis astans, et rei eventum observans, ut vatis injuriam vindicaret, sic alta voce subjecit; 'Tu vero non es rex ille, qui Hiberniam conquirere 'debet; nec de te Merlinus mentionem fecit.' " Et sic " rex intrans ecclesiam, in Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David " honore fundatam, fusis devote orationibus, et missa solemni- " ter audita, a capellano quodam quem solum inter tot loci " illius presbyteros ea hora jejunum tanquam ad hoc divina " reservaverat providentia, cœna ibidem sumpta, statim ad " castrum Haverfordiæ, quasi per miliaria duodecim abinde " distans, transmigravit."

Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod nostris temporibus,[2] præsidente videlicet David secundo, tam fluvium hunc vino manare, quam fontem quem[3] Pistildewi, id est, *Fistulam David* vocant, quia quasi per fistulam quamdam in cœmiterium ab oriente fons dilabitur, lac stillare constat aliquoties esse compertum.[4] The Alan flowing with wine; and St. David's spring with milk.

Aves quoque loci istius, quæ monedulæ dicuntur, ex longo pacis usu a clericis ecclesiæ eis exhibitæ, adeo quasi mansuetas et domesticas invenies, ut homines nigris indutos non refugiant. The tame jackdaws.

Ab hinc[5] autem sereno tempore montes Hiberniæ prospici possunt; mari Hibernico tantum uno contractiore transnavigabili die interjacente. Unde et Guillelmus, Guillelmi regis bastardi[6] filius, et Normannorum in Anglia rex secundus, qui[7] et rex Rufus est agnominatus, Kambriam suo in tempore animose penetrans et circumdans, cum a rupibus istis Hiberniam forte prospiceret, dixisse memoratur; " Ad terram istam Ireland to be seen from hence. William Rufus's intention 96. to invade Ireland.

---

[1] *Lecator . . . mentionem fecit*] This clause is not in the *Exp. Hib.*, except in one MS. of little or no authority. See vol. v. 288, n. 3.

[2] *temporibus*] R. B. D.; diebus, Hc. Rd., Camden.

[3] *quem*] R. B. Hc., &c.; qui, D.

[4] *constat aliquoties esse compertum*] R. B. Hc., &c.; aliquoties est compertum, D.

[5] *Ab hinc, &c.*] This section is repeated in the *De Instr. Princ.*, p. 144.

[6] *regis bastardi*] D. Rd., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

[7] *qui et . . agnominatus*] D. Rd., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

" expugnandam, ex navibus regni mei huc convocatis, " pontem adhuc faciam." Quo verbo ad Murchardum tunc Lageniæ principem in Hiberniam forte translato,[1] cum aliquamdiu propensius inde cogitasset, fertur respondisse; "Numquid tantæ comminationis verbo rex " ille 'Si Deo placuerit' adjecit?" Audito vero quod nullam prorsus Dei mentionem in hoc suo sermone rex fecisset, tanquam prognostico gaudens certissimo, " Quoniam," inquit, "homo iste de humana tantum " confidit potentia, non[2] divina, ejus adventum non " formido."

[Cap. II.]

De transitu per Kemmeis, et monasterium Sancti Dogmaelis, cum notabilibus suis.

Progress to St. Dogmael's abbey, and Cardigan.

Cum igitur archiepiscopus in ecclesia Sancti David, et ara principali, missam summo diluculo celebrasset, relicto ibidem Menevensi archidiacono prætaxato, eique ad populum officio sermonis injuncto, obviam Reso principi per Kemmeis versus Aberteivi properavit.

Duo vero quæ in provincia de Kemmeis, alterum his nostris diebus, alterum parum ante contigerant, mihi non reticenda[3] succurrunt.

The man worried to death by toads.

Hoc itaque nostro tempore contigit [scilicet][4] juvenem quemdam, de finibus his oriundum, tantam a bufonibus in ægritudinis lecto persecutionem fuisse perpessum, ut omnes totius provinciæ tanquam ex condicto in ipsum concurrerent. Et cum a custodibus et amicis ipsius interfecti fuissent infiniti, semper tamen undique confluentes tanquam Hydræ capita sine

[1] *translato*] R. B. Hc., &c.; delato, D.

[2] *non*] R. B. Hc., &c.; et non, D.

[3] *non reticenda*] Hc. D., &c.; non recitanda, B., and R. originally, but *non* altered to "nunc" in margin by a later hand; nunc recitanda, F.

[4] *scilicet*] Not in R. B. Hc., &c. In D.

numero succreverunt. Tandem vero, lassatis universis tam necessariis quam extraneis, in arbore quadam excelsa, mutilata frondibus et levigata, in loculo quodam est sublimatus. Nec ibi venenosis tutus ab hostibus; immo certatim in arborem rependo petitus, et usque ad ossa consumptus interiit. Nomen vero juvenis fuerat Seisillus Eskeirhir, id est, Tibia longa.

Similem quoque legitur, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam injusto, murium majorum, qui vulgariter *Rati* dicuntur, in virum quemdam olim factam persecutionem. Another, by rats. 96 b.

In eadem[1] provincia, tempore regis Henrici primi, contigit ut vir quidam locuples, a boreali montium de Presseleu[2] latere mansionem habens, tribus noctibus continue in somnis moneretur, quatinus in fonte proximo, qui Sancti Bernaci fons dicebatur, lapidi qui scaturigini fontis supereminebat manum submittens, aureum inde torquem extraheret. Qui die tertio monitis obtemperans, vipereo ibidem morsu letalem in digito læsionem suscepit. A three-nights dream, and its result.

Sed quoniam multos, e diverso, thesauros per somnia constat inventos fuisse, mihi quidem verisimile videtur, sicut rumoribus sic et somniis credi oportere et non oportere locum communem esse.

Quod autem[3] in principali de Kemmeis castro, scilicet apud Nanhever,[4] nostro notabile contigit ævo, hic non prætereo. Resus filius Griphini, instinctu Griphini filii sui viri versipellis et versuti, viro nobili Willelmo filio Martini genero suo, contra sacramenta plurima eidem super indemnitate et securitate sua sibi Prince Rhys, and his sons, and Nevern castle.

---

1 *In eadem, &c.*] This section and the next, *Sed . . . communem esse*, are repeated from *Exp. Hib.* (vol. v. 296), but not in the same words.

2 *Presseleu*] D.; Presseli, R. B. and *Exp. Hib.*

3 *Quod autem, &c.*] This section and the next, *Illud . . includi*, are in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

4 *Nanhever*] D.; Lanever, Hc.; Llanhever, Rd. And so again, a few lines below. It is called "Ny-"ver" in *Brut*, "Newer" in *Annal. Camb.* The existing village,—it was once a place of far more importance,—is now Nefern, or Nevern; but the remnant of the castle is called Llanhyver castle.

tanquam filio perpetuo[1] conservanda pluries super reliquias pretiosissimas corporaliter præstita, castrum[2] suum de Nanhever ei[3] viribus armatis et obsidione sustulit,[3] et Griphino filio suo tradidit; contra sacramentum etiam de castro eodem ei nominatim non tradendo specialiter datum. Sed quoniam

Ov. I. Am. x. 48.

"Non habet eventus sordida præda bonos,"

Rom. xii. 19.

Dominus, qui per prophetam suum clamat, "Mihi vin-"dictam, et ego retribuam," in brevi post machinatori sceleris et auctori Griphino munitionem auferri, hominique sub sole quem magis exosum habebat, Mailgoni scilicet fratri suo, tradi fecit. Resus[4] quoque, circa biennium post, ibidem ubi filiam suam immo filias duas et nepotes exheredare curavit, exquisito divinitus vindictæ modo, in bellico conflictu a filiis est captus, et in eodem castro incarceratus. Et sic ubi turpitudinem majorem et enormiorem excessum perpetravit,
97. ibi dedecus e contra majus, et ampliorem suscipere meruit confusionem.

Torque of St. Cynawg, *supra*, 25.

Illud et hic notabile censui, quod eodem quo istud ei accidit tempore, torquem Sancti Kanauci de Brecheniauc apud Dinevur captam tenebat et inclusam. Per quod et ipse ultione divina capi meruit et includi.

Sermon at St. Dogmael's, and on the way to Cardigan.

Apud cœnobium itaque Sancti Dogmaelis pernoctantes, tam ibi in crastino quam versus Aberteivi, id est, casum Teivi fluminis in mare, ubi[5] a Reso principe ea nocte decenter exhibiti fuimus, ex latere tamen Kemmeisensi, non procul a ponte, convocato partium illarum populo, et tam Reso quam duobus filiis suis, Mailgone

---

[1] *perpetuo*] D. Rd., Camden; proprio et perpetuo, Hc.

[2] *castrum*] Hc. D.; castellum, Rd., Camden.

[3] *ei . . . sustulit*] D. Rd., Camden; Hc. has no "ei," and "sub-"duxit" instead of "sustulit." The *Brut* says that, in 1191, "The lord "Rhys took the castle of Nyver;" and the *Ann. Camb.* adds, "Die "assumptionis S. Mariæ" (August 15).

[4] *Resus*] Camden; Resum, Hc. D. Rd. This imprisonment of Rhys by his sons was in 1194: *Brut*, *Ann. Camb.*

[5] *ubi*] R. B. Hc., &c.; ibi, D.

scilicet et Griphino, præsentibus, verbo Domini tam ab archiepiscopo quam Menevensi archidiacono persuasorie prolato, ad obsequium crucis multos alleximus. Quorum uno [1] crucesignato, quanquam unico filio et unico matris solatio jam senio confectæ, eundem statim mater intuita, et divinitus ut videbatur inspirata, subjecit; "Gratias tibi, carissime Domine Christe Jhesu, "intimas ago, quod talem mihi filium quem tuo dig- "nareris obsequio parere [2] concessisti."

Fuit et alia ibidem mulier, matrona videlicet de Aberteivi, animo a priore longe dissimili; quæ virum suum, ne ad archiepiscopum iret, neve crucem susciperet, per pallium et zonam firmiter tenens, coram cunctis impudenter retrahebat. Sed eadem, tertia post nocte, terribilem hanc in somnis vocem audivit; "Ser- "vientem meum mihi abstulisti; quamobrem et a te "quoque quod plurimum diligis auferetur." Qua visione viro cum utriusque tam admiratione quam terrore relata, cum iterum obdormisset, filium parvulum, quem secum in toro materna plus dilectione quam diligentia jacentem habebat, non minus infeliciter quam insuaviter oppressit. Et statim vir, diocesano [3] episcopo tam visionem referens quam vindictam, crucem suscepit; uxore favente, ipsaque signum sponte propriis manibus armo virili insuente.[4]

Vengeance on a woman who prevented her husband from taking the cross.

In loco vero prædicationis, juxta caput pontis, tanquam tanti conventus memoriale, locum capellæ in viridi planitie statim plebs devota signavit; ubi vestigia loquendo ad populum archiepiscopus fixerat, altare designantes. Ubi et multa miracula languentium turbis huc undique confluentibus, quæ singula referre longum esset, certum est contigisse.

97 b.

Miracles.

---

[1] *Quorum uno, &c.*] This, and the following section, *Fuit et alia, &c.*, are repeated in the *De Gestis* (vol. i. 77, &c.).

[2] The *De Gestis* has "parare."

[3] *diocesano*] D. Rd., *De Gestis*; a diocesano, R. B. He., Camden.

[4] *insuente*] R. B. He.; inserente, D. Rd., *De Gest.*; irserente vel insuente, Camden.

[Cap. III.]

De fluvio Teivi, et Keirdigan,[1] *et Emelyn, cum notabilibus suis.*

The river Teivi.

Salmon fishery near Cilgerran, at Cenarth.

Salmon leap.

Labitur autem hic fluvius egregius, cui nomen Teivi, præ cunctis Kambriæ fluviis salmone præpingui fecundissimus. Habet et piscariam copiosam juxta Kilgarran,[2] in summitate rupis cujusdam, Sancti Leudoci manibus olim exsculptam, in loco qui dicitur Kenarthmaur,[3] per quam aqua prædicta transcurrens ab alto ut assolet cum strepitu magno ad ima descendit. Ubi et salmones ab imis ad summam rupis concavitatem, quantum hastæ longissimæ est altitudo, saltu mirabili transferuntur, et, nisi piscis proprietas hoc exigeret, miraculoso. Hoc etenim piscium genus saltum appetit ex natura: unde et a saltu Salmo nomen accepit.

Mode of leaping: vol. v. 127.

"Modus autem saliendi et proprietas," sicut in *Hibernica Topographia* descripsimus, "hæc est. Pisces "hujusmodi naturaliter aquæ cursum contra nitentes,—sicut "enim avibus contra flatus, sic et piscibus contra fluctus mos "est eniti,—cum obstaculum inveniunt valde præruptum cau-"dam ad os replicant; interdum etiam, ad majorem saltus "efficaciam, caudam ipsam ore comprimunt; dumque a cir-"culo hujuscemodi se subito resolvunt, cum impetu quodam, "tanquam subita[4] virgæ circulatæ explicatione, se ab imis "ad alta cum intuentium admiratione longe transmittunt."

Church, &c., of St. Llawddog.

Stant autem simul, in angusto scilicet terræ arpento, ecclesia sancti illius, molendinum, cum ponte et piscaria, et pomerium cum horto delectabili.

Beavers in this river.

Habet et aliud fluvius iste sua specialitate notabile. Inter universos namque Kambriæ seu etiam Loegriæ

---

[1] *Keirdigan*] D.; Keredigan, R. B.

[2] *Kilgarran*] D.; Gilkarran, R. B.

[3] *Kenarthmaur*] D.; Kanartmaur, R. B.

[4] *subita*] D. Rd., *Top. Hib.* Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

fluvios, solus hic castores habet. In Albania quoque,[1] ut fertur, fluvio similiter unico habentur, sed rari.

98. *Habits of this animal.*

De hujus autem[2] bestiæ natura, qualiter a silvis ad aquas materiam vehant; quanto artificio ex attracta materia mediis in fluctibus munimenta connectant; quam defensionis artem contra venatores in occidente prætendant, quam in oriente; de caudis[3] quoque pisceis, ut aiunt, potius quam carneis, pauca interserere non inutile reputavi.

Their mode of carrying materials for their dams.

Castores enim, ut castra sibi in fluviis[4] construant, sui generis servis pro rheda utentes, a silvis ad aquas lignea robora miro vecturæ modo contrahunt et conducunt. Quidam enim ex his, naturæ imperio servire parati, ligna ab aliis præcisa ventrique supino imposita[5] quatuor pedibus complectentes, lignoque in ore ex transverso locato dentibus ab aliis hinc inde cohærentibus, retrogradeque[6] trahentibus, non absque intuentium admiratione simul cum oneribus attrahuntur. Simili quoque naturæ artificio, in scrobium purgatione, quas sibi pedibus in terram fodiendo scalpendoque conformant, meloti[7] utuntur. In utroque vero animalium genere servi notabiles inveniuntur, tam degenerante quadam naturæ deformitate, quam abrasa et attrita dorsorum depilatione.

The like in badgers.

Site and

In aliquo vero profundissimo fluvii angulo et paci-

[1] *quoque*] D.; quippe, R. B. Hc., &c.

[2] *hujus autem*] Hc. D.; cujus, R. B. Rd., Camden; hujus enim, *Descr. Kamb.* This account of the beaver, down to "pro pisce vescuntur" (*infra*, 118), is repeated in the *Descr. Kamb.*, i. 5, *infra*. A small portion of it had appeared before in the *Top. Hib.* (vol. v. 58, &c.), where Giraldus promised a much fuller account, when he came to write the Topographies of Wales and Scotland.

[3] *causis*, in R. B., and F. originally, but altered in F. to "caudis."

[4] *fluviis*] Before this Rd. and Camden have "mediis."

[5] *imposita*] R. B. Hc., &c. D. has "supposita" here, but "imposita" in *Descr. Kamb.*

[6] *retrogradeque*] B. Hc. D., &c.; retrograde, R. F.

[7] *meloti*] D. Rd. (and so D. again in *Descr. Kamb.*); melotæ, R. B. Hc. "Melota" is the word used by Giraldus in *Top. Hib.* (vol. v. 58). See Glossary, *infra*.

H 2

plan of their dams. fico, in castrorum constructione tanto artificio ligna connectunt, ut nec aquæ stilla[1] penetrando subintret,[2] nec procellæ vis labefactando concutiat; nec violentiam quamlibet præter humanam, et hanc ferro munitam reformident.

Ex salicum[3] autem ramis in castrorum constructione ligna connectunt; soliisque variis in altum, quantum aqua excrescere solet et ultra, ostiis interius a solio in solium aptatis, machinam distinguunt; ut juxta fluminis incrementa fluctuantes undas, cum voluerint, ab alto despicere valeant: ex salicibus autem, ut per annuos crescendo[4] salicum saltus hispidum exterius silvescat arbustum, tota interius arte latente.

They breathe in water as well as in air. 98 b. Hoc animal in aquis ad libitum perdurat; et sub eisdem, more bufonum, velutique phocæ pilosæ, quæ fluxum maris atque refluxum lenitate pilorum et hispiditate declarant, halitum fovet.

Sub aquis igitur indifferenter et sub divo, tria hæc animalium genera spiritum trahunt. Suntque tibiis curtis, corpore lato, caudis nullis vel quasi mutilatis, et talpis quodammodo sive melotis in corporis compositione[5] conformia.

Their teeth. Notandum etiam quod quatuor hæc solum bestia dentes præfert; oris anteriori parte duos supra, et duos inferius e contra; eisque, latis plurimum et acutis, tanquam dolabris utitur ad secandum.

Their burrows on the banks of the river. Habent autem in proxima castris ripa scrobes subterraneas, latibulaque in sicco munitissima. Ad quæ venator explorans dum præacutis sudibus desuper trans-

---

[1] After *stilla* Camden has "de "facili," which I have found in no manuscript of this treatise; but it is in the *Descr. Kamb. infra.*

[2] *subintret*] R. B. D., &c.; subintrat, Rd.; dissolvat, Hc.

[3] *Ex salicum, &c.*] This section and the three following ones, down to "ad secandum," in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] *crescendo*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in Hc., and not in manuscripts of 1st edition of the *Descr. Kamb.*

[5] *in corporis compositione*] D. Rd., &c.; scilicet corporis conformitate, Hc.

penetrare molitur, ictum audiens et violentiam timens, quam citius ad castri munimenta se bestia confert. Sed primo ad ipsum foraminis ingressum in ripa residens, aquam exsufflat, terram pedibus scalpens immiscet,[1] et ex limpida visuique pervia turbidam reddit et cœnulentam; ut sic hostis a ripa cum fuscina ferrea saltum observantis artem arte deludat.

The Castor of eastern countries.

In eois autem regionibus, cum canes narium sagacitate sequaces se nullatenus effugere posse præsentit, ut damno partis totum redimat, partem quam appeti naturali industria novit projiciendo in venatoris prospectu seipsam bestia castrat. Unde et a castrando Castor nomen accepit. Præterea, si bestiam præcastratam canes iterum forte persequantur, ad eminentem statim se conferens locum, coxa in altum elevata, partem venatori quam appetit præcisam ostendit. De quibus[2] Cicero in Scauriana; "Redimunt se ex illa "parte corporis, propter quam maxime expetuntur." Juvenalis;

"Qui se Juv. xii. 34.
"Eunuchum ipse facit, cupiens evadere damno
"Testiculi."

Et Bernardus;

"Prodit item castor proprio de corpore velox Bernard.
"Reddere quas sequitur hostis avarus opes."

Sic igitur ut hinc pellem, quæ in occidente quæritur, tueri valeat, illinc partis medicinalis quæ in oriente diligitur largitione, totum quanquam tamen non 99.

---

[1] *terram pedibus scalpens immiscet*] So D. here, and Rd.; but "pe-"dibus scalpendo terram immiscet," D. in *Descr. Kamb.*, and Camden here; "terram immiscet" only in R. B. He., and in MSS. of 1st edition of *Descr. Kamb.*

[2] *De quibus . . . . avarus opes*] These quotations in D. Rd., &c. Not in R. B. He., and not in MSS. of 1st edition of *Descr. Kamb.* Of Cicero's oration, *Pro Scauro*, only fragments remain. This, with the quotation from Juvenal, is in Isidore's *Etym.*, xii. 2, 21, whence, no doubt, it was cited by Giraldus.

totum conservet, mirabili, ne dicam ingenio, vi quadam ingenita et quasi discretiva, venatoris astutiam vitare molitur.

Notandum[1] quoque quod castores caudas habent latas et non longas, in modum palmæ humanæ spissas; quibus tanquam pro remigio natando funguntur. Cumque totum corpus reliquum valde pilosum habeant, hanc partem omni pilositate carentem, in morem phocæ marinæ, planam habent et levigatam. Unde et in Germania, arctoisque regionibus, ubi abundant beveres, caudis hujusmodi, piscium ut aiunt naturam tam sapore quam colore sortitis, viri etiam magni et religiosi jejuniorum tempore pro pisce vescuntur.

Videtur tamen, quod juris in toto quoad totum, hoc in parte quoad partem: nec pars a toto tanta generis diversitate distare consuevit.

Progress from Cardigan to Pont Stephan.

Transivimus autem a castro prædicto versus Pontem Stephani; Crugmaur,[2] id est, colle magno, juxta Aberteivi a sinistro latere relicto. Ubi Griphinus filius Resi filii Theodori, post obitum Anglorum regis Henrici primi, in bello publico, de Anglorum populo, per necem nobilis viri Ricardi Clarensis juxta Abergevenni, ut dictum est, paulo ante interempti, sine capite relicto, et ob hoc in impetu primo statim confecto, stragem non modicam fecit.[3] In summitate collis ejusdem tumulus[4] reperitur, quem se cuilibet staturæ præstare conformem incolæ testantur. Et si arma quæcunque vespere ibidem integra relinquantur, mane confracta vulgari assertione reperientur.

Supra, 47.

---

[1] *Notandum, &c.*] This section, and the next, *Videtur . . consuevit*, in *Top. Hib.* (vol. v. 59), in nearly the same words.

[2] *Crugmaur*] D.; Cruc maur, R. B.

[3] This in 1135, *Brut*; 1136, *Annal. Camb.*

[4] *tumulus*] This, described as a "Sepulchrum . . . . in cacumine "montis qui cognominatur Crucmare," is the last of the 21 *Mirabilia Britanniæ* at the end of Nennius in MS. Nero D. viii. f. 71.

[CAP. IV.]

De transitu per Pontem Stephani, per monasterium quoque de Stratflur, per Brevi, et ecclesiam Paterni magni, cum notabilibus suis.

Apud Stephani vero Pontem sermone in crastino facto, tam ab archiepiscopo quam Menevensi archidiacono, necnon et abbatibus Cisterciensis ordinis duobus, de Alba domo scilicet Johanne et de[1] Stratflur Seisillo, qui nobis in partibus istis et usque in Norwalliam fideliter astiterunt, plurimis quoque ad crucis obsequium allectis, ea nocte apud Stratflur moram fecimus. Progressis inde parum, montanis de Moruge magnis et immensis, quæ Kambrice dicuntur Elennith, a latere dextro relictis, in silvæ cujusdam ora obviavit nobis Kenewricus[2] filius Resi, juventute septus expeditissima. Adolescens ipse flavus et crispus, pulcher et procerus, ut patriæ gentique morem gereret, pallio tenui solum et interula indutus, tibiis et pedibus nudis tribulos et spinas non formidantibus; vir non arte quidem, sed natura munitus; plurimum quippe[3] dignitatis ex se præferens, ex adjuncto parum. Sermone igitur tribus filiis adultis, Griphino scilicet, Mailgoni, et Kenewrico, in præsentia patris ibidem facto, et altercantibus de crucis susceptione fratribus, tandem Mailgo se cum archiepiscopo ad curiam regis iturum firma sponsione concessit, et tam regis quam archiepiscopi consilio, nisi per ipsos steterit, obtemperaturum.

From Pont Stephan to Strata Florida.

99 b.

Sermon to the sons of prince Rhys.

Transivimus inde per Landewi Brevi, id est, ecclesiam[4] David de Brevi, quæ sita est in collis vertice, qui sub pedibus ejusdem David prædicantis olim excreverat:

Then by Llanddewi Brefi to Llanbadarn Fawr.

---

[1] *de*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

[2] *Kenewricus*] D.; Kenewreic, R. B.

[3] *quippe*] R. B. Hc., &c. Not in D.

[4] *ecclesiam*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; ecclesia, D., Camden.

in illa scilicet synodo magna episcoporum omnium et abbatum Kambriæ totius, necnon et cleri[1] universi ibidem una cum populo collecta, propter Pelagianam hæresim, quanquam olim a beato Germano Autisio-dorensi episcopo ab insula Britannica deletam, his denuo tamen[2] in partibus recidivo morbo redivivaque peste jam tunc emersam. Ubi et unanimi totius conventus tam electione quam acclamatione, ob tanti miraculi signum, quanquam invitus et renitens, David in archiepiscopum est sublimatus. Præsertim cum beatus quoque Dubricius, in memorata Urbis Legionum curia, eidem paulo ante sua tam destinatione quam nuncupatione cessisset honorem: sede metropolitana ab Urbe Legionum usque Meneviam abhinc translata. Ea igitur nocte apud Lanpadern maur, id est, ecclesiam Paterni magni, mora facta, mane ad Christi obsequium plures alleximus.

Life of St. David, vol. iii. 400, &c.

Supra, 56.

Lay abbots.

Notandum autem quod[3] hæc ecclesia, sicut et aliæ per Hiberniam et Walliam plures, abbatem laicum[4]
100. habet. Usus enim inolevit et prava consuetudo, ut viri in parochia potentes, primo tanquam œconomi seu potius ecclesiarum patroni et defensores a clero constituti, postea processu temporis aucta cupidine totum sibi jus usurparent, et terras omnes cum[5] exteriore possessione sibi impudenter appropriarent: solum altaria cum decimis et obventionibus clero relinquentes; et hæc ipsa filiis suis clericis et cognatis assignantes. Tales itaque defensores seu potius ecclesiarum destructores[6] abbates se vocari fecere; et tam nomen indebitum quam rem sibi quoque assignari præsumpsere.

---

[1] *cleri*] B. Hc. D., &c.; clerici, R., and F. originally, but altered to "cleri."

[2] *tamen*] B. Hc. D.; dum, Rd. Not in R. F., Camden.

[3] *quod*] D. Rd., Camden; quoniam, R. B. Hc.

[4] *abbatem laicum*] D. Rd., Camden; abbates laicos, R. B. Hc.

[5] *cum*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[6] *destructores*] Hc. D., &c.; detractores, R. B.

In hoc statu ecclesiam hanc invenimus destitutam;[1] veteri quodam et inveterato dierum malorum, cui nomen Ethenoweyn[2] filius Withfoit,[2] se abbatem gerente, et filiis ejusdem altari incumbentibus.

Tempore tamen regis Henrici primi, Anglorum potestate per Kambriam vigente, cœnobium Sancti Petri Glovernniæ[3] prædictam ecclesiam quiete possedit. Sed post obitum regis ejusdem, Anglis expulsis, monachi quoque sunt ejecti, et more præfato tam clerici interius quam laici exterius violenter intrusi. *Llanbadarn rightly a cell of St. Peter's Gloucester.*

Contigit autem, regnante Stephano, qui successit Henrico primo, militem quemdam de Armorica oriundum Britannia, peragratis regionibus multis ut variarum gentium tam urbes quam mores discerneret, huc tandem forte fortuitu advectum esse. Cum itaque, die quodam festivo, ad missæ celebrationem adventum abbatis tam clerus quam populus exspectaret, demum abbati venienti cum aliis occursans, vidit turbam juvenum venire circiter viginti, more gentis expeditam et armis munitam. Cumque quærenti, quisnam illorum abbas esset, virum quemdam ostenderent alios cum lancea longa præcedentem, intuens in eum et admirans ait; "Numquid ne alium habitum, aliumve baculum, "abbas iste quam illum quem nunc præfert habet?" Responderunt, "Nequaquam." At ille; "Sat," inquit, "hodie novitatis vidi, satque miraculi jam audivi." Et ab illa statim hora reversus, finem labori posuit et explorationi. *The knight traveller of Brittany and the lay abbot.*

Jactat autem gens hæc et generatio prava, episcopum quemdam ecclesiæ istius, quia cathedralis aliquando fuerat, a decessoribus suis interemtum.[4] Et *Llanbadarn once a cathedral church.* 100 b.

---

[1] *destitutam*] R. B. D. Rd.; destructam, Hc.; capite destitutam, Camden.

[2] *Ethenoweyn . . Withfoit*] D.; Edhenewein . . Witfoit, R. B.

[3] See *Hist. Monast. Gloucestriæ*, ii. 73, &c.

[4] See Rice Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 216, and Stubbs' *Episcopal Succession*, 157.

hac præcipue allegatione in loco eodem jus sibi vindicant et proprietatem.

Temporizing of the archbishop.

Elegimus[1] itaque has potius enormitates ad præsens sub dissimulatione transire, quam, nullo ibidem querimoniam deponente, gentem iniquam exasperare.

[Cap. V.]

De fluvio Devi navigio transcurso, et terra filiorum Canani,[2] cum notabilibus suis.

Progress into North Wales, to Towyn in Merioneth.

Accedentes igitur ad aquam Devi, quæ Norwalliam secernit a Sudwallia, reversis jam Menevensi episcopo et Reso Griphini filio, qui nos a castro de Aberteivi per Kereticam regionem usque ad aquam istam laudabili in principe liberalitate deduxit, transcurso navigio flumine, et Menevensi diocesi jam post terga relicta, terram filiorum Chanani, scilicet Merionyth, et primam ea ex parte Venedotiæ provinciam, et episcopatum Bangoriensem[3] intravimus, apud Teweyn[4] pernoctantes.

Thence over the river Maw to Llanfair.

In crastino vero, mane, occurrit nobis filius Chanani Griphinus, quod diutius obviam archiepiscopo venire distulisset humiliter et devote veniam petens. Transivimus eodem die navigio bifurcum Maviæ flumen; ubi Mailgo filius Resi, qui individuum archiepiscopo ad curiam regis se comitem dederat, juxta mare tamen vadum invenit. Ea nocte jacuimus apud Lanmeir,[5] id est, ecclesiam Mariæ, in provincia de Ardudoc.[5]

Character of this district: its mountains.

Hæc autem terra Chanani, et præcipue Merionyth, omnium totius Kambriæ terrarum hispida magis est

---

[1] *Elegimus*] Hc. D., &c.; Legimus, R. B.

[2] *Canani*] D. here, but afterwards "Chanani;" Kanani, R. B., but "Canani" as well afterwards. The heading in Hc. is, "De aqua "quæ dicitur Devi, cum notabili- "bus suis."

[3] *Bangoriensem*] D.; Bangornensem, R. B.

[4] *Teweyn*] D.; Towen, R. B.

[5] *Lanmeir . . Ardudoc*] D.; Lanmair . . Ardudi, R. B.

et horribilis. Habet enim montes altissimos, arctos tamen et in modum arcis acutissimos, nec raros quidem sed creberrimos, et tanta inæqualitate consertos, ut in summis eorum verticibus pastores confabulantes ad invicem vel conviciantes, si concurrere forte statuerint, a mane in vesperam vix convenient.

Sunt autem his in partibus lanceæ longissimæ. Sicut enim arcu prævalet Sudwallia, sic lanceis præstat Venedotia: adeo ut ictum hic lancea cominus datum ferrea loricæ tricatura minime sustineat. Use of the lance in North Wales 101.

In crastino obviavit nobis filius Chanani junior, cui nomen Meredutius, in transitu pontis cujusdam, cum plebe provinciæ illius. Ubi quamplurimis ad crucem allectis, tandem uno de familia ipsius crucesignato[1] juvene pervalido, eique familiarissimo, quoniam pallium cui crux assui debuerat tenue nimis et vile videbatur, cum uberrimo lacrimarum fonte suum ei Meredutius pallium projecit.

[Cap. VI.]

De Traitmaur et Traitbochan transcursis; de Nevin[2] quoque, Kairarvon, et Bangor, cum notabilibus suis.

Transivimus inde Traitmaur et Traitbochan, id est,[3] tractum maris majorem et tractum minorem, ubi duo castra lapidea de nova sita fuerunt; unum in Evionyth versus montana borealia, quod erat filiorum Chanani, cui nomen Deutrait; alterum vero ex alia fluvii parte versus mare in capite Lhein, quod erat filiorum Oenei, cui nomen Karnmadrun.[4] Dicitur From Llanfair to Nefyn.

---

[1] *crucesignato*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[2] *Nevin*] D.; Newein, R. B. "Transcursis" and "et Bangor" are not in the heading of Hc.

[3] *id est*] Hc. D., &c.; et, R. B., and F. originally, but altered to "id est."

[4] *Karnmadrun*] D.; Karmaderun, R. B.

autem *Trait*, lingua Kambrica,[1] sabulum mari influente,[2] longius et se retrahente nudatum. Transieramus[3] tamen aquas antea non ignobiles, Dyssenyth inter Maviam et Traitmaur, Arthro inter Traitmaur et Traitbochan. Ea noctе jacuimus apud Newein,[4] vigilia videlicet Paschæ floridi. Ubi Merlinum Silvestrem, diu quæsitum desideratumque, archidiaconus Menevensis dicitur invenisse.[5]

Palm Sunday, April 10.

Bardsey island:

Jacet autem extra Lhein insula modica, quam monachi inhabitant religiosissimi, quos Cœlibes vel Colideos vocant. Hæc autem insula, vel ab aeris salubritate quam ex Hiberniæ confinio sortitur, vel potius aliquo ex miraculo et sanctorum meritis, hoc mirandum habet, quod[6] in ea seniores præmoriuntur, quia morbi in ea rarissimi; et raro vel nunquam hic quispiam moritur, nisi longa senectute confectus. Hæc insula Enthli[7] Kambrice vocatur, et lingua Saxonica Berdeseie. Et in ea, ut fertur, infinita sanctorum sepulta sunt corpora; ibique jacere testantur corpus beati
101 b. Danielis Banchorensis[8] episcopi.

or Ynys Enlli

From Nefyn, by Carnarvon, to Bangor.

Plurimis igitur in crastino ad archipræsulis sermonem crucesignatis, versus Bangor iter arripientes transivimus per Kairarvon, id est, castrum de Arvon. Dicitur autem Arvon provincia contra Mon, eo quod sita sit contra Moniam insulam.

The rough and fatiguing journey.

Venientibus itaque nobis ad vallem via duce, tam in ascensu quam descensu valde præruptam, cuncti ab equis dilapsi[9] pedites perreximus, ex condicto, tanquam

---

[1] *Kambrica*] R. B. He., &c.; Britannica, D.

[2] *influente*] D. Rd., Camden; refluente, R. B. He.

[3] *Transieramus . . Traitbochan*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. He. Giraldus's memory as to the order of these rivers failed him, when he added this clause in his 3rd edition.

[4] *Newein*] D.; Newen, R. B. See note 2, p. 123, *supra*.

[5] *dicitur invenisse*] D. Rd., Camden; invenit, R. B. He.

[6] *quod*] D. Rd., Camden; quod semper, R. B. He.

[7] *Enthli*] D.; Enchli, R. B.

[8] *Banchorensis*] D.; Bangornensis, R. B.

[9] *dilapsi*] D., Camden; delapsi, Rd.; elapsi, R. B. He.

Ierosolimitanæ peregrinationis sicut tunc credebatur jamjam instantis quædam præludia facientes.] Valle igitur transmeata, cum ad partem oppositam transcenderemus, fatigatis universis, in quercu quadam vi ventorum stirpitus[1] avulsa et prostrata, quiescendi respirandique gratia cum archiepiscopus resedisset, laudabilem in tanto tam gravitatis authenticæ viro[2] resolutus in jocunditatem, circumstantibus ait; "Quis vestrum in "hac turba sibilando aures delectare nunc prævalet "fatigatas?" Quod fessis ex itinere fieri solet difficile. Ipso vero se id posse si vellet protestante, auditur in silva propinqua sibilus aviculæ dulcisonus, quam alii picum, alii verius aureolum dixere. Dicitur autem picus avicula, lingua Gallica *Spec* dicta, quæ rostro robusto quercum perforans, majores viribus ictus ingeminat. Dicitur et aureolus avicula aureo croceoque colore conspicua, dulcemque suo in tempore pro cantu sibilum reddens; quæ et aureolus ab aureo colore nomen accepit. Ad hæc igitur quodam dicente, nunquam philomenam partes istas intrasse, subjunxit archiepiscopus, modesta quadam subrisus significantia; "Philo-"mena quidem sapienti freta est consilio, quæ Kam-"briæ fines non intravit; nos autem insipienti, qui "Kambriam et penetravimus et circuivimus."

The archbishop's pleasantry.

No nightingale ever in Wales.

Ea igitur nocte moram fecimus apud Bangor, cathedralem videlicet Venedotiæ sedem, a loci ejusdem episcopo decenter exhibiti. In crastino vero, missa in principali altari ab archipræsule celebrata, sedis ejusdem antistes, cui nomen Guianus,[3] a dextris altaris ad tam archiepiscopi quam aliorum plurium magnam instantiam, et importunam magis quam persuasoriam, ad crucis susceptionem est compulsus; cum magna suorum 102.

The bishop of Bangor compelled to take the cross.

[1] *stirpitus*] R. B. Hc., &c.; strepitus, D.

[2] *authenticæ viro*] Hc. D., Camden, (Rd. corrupt); auctoritate, R. B.

[3] *Guianus*] Called "Gwido," or "Vido," in *Ben. Abb.* (i. 165); "Guido" by Gervase (Twysden, 1674), and Diceto (598); "Gwiawn" in *Brut*, A° 1191.

ipsa in ecclesia lamentatione, miserabilique sub barbara quadam vociferatione utriusque sexus hominum tam clamore quam mœrore.

[Cap. VII.]

De Monia insula, cum[1] notabilibus suis.

The island of Anglesey.

His ita peractis, transivimus in Moniam insulam, quasi[2] milibus passuum[3] duobus inde distantem, brevi maris brachio transnavigato. Ubi[4] junior Oenei filius Rothericus, cum insulæ totius necnon et terrarum adjacentium populo, nobis devotus occurrit. Facta igitur in loco quodam non procul a ripa consessione, petrosis in[5] rupibus in theatri modum orbiculariter circumstantibus, ad sermonem archiepiscopi, et ejusdem loci archidiaconi, scilicet[6] interpretis nostri Alexandri, necnon et abbatis de Stratflur Seisilli, multi de plebe ad crucis obsequium sunt allecti. Sedebant autem in opposita rupe de familia Rotherici juvenes electi, quorum nullus allici potuit; quanquam tamen illos, quasi[7] mel frustra de petra elicere conantes, et oleum de saxo, tam archiepiscopus quam alii, præcipue ad ipsos sermone directo, verbis suasoriis nec persuasoriis invitarent.

Sermon of the archbishop, &c.

Men who refused to take the cross.

Their punishment.

Contigit autem post infra triduum, tanquam divina ultione secuta, quod juvenes iidem cum aliis multis prædones patriæ persequerentur; qui statim a prædonibus confecti et in fugam dati, interemtis quibusdam, et aliis letaliter vulneratis, crucem quam antea spreverant in carne sibi invicem jam ultronei affixerunt.

Prince Rhodri's incest;

Rothericus quoque, qui sanguine sibi propinquam, et in tertio gradu cognatam, Resi principis filiam

---

[1] *cum*] Hc. D., &c.; et, R. B.

[2] *quasi*] R. B. D., &c.; intra, Hc.

[3] *milibus passuum*] D. Rd.; miliaribus, Hc., Camden; stadiis, R. B.

[4] *Ubi*] D. Rd.; Ubi et, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *in*] D. Rd. Not in R. B., &c.

[6] *scilicet*] D. Rd.; et, R. B., &c.

[7] *quasi*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

paulo ante incestuoso sibi contubernio copulaverat, ut contra fratrum filios quos exheredaverat se Resi auxilio fortius tueretur, salutaribus archiepiscopi monitis super hoc non obtemperans, a tota quam possederat terra in brevi postmodum ab eisdem est ejectus:[1] unde sibi illicite speraverat defensionem, inde merito reportans confusionem. rejection of the archbishop's monitions; and punishment.

Habet autem hæc insula Moniæ trecentas et sexaginta tres villas, et pro tribus tamen[2] Kantaredis reputatur. Dicitur autem Kantaredus composito vocabulo, tam Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portio quanta centum villas continere solet. 102 b. Extent of Anglesey.

Adjacent autem insulæ Britannicæ tres lateraliter diversis ex partibus insulæ, quæ ejusdem fere quantitatis esse perhibentur; ab austro Vecta, a zephyro Monia, a circio Mania. Sed duæ priores propinquius adjacent, modicis distinctæ maris interstitiis. Tertia vero, quæ Mania dicitur,[3] medio inter Hibernicam Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwedias libramine jacens, remotius extenditur. The islands of Wight, Anglesey, and Man.

Est autem Monia arida tellus et saxosa, deformis aspectu et inamœna; terræ de Pebidiauc, quæ adjacet Meneviæ, exteriori qualitate simillima, verumtamen interiori naturæ dote longe dissimilis. Est etenim hæc insula præ cunctis Kambriæ finibus triticeo gramine[4] incomparabiliter fecunda: adeo ut proverbialiter dici soleat lingua Britannica, *Mon mam Kembre*,[5] quod Latine sonat, Monia mater Kambriæ. Quoniam aliis undique terris deficientibus, hæc sola gleba præpingui uberique frugum proventu Kambriam totam sustentare consuevit. Character of Anglesey. Its fruitfulness in grain.

---

[1] *est ejectus*] This was in 1193, *Brut.*

[2] *tamen*] R. B. Hc. Rd. Not in D., Camden.

[3] *quæ Mania dicitur*] D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

[4] *gramine*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; germine, D., Camden. Compare *Descr. Kamb.*, i. 6, *infra*.

[5] *mam Kembre*] D.; man Kemere, R. B.; mam Kemere, Hc.

Sed quoniam in hac insula digna memoratu multa reperies, quædam ex his excerpere et hic interserere non superfluum duxi. Est igitur hic lapis humano femori fere [1] conformis, cui insita virtus hoc habet, ut spatio quantolibet asportatus proxima per se nocte revertatur, sicut ab accolis pluries est compertum. Unde et comes Hugo Slopesburiensis,[2] qui tempore regis Henrici primi tam insulam istam, quam terras adjacentes viriliter occupaverat, audita hac lapidis virtute, ipsum alii lapidi longe majori ferreis catenis fortiter ligatum, probandi causa, procul in mare projici fecit. Qui tamen summo diluculo, cum multorum admiratione, pristino more loco in suo repertus est.
103. Cujus rei occasione publico comitis edicto prohibitum est, ne quis de cetero lapidem a loco movere præsumat.

Miraculous stone.

Contigit aliquando rusticum quemdam, experiendi gratia, ad femur suum lapidem ligasse: sed putrefacto statim femore ad locum pristinum [3] lapis evasit. Dicitur etiam [4] quod si venereum opus in loco eodem vel prope fieri contigerit, sicut aliquoties probatum est, statim lapis guttis magnis desudabit. Similiter etiam si procacitatem ibidem vir et mulier exercuerint. Ex venere quoque ibidem expleta nunquam genitura provenit.[5] Unde et ob hoc, casula deserta penitus quæ ibidem olim esse solebat, tantum muro lapideo fatalem hodie lapidem videas circuiri.

The hill over which no shout heard.

Est et in eadem insula collis saxosus, non magnus et parum altus, cujus ex una parte si clamaveris, ex altera nequaquam audieris; et vocatur ab incolis, per antiphrasin, Rupis audientium.

---

[1] *fere*] R. B. Hc., &c. Not in D.

[2] *Slopesburiensis*] All the MSS; Cestrensis, Camden. Hugh earl of Shrewsbury, and Hugh earl of Chester, were joint leaders of the expedition into Anglesey in 1098. Giraldus is wrong in saying, "temp. "Henrici primi."

[3] *pristinum*] D. Rd., Camden; suum, Hc. Not at all in R. B.

[4] *Dicitur etiam . . . . circuiri*] Camden, or rather David Powell, modestly omits this.

[5] *provenit*] D. Rd.; proveniet, R. B. Hc.

In boreali quoque majoris Britanniæ latere, quod ab Humbro flumine, quasi trans Humbrum in boream,[1] ab Anglis nomen accepit, est collis haud dissimilis; cujus ex uno latere si cornu altisonum vel tubæ clangor experiatur, opposito in latere non audietur. A like hill in Northumberland.

Est et in hac insula ecclesia Sancti Tevredauci confessoris, in qua comes Hugo Cestrensis,[2] quoniam et ipse fines [et][3] hos Kambriæ suo in tempore subjugaverat, cum canes nocte posuisset, insanos[4] omnes mane recepit: et ipsemet infra mensem miserabiliter exstinctus[5] occubuit. Accesserant enim ad insulæ portum[6] ab Orchadum insulis piratæ in navibus longis: quorum adventum ubi comes audivit, statim eis usque in ipsum mare, forti residens equo, animose nimis occurrit. Et ecce navium princeps, cui nomen Magnus, primæ navis in prora cum arcu prostans sagittam direxit. Et quanquam comes a vertice capitis usque ad[7] talum pedis, præter oculos solum, ferro fideliter esset indutus, tamen dextro percussus in lumine, perforato cerebro, in mare corruit moribundus. Quem cum sic corruentem victor ab alto despiceret,[8] superbe in victum et insolenter[9] invectus, dixisse memoratur lingua Danica, "Leit loupe,"[10] quod Latine sonat Sine salire. Et ab hac in posterum hora potestas Anglorum in Monia cessavit. Hugh de Montgomery killed by Magnus of Norway (A.D. 1098). 103 b.

---

[1] *in boream*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

[2] *Cestrensis*] So all the MSS. *Slopesburiensis*, Camden, with the whole sentence different. Camden is right as to his "Slopesburiensis." It was Hugh de Montgomery, earl of Shrewsbury, who was killed. See *Flor. Worc.* A° 1098, and *Ord. Vit.* x. 6.

[3] *et*] D. Not in R. B. Hc. Rd.

[4] *insanos*] R. B. D., &c.; rabidos, Hc.

[5] *exstinctus*] R. B. D., &c. Not in Hc.

[6] *portum*] Hc. D., &c.; portam, R. B., and F. originally, but altered to "portum."

[7] *ad*] D.; in, R. B. Hc., &c.

[8] *despiceret*] R. B. Hc., &c.; respiceret, D.

[9] *insolenter*] Hc. D., &c.; inlenter, B.; violenter, R. F.

[10] *loupe*] B. D.; hloupe, R. F.

Henry II.'s expedition into North Wales (in 1157).

Nostris quoque temporibus, Anglorum rege Henrico secundo in Venedotiam exercitum ducente, ubi et in arcto silvestri apud Coleshulle, id est,[1] Carbonis collem, bellicam aleam expertus est, classe in Moniam transmissa, cum prædictæ ecclesiæ aliisque sanctorum per insulam locis spoliando prædando minime deferrent, divina secuta vindicta, accolæ tandem in advenas, pauci in multos, inermes in armatos subito irruentes, multis interemptis, multisque captis et in vincula datis, victoria potiti sunt cruentissima.

Vol. v. 137. Saints of Wales, as of Ireland, prone to revenge.

Quemadmodum enim *Hibernica* testatur *Topographia*, sicut natio Hibernica, necnon et Kambrica, præ aliis gentibus præcipites in iram et ad vindictam in vita proni reperiuntur, sic et in morte vitali terrarum earundem sancti præ aliis animi vindicis esse videntur.

Death of Henry, Giraldus's uncle, son of Henry I.

Fuerant autem duo nobiles viri, et ejus qui scripsit hæc avunculi, cum aliis huc a rege transmissi; Henricus scilicet regis Henrici primi filius, et secundi avunculus, ex nobili Nesta, Resi filii Theodori filia,[2] in australi Kambria Demetiæ finibus oriundus; et Robertus Stephani filius, Henrici frater non germanus sed uterinus; vir quidem qui nostro primus tempore aliis viam præbens, Hibernicam non longe post aggressus est expugnationem; cujus quoque præconia *Vaticinalis* depromit *Historia*. Henricus igitur, nimia fretus audacia, bonaque destitutus omnino sequela, cum magno suorum dolore inter primos lanceis con-

Narrow escape of Robert Fitz-Stephen.

---

[1] *id est, Carbonis collem*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. He., Camden.

[2] *Resi fil. Theod. filia*] D. Rd.; Resi filia, He., Camden.; Griphini filia, R. B. She was Nest, daughter of Rhys ab Tewdwr. The blunders of the MSS. of the early editions are rather curious; we can hardly suppose them to be due to Giraldus, whose grandmother Nest was. The death of Henry, her son by H. I., in this attack on Anglesea, is placed by *Brut* under 1156, in *Ann. Camb.* under 1158. By the former he is called Henry son of king Henry; by the latter, Henry son of Girald, or, according to others, son of king Henry. He was the father of the famous Meiler, the great hero of the Irish invasion.

fossus occubuit. Robertus vero, de defensione diffidens, vix ad naves graviter vulneratus evasit.

Priestholm island; and its mice. 104.

Est et insula modica, collateralis Moniæ et fere continua, quam solum eremitæ labore manuum viventes et Deo servientes inhabitant. De quibus hoc mirandum, quod cum aliquando forte motibus humanis discordes ad invicem inventi fuerint, statim mures minutissimi, quibus abundat insula, escas eorum omnes et potiones tam consumunt quam corrumpunt. Cessante vero discordia, continuo cessat et incommodum.

Ynys Glanach the Welsh name.

Nec mirandum si Dei famuli discordes interdum inveniantur; quoniam in Rebeccæ utero Jacob et Esau bella gessere, Paulus et Barnabas contentiose ab invicem discessere. Inter discipulos quoque Jhesu facta est contentio, quis eorum videretur esse major. Infirmitatis enim humanæ temptationes sunt hæ: verumtamen et virtus plerumque in infirmitate perficitur, et fidei constantia tribulationibus augmentatur. Dicitur autem insula prædicta Kambrice Enislannach,[1] id est, Insula ecclesiastica; propter copiam sanctorum, quorum ibi corpora jacent. Et hanc insulam feminæ non intrant.

The tailless dogs, from a tailless sire.

Præterea vidimus in Monia canem curtum, non natura quidem sed casu solo cauda mutilatum. Cujus et progenies plurima, tam a genitore descendens quam genitura, similem jam naturaliter pati defectum ostensa est. Mirum enimvero quod solum parenti casus adjecit, hoc sibi prolem in posterum tanquam a natura conformare.

A like natural defect in a knightly family of Devon.

Militem quoque in Anglia vidimus, ex Devoniæ finibus oriundum, cui nomen Erchembaldus: de quo contigit, ut dum matris in alvo gestaretur patre partum penitus abnegante, et matrem zelotypiæ causa ex sola suspicione fortiter accusante, puero in lucem prodeunte, sola litem per se natura diremit. Fissuram

---

[1] *Enislannach*] D.; Enislenach, R. B.

namque, quam ictu lanceæ militari exercitio per medium sub nare superius labrum genitor olim susceperat, laudabili naturæ miraculo eodem in loco genitura prætendit. Erchembaldi quoque filium vidimus, cui nomen Stephanus, eodem indicio patrissantem; casuali læsione tanquam in naturam jam conversa.

And in the case of earl Alberic de Vere.

Item in comite Alberico, Alberici comitis de Ver filio, simile naturæ miraculum vidimus. Cum enim pater ejusdem, matre jam prægnante, filia scilicet Henrici de Essexia, ob ignominiosum patris eventum[1] jam
104 b. ad divortium modis omnibus elaborasset, partu prodeunte, quem pater in oculo casuali læsione sustinuit, eadem in[2] parte defectus in filio parentavit.

Such cases, perhaps, from impressions of the memory; as with the queen and the negro's picture.

Sed forsitan ex rei visæ memoria, quæ per aspectum contrahitur et reservatur, hujusmodi proprietas in prolem descendit. Sicut de regina legitur, quæ, quoniam Ethyopem in thalamo depictum[3] inspicere consueverat, ex inopinato Ethiopem peperit; quam[4] et Quintilianus per picturam excusavit. Similiter et de ovibus variis contigit, quas Laban nepoti suo Jacob de grege concessit, per virgarum præfixarum variationem multiplicatis.

Nec tantum ex mulieris, verum etiam ex imaginaria viri memoria partus interdum informatur. Compertum est enim de quodam, qui cum forte transeundo hominem inspiceret se ante et retro continua passione moventem, ad uxorem illico accedens, eamque cognoscens, quoniam motionis illius memoria a mente excidere præ admiratione non potuit, eadem hora puerum genuit simili passione percussum.

---

[1] See Gervase (Twysden, 1380); Diceto (535); and Jocelin de Brakelond (*Camden Soc.*, 50, &c.)

[2] *in*] D., &c.; ex, R. B. Hc.

[3] *depictum*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[4] *quam . . . excusavit*] D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

[Cap. VIII.]

De Cunewe fluvio navigio transcurso, et Dynas Emereis, cum notabilibus suis.

Return to Bangor. The tombs of Owain Gwynedd, and Cadwalader his brother.

Reversis a Monia Bangor iterum, ostensum est nobis principis Oenei sepulchrum, qui in presbyterio coram altari, cum fratre juniore Cadwaladro, in spelunca duplici jacebant:[1] quanquam tamen Oeneus, ob publicum cum consobrina incestum, a beato martyre Thoma excommunicatus obierit. Injuncto itaque loci illius episcopo ut visa opportunitate, et occasione captata, corpus ab ecclesia quantocius ejiceret, per litora maritima, hinc rupibus præruptis, illinc fluctibus æquoreis arctati, versus Cunewe flumen, marinis undis non impermixtum, iter incunctanter arripuimus. Non procul ab ortu Cunewe in capite montis Ereri, quod ex hac parte in boream extenditur, stat[2] Dynas Emereis, id est, promontorium Ambrosii, ubi Merlinus prophetizavit, sedente super ripam Vortigerno. Erant enim Merlini duo; iste qui et Ambrosius dictus est, quia binomius fuerat, et sub rege Vortigerno prophetizavit, ab incubo genitus, et apud Kaermerdyn[3] inventus; unde et ab ipso ibidem invento denominata est Kaermerdyn,[3] id est, urbs Merlini; alter vero de Albania oriundus, qui et Celidonius dictus est, a Celidonia silva in qua prophetizavit, et Silvester, quia cum inter acies bellicas constitutus monstrum horribile nimis in aera suspiciendo prospiceret, dementire cœpit, et ad silvam transfugiendo silvestrem usque ad obitum vitam perduxit. Hic autem Merlinus tempore Arthuri fuit, et longe plenius et apertius quam alter prophetasse perhibetur.[4]

The river Conway.

Dinas Emrys, Merlin, and Vortigern.

Two Merlins, Ambrosius, and Celidonius.

105.

---

[1] Owain Gwynned, son of Gruffudd ab Cynan, prince of North Wales, died in 1169; and Cadwalader his brother in 1172, *Brut.* The *Annal. Camb.* place the deaths of both under 1171.

[2] *stat*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *Kaermerdyn*] D.; Keirmerdhin, R. B.

[4] *prophetasse perhibetur*] D., &c.; prophetizavit, sicut Vaticinalis Historia manifeste depromit, R. B. Hc.

Quid autem,[1] mortuo Oeneo, vel etiam in extremis agente, filii ejusdem, pravo dominandi ambitu, fraterna non respicientes fœdera, diebus nostris inter se gesserint,[2] hic prætereo.

The sons of Owain Gwynedd. Illud autem, quod nostris hic diebus notabile censui, prætereundum non putavi.[3] Oeneus filius Griphini, princeps Norwalliæ, inter multos quos genuit filios tantum unum legitimum suscepit, scilicet Ierverdum Troyndun, quod Kambrice simus[4] sonat, agnominatum: qui et filium similiter legitimum suscepit Luelinum. Hic in transitu nostro patruis suis David et Rotherico, quos de consobrina sua cui nomen Christiana[5] Oeneus susceperat, quanquam puer tunc quasi[6] duodennis, infestare cœpit. Et licet totam Venedotiam, præter terram Canani, inter se pro herili portione divisissent; licet etiam propter[7] hoc David Anglicano fulciretur auxilio, puta qui sororem regis Henrici secundi sibi matrimonio copulaverat, ex qua et filium quoque susceperat; tamen intra paucos postmodum annos, de publico incestu natos, divitiis pariter et divitum auxilio fultos, legitimus iste,[8] terris omnino carens et thesauris, a Venedotia fere[9] tota, divina opitulante vindicta, viriliter ejecit: nihil eisdem nisi ultroneo motu, bonorumque virorum consilio, misericorditer et ex pietate relinquens.

105 b. Argumentum adulterinos et incestuosos Domino displicere.

[1] *Quid autem, &c.*] Hence, to end of chapter, in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[2] *gesserint*] D., &c.; gesseruut, Hc.

[3] *putavi*] D., &c.; existimavi, Hc.

[4] *simus*] D. Rd.; simum, Hc., Camden.

[5] *Christiana*] Hc. Rd., Camden; Christina, D.

[6] *quasi*] D. Not in Hc. Rd., Camden.

[7] *propter*] D. Rd.; præter, Hc. Camden.

[8] *iste*] Hc., Camden. Not in D. Rd.

[9] *fere*] D. Rd. Not in Hc., Camden. David was expelled by Llywelyn ab Iorwerth in 1194.

[CAP. IX.]

De montanis Ereri, cum notabilibus suis.

Montana vero[1] quæ a Kambris Ereri, ab Anglis vero Snaudune, id est[2] Nivium montes dicuntur, quæ a terra filiorum Canani paulatim incrementa suscipiunt, et prope Dugannu in boream se protendunt, contra Moniam vero turribus aereis nimis enormiter usque ad nubes excrescunt, sub silentio non sunt prætereunda. Tantæ siquidem et tam immensæ quantitatis esse perhibentur, ut antiquo proverbio dici soleat; sicut Moniam insulam[3] hominibus in annona, sic Ereri in pascuis, coactis in unum armentis omnibus, toti posse Walliæ sufficere. Unde[4] et his pascuis illud Virgilianum adaptari potest;[5]

The Snowdon range of mountains.

Their prolific pastures.

> "Et quantum longis carpunt armenta diebus,
> "Exigua tantum gelidus ros nocte reponit."

Georg. ii. 201.

In summis autem montium istorum verticibus duo lacus reperiuntur, sua non indigni admiratione. Alter enim insulam habet erraticam, vi ventorum impellentium ad oppositas plerumque lacus partes errabundam. Hic armenta pascentia nonnunquam pastores ad longinquas subito partes translata mirantur.

The lake with the floating island.

Fieri namque potuit ut pars aliqua ripæ olim avulsa, radicibus salicum aliorumque fruticum naturaliter insertorum vinculis astricta et colligata, paulatim postea per alluvionem incrementa susceperit. Et quoniam violenta ventorum rapacitate, quæ loco tam arduo fere continua reperitur, ad varias creberrime ripas im-

---

1 *vero*] B. Hc. D., &c. Not in R. F.

2 *id est*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

3 *Moniam insulam*] R. B. Hc., &c.; Monia insula, D.

4 *Unde, &c.*] This quotation from Virgil in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

5 *potest*] D., &c.; posset, Hc.

pellitur, firmas solo tenus et altas figere radices non permittitur.

The lake with the one-eyed fish.

Alter vero miro et inaudito miraculo pollet: quia cum trium generum piscibus abundet, anguillis, turtris, et perchiis, omnes in eo pisces monoculi reperiuntur, oculum dextrum habentes et sinistro carentes. Si rei tam novæ tamque stupendæ rationem scrupulosus lector efflagites, assignare non præsumo.

One-eyed mullets in Scotland.

Notandum[1] etiam quod in Albania quoque, duobus in locis, uno ad mare orientale, altero ad occidentale, pisces marini qui Mulvelli dicuntur monoculi reperiun-
106. tur, dextrum oculum habentes et sinistro carentes.

The fabulous eagle of Snowdon.

In eisdem montanis de Ereri aquila fabulosa frequentat; quæ qualibet quinta feria lapidi cuidam insidens fatali, ut interemptorum cadavere famem satiet, bellum eodem die futurum[2] fertur[3] exspectare; lapidemque prædictum, cui consuevit insidere, jam prope, rostrum purgando pariter et exacuendo, perforasse. Unde[4] et aquila locum ubi prædam invenire debeat scire dicitur, sed non tempus: corvus autem tempus, sed non locum.

[Cap. X.]

De transitu per Dugannu et Rudhelan, sedem quoque[5] Lanelvensem; de vivo sabulo, et Koleshulle; cum notabilibus suis.

Progress to Rhuddlan castle.

Transnavigato deinde Cunewe fluvio, vel potius maris brachio sub Dugannu, monasterio[6] Cisterciensis ordinis

---

[1] *Notandum, &c.*] Hence to end of chapter in D. Rd.; and in Hc., except the last clause "Unde . . . . "locum." Not in R. B.

[2] *futurum*] D. Rd. Not in Hc., Camden.

[3] *fertur*] D., &c.; fingitur, Hc.

[4] *Unde, &c.*] This last clause in D., and Rd. (corruptly). Not in Hc., Camden.

[5] *sedem quoque*] R. B. Hc., &c.; and D. in the table of chapters, *supra*, 10; sedemque, D. here.

[6] *monasterio . . . . . relicto*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

super Cunewc ab occidua fluvii parte a dextra relicto, usque Ruthelan,[1] nobile similiter castrum primævi Oenei filii [de consobrina][2] David super Cloid[3] fluvium, via duce pervenimus. Ubi et ab ipso, ad instantiam ejusdem magnam, ea nocte decenter exhibiti fuimus.

Est fons non procul a Rudhelan in provincia de Tegengel, quem non bis tantum die naturali more marino, sed vicissim et crebro, diebus et noctibus, nunc undis deficere, nunc exuberare certum est. The ebbing well.

Item[4] refert Trogus Pompeius, quod Gramantum est oppidum in quo fons ebullit, qui vicissim nocte dieque friget et fervet.

Multis itaque mane ad Christi obsequium allectis, ad pauperculam sedis Lanelvensis ecclesiam parum inde distantem transivimus; ubi et missa ab archipræsule celebrata, iter incontinenti aggressi sumus; et per divitem venam fructuosumque argenti scrutinium, ubi penitima scrutando Thence to Llanelwy, or St. Asaph, and Basingwerk.

"Itum est in viscera terræ," Ov. Met. i. 138.

transeuntes, in cellula de Basingeworc pernoctavimus.

In crastino vero, longum vivumque per loca sabulum non absque formidine permeantes, silvestria de Coleshulle, id est, Carbonis colle, a dextra reliquimus; ubi Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, nostris diebus[5] cum primo Walliam hostiliter[6] intravit, juvenili impetu et inconsulto calore arctum illud silvestre penetrare præsumens, cum detrimento suorum et damno non modico ambiguam bellorum aleam expertus est. Henry II.'s expeditions into Wales: 1st in 1157 106 b.

Ter enim prædictus rex in manu forti Walliam in-

[1] *Ruthelan*] D., and *Rudhelan* directly afterwards; R. B. have "Rutheland" and "Rudhelant."

[2] *de consobrina*] Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. D.

[3] *Cloid*] D.; Cloit, R. B.

[4] *Item . . . fervet*] This section in D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

[5] *diebus*] Hc. D., &c.; temporibus, R. B.; the latter with "vel "diebus" interlined over it.

[6] *hostiliter*] D., &c. Not in R. B. Hc.

2nd, in 1163; travit; primo, Norwalliam, prænotato in loco; secundo, Sudwalliam, per maritimam de Wlatmorgan et Goher viam, versus Kaermerdhin[1] et usque Pencadeir, id est, Cathedræ caput, intrando, et per Elennyth ac Mailennyth usque Radenoram revertendo; tertio vero, Powisiam, apud Oswaldestreo.[2]

3rd, in 1165.

His bad success, and its causes. His autem expeditionibus cunctis rex ideo minime profecit, quoniam probris patriæ viris, proceribusque provinciæ gnaris et peritis, fidem non habuit; solum in his viros a Marchia remotos, mores gentis et modos prorsus ignorantes, consiliarios habens principales.

"In qualibet nimirum expeditione, sicut artifici credendum "in sua facultate, sic horum præcipue standum est arbitrio, "qui circa similia patriæ negotia conversati diutius et usitati, "mores gentis et modos agnoscunt; quorumque magnopere "refert ut gens inimica, quacum ex crebris belli diutini con- "flictibus hostilitatem[3] plurimam et odium implacabile con- "traxerunt, eorundem opera vel debilitari possit vel deleri," Vol. v. 395. sicut in *Vaticinali Historia*[4] declaravimus.

The greyhound and his dead master. In hac eadem silva de Koleshulle, interfecto juvene quodam Kambrensi per exercitum prædicti regis transeuntem, leporarius ejusdem inventus est per octo fere dies absque cibo domini cadaver non deserens,[5] sed illud a canibus, lupis, et avibus prorsus indemne fideliter et admiranda in bruto dilectione conservans.[5]

Quis itaque patri filius, quisve Eurialo Nisus, quis Tydeo Polinices, quis Piladi Herestes, hunc dilectionis affectum exhiberet? Ob hujus[6] igitur eventus gratiam, leporariique favorem, diutina fere jam fame confecti,

---

[1] *Kaermerdhin . . . revertendo*] So in D., and Rd. corruptly. In R. B. Hc. it is, "Kaermerdhin et "Pencader intrando, et per Elenith "ac Melenith revertendo;" and with this Camden nearly agrees.

[2] *Oswaldestreo*] D.; Oswaldestroe, R. B.

[3] *hostilitatem*] Hc. D., &c.; and F. by alteration; hospitalitatem, R. B., and F. originally.

[4] The above quotation from the *Exp. Hib.* occurs again in *Descr. Kamb.* ii. 8, *infra*.

[5] *deserens . . . . conservans*] D. Rd.; deseruisse . . . conservasse, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[6] *hujus*] Hc. D., &c.; cujus, R. B.

ab Anglorum populo, Kambriæ gentibus inimicissimo, corpus jam fœtidum debito humanitatis officio est tumulatum.

[Cap. XI.]

De fluvio Deiæ transcurso, et Cestria, cum notabilibus suis.

Transvadato tandem Deiæ fluvio sub Cestria, quem Kambri Deverdoeu dicunt, feria tertia ante Pascha, die videlicet absolutionis, Cestriam venimus. Sicut enim Waia[1] ab austro sub castro Strigulensi, sic Deia a borea sub Cestrensi castro[2] Guallian ab Anglia separat et secernit.

Arrival at Chester, 107. Thursday before Easter, April 14, 1188.

Item, ut asserunt accolæ, aqua ista singulis mensibus vada permutat; et utri finium, Angliæ scilicet an Kambriæ, alveo relicto magis incubuerit, gentem illam eo in anno succumbere, et alteram prævalere, certissimum prognosticum habent.

Changes of channel in the river Dee.

Fluvius iste de lacu quodam cui nomen Pemmelesmere originem ducit; et cum salmonibus fluvius abundet, nunquam tamen in lacu piscis hujusmodi reperitur. Hoc etiam de eodem fluvio notabile reperies, quod pluviis nunquam, frequenter autem et fere semper ventis exuberat.

Its source.

Imperatorem itaque Romanum Henricum se jactat hæc urbs habere sepultum.[3] Qui, quoniam suis diebus tam patrem carnalem, quam etiam spiritualem, sum-

The emperor Henry at Chester.

[1] *Waia*] D.; Vaga, R. B.

[2] *castro*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

[3] This, about the emperor Henry V., occurs again in the *De Invectionibus* of our author (vol. i. 186). Walter Map (*De Nugis Curial.*, 229) records a belief that his death and burial, as stated by historians, was fictitious, and that he passed his last years in penitential exile; but he has nothing about Chester as the place of his last retirement and death. Higden (Twysden, 2382, 44) adopts Giraldus's statement as probably true; adding that Henry lived ten years at Chester as a hermit, under the name of Godescall. Brompton repeats this (1015, 47).

mum pontificem scilicet Paschalem incarceraverat, demum pœnitentia ductus, et ultroneus exul effectus, sanctam in eremo finibus istis vitam, ut fertur, consummavit. Similiter et Haroldum [1] regem se habere testantur: qui, ultimus de gente Saxonica rex in Anglia, publico apud Hastinges [2] bello cum Normannis congrediens, pœnas succumbendo perjurii luit; multisque,[3] ut aiunt, confossus vulneribus, oculoque sinistro sagitta perdito ac perforato,[4] ad partes istas victus evasit: ubi [5] sancta conversatione cujusdam urbis ecclesiæ jugis et assiduus contemplator adhærens, vitamque tanquam anachoriticam ducens, viæ ac vitæ cursum, ut creditur, feliciter consummavit. Ex utriusque, ut fertur, ultimi articuli confessione, veritas antea non comperta demum prodiit publicata.

And king Harold.

---

[1] *Haroldum*] D.; Haraldum, R. B. The tract *De Invent. S. Crucis*, &c., valuable in itself, and now all the more valuable because lately edited by Professor Stubbs (Oxford, 1861), which narrates the foundation and early history of Waltham abbey, speaks of Harold's escape from the battle of Hastings, and subsequent death at Chester, as a mere fable. After relating the bringing of Harold's body to Waltham, and its burial there, it adds: "Ubi usque hodie, quicquid fabu-"lentur homines quod in rupe "manserit Doroberniæ et nuper "defunctus sepultus sit Cestriæ, "pro certo quiescit" (p. 30, bottom). Ailred of Rievaulx says that Harold "aut misere occubuit, aut, "ut quidam putant, pœnitentiæ tan-"tum reservatus evasit" (Twysden, 394, 40), without any mention of Chester. Higden (2342, 61) quotes the statement of Giraldus, but puts little faith in it; adding that Harold is said to have spent his last days, as an anchorite, in the cell of St. James, near St. John's church. Brompton has nearly the same, with the addition that his tomb was still to be seen in St. John's church (961, 40). See Professor Stubbs' note (90) to *De Invent. S. Cruc.*, 30. For a most interesting, very able, and thorough disquisition on the subject of Harold's death and burial-place, see a paper by E. A. Freeman, Esq., on Waltham abbey, in vol. ii. of the *Essex Archæological Society's Proceedings*.

[2] *Hastinges*] D.; Hestinges, R. B.

[3] *multisque*] R. B. Hc., &c.; Multis itaque, D.

[4] *ac perforato*] D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden.

[5] *ubi . . . consummavit*] Hc. D. Rd., and Camden nearly; et eremitica solitudine vitam ibidem terminavit, R. B.

Vidimus hic quod [1] in oculis nostris novum apparuit, casеos scilicet [2] cervinos. Comitissa namque, et comitis mater, cervas habens domesticas, ex earundem lacte coagulato tres caseos [modicos] [3] expressos et fiscella formatos archiepiscopo præsentavit.

Cheese from deer's milk.

Eisdem quoque finibus, his nostris diebus, visa est vacca cervina. "Ad vaccam enim cervus accesserat; unde "et vacca cervina processit. Parte enim anteriore tota usque "ad inguina bos erat, coxas subinde cum cauda, et tibias, et "pedes, expresse cum pilositate et colore cervinos habens. "Sed quia plus pecoris quam feræ præferebat, inter armenta "resedit."

The half-deer cow: Top. Hib. vol. v. 109. 107 b.

Contigit eisdem in partibus, nostris quoque temporibus, canem, ex simia prægnantem, catulos tandem produxisse, parte anteriore tota simiam præferentes, in canem vero versus posteriora descendentes. Quos cum aulæ militaris custos rusticus intueretur, prodigiorum novitate stupescens, et tam deformes biformis naturæ formas abhorrens, baculo quem manu gestabat, non absque damno proprio, et domini, re comperta, indignatione quamplurima, cunctos statim interemit.

The half-ape dogs.

Visa est [4] et in urbe Cestrensi nostris diebus mulier manca, manibusque carens a nativitate; cui tamen contra defectum istum tale natura remedium dederat, ut pedes tam flexibiles, tamque [5] delicaciter articulatos haberet, quod articulorum proceritate pariter et flexibilitate, non minus subtiliter quam aliæ mulieres acu suere consueverit. Et quicquid filo ac forfice manibus fieri solet, citra defectum omnem, cum intuentium admiratione pedibus ista compleret.

The handless woman, a good sempstress with her feet.

---

[1] *quod*] D. Rd., Camden; quod et, R. B. Hc.

[2] *scilicet*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

[3] *modicos*] Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. D.

[4] *Visa est, &c.*] This last section in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[5] *tamque*] D.; tam, Hc. Rd., Camden.

[Cap. XII.]

De transitu per Album monasterium et Oswaldestreo;[1] *Powisiam quoque et Slopesburiam; cum notabilibus suis.*

After Easter, progress to Whitchurch and Oswestry.

Hic itaque Paschali festo debita solemnitate completo, multis quoque ad archiepiscopi monita crucesignatis, versus Album monasterium iter aggressi sumus: et inde versus Oswaldestreo: ubi, tanquam in ipsa regionis Powisiensis ora, occurrerunt nobis Powisiæ principes, Griphinus Madoci filius, Elisset,[2] et alii, cum populo terræ suæ. Ubi nonnullis ad crucem allectis,—ab episcopo namque[3] loci illius Reynerio multitudo fuerat ante signata,—a Griphino quoque terræ illius principe consobrina sua, Angharat[4] scilicet Oenei principis filia, quam, publico gentis illius vitio, diu pro uxore tenuerat, coram archipræsule palam abjurata, apud Oswaldestroe, id est, Oswaldi arborem,[5] pernoc-
108. tavimus; a Guillelmo Alani filio, juvene nobili ac liberali, ad importunam ejusdem instantiam, Anglicanæ sumptuositatis more splendide nimis et laute procurati.

Acciderat autem his in partibus paulo ante, Reinerio episcopo crucem prædicante, juvenem quemdam pervalidum, cum a sociis crucesignatis ad ejusdem signi susceptionem cum instantia magna verbis suasoriis invitaretur, demum respondisse; "Priusquam," inquit, "domini mei mortem hac lancea quam manu gesto "vindicavero, monitis non acquiescam;" Oeneum significans[6] Madoci filium, virum egregium, ab Oeneo

[1] *Oswaldestreo*] D.; Oswaldestroe, R. B. And so afterwards.

[2] *Elisset*] B. D.; Eliset, R. F.

[3] *namque*] R. B. Hc., &c.; enim, D.

[4] *Angharat*] D.; Angharet, R. B.

[5] *id est, Osw. arborem*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[6] *significans*] R. B. Hc., &c.; signans, D. According to the *Brut*, Owain ab Madog was treacherously slain in 1186, not by Owain Cyveiliog himself, but by his two sons Gwenwynwyn and Cadwallon.

de Keveiliauc[1] consobrino suo dolose nuper et scelerose peremptum. Et inter loquendum,[2] cum ira vindice defervens lanceam fortiter excuteret, ipsa forte, ex utraque manus excutientis parte confracta, statim in terram decidit; tantum trunculo quem manu claudebat ei remanente. Quo prognostico perterritus plurimum[3] et consternatus, tanquam certissimo crucis suscipiendæ signo provocatus, crucem illico sponte suscepit.

In hac tertia Gualliæ portione, quæ Powisia dicitur, sunt equitia peroptima; et equi emissarii laudatissimi, de Hispaniensium[4] equorum generositate, quos olim comes Slopesburiæ Robertus de Beleme in fines istos adduci curaverat, originaliter propagati. Unde et qui hinc exeunt equi, cum nobili formæ pictura, ipsa protrahente natura, tam membrosa sui[5] majestate, quam incomparabili velocitate, valde commendabiles[6] reperiuntur.

The horses of Powys, from Spanish horses imported by Robert de Belesme.

Hic Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, cum expeditione, quanquam inutili, sumptuosa tamen et nobili, nostris temporibus Powisiam intravit. Ubi demembratis solum obsidibus, quos antea susceperat, subita et inopinata pluvialium aquarum inundatione frustra reverti compulsus est. Die namque[7] præcedente Anglicani exercitus satrapæ Walensium ecclesias aliquot, cum villis et cœmeteriis, igne apposito combusserunt. Unde et Oenei magni filii, cum expedita exercitus juventute, patrem aliosque principes suos super hoc acriter convenerunt, dicentes et asserentes se Anglo-

Henry II.'s expedition into Powys, A.D. 1165.

---

[1] *Keveiliauc*] D.; Keveilaut, R. B.

[2] *loquendum*] D. Rd., Camden; loquendo, R. B. Hc.

[3] *plurimum*] R. B. Hc., &c.; multum, D.

[4] *de Hispan . . . propagati*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. Robt. de Belesme became earl of Shrewsbury on the death of earl Hugh his brother in 1098 (*supra*, 129). See *Ord. Vit.* x. 7.

[5] *sui*] D. Rd.; sua, R. B. Hc., Camden.

[6] *commendabiles*] R. B. Hc. Rd.; commemorabiles, D., Camden.

[7] *Die namque, &c.*] Hence to end of the section, "ultionem," in Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

108 b. rum ecclesiis de cetero nullatenus deferre velle. Cumque totus propemodum populus[1] in hoc communiter assentiret, solus Oeneus, ut erat vir in gente sua moderantiæ magnæ et sapientiæ, sedato tumultu, demum in hujusmodi verba prorupit; "Mea quidem "in hanc sententiam non concordat opinio; gratulari "namque potius ob hoc et gaudere debemus, quia "cum Anglis, nisi divino fulciamur auxilio, longe "impares viribus[2] sumus, ipsi in hoc facto Deos quo-"que, qui et se et nos potenter vindicare prævalent, "inimicos constituere. Proinde et devote Domino "compromittamus, nos ecclesiis amodo locisque sacris "majorem solito reverentiam exhibituros et honorem." Quo facto, præscriptam nocte sequente divinitus emissam sensit Anglorum exercitus ultionem.

Owain Gwynedd.

Progressi sumus inde versus Slopesburiam, a Sabrinæ fluvio complexam: ubi et diebus aliquot recreandi respirandique gratia perendinavimus. Et tam ad archiepiscopi monita, quam gratiosos quoque archidiaconi Menevensis sermones, ad crucis obsequia multos alleximus. Oeneum quoque de Keveiliauc, quia solus inter Gualliæ principes archipræsuli cum populo suo non occurrerat, excommunicavimus.

Progress to, and stay at Shrewsbury. Giraldus's gracious sermons.

Oeneus iste, præ aliis Kambriæ principibus, et linguæ dicacis extiterat, et in terræ suæ moderamine ingenii perspicacis. Hic cum Anglorum rege Henrico secundo, quoniam primatibus gentis suæ viris semper fere contrarius esse, regique fidelius adhærere videbatur, familiaritatem contraxerat plurimam. Unde et aliquando cum rege apud Slopesburiam in mensa sedens, cum ei de panibus propriis unum, in honoris, ut assolet,[3] et amoris signum rex misisset, ipse statim

Owain Cyveiliog.

---

[1] *populus*] D. Rd.; exercitus, Hc., Camden,

[2] *viribus*] D. Rd.; Not in Hc., Camden.

[3] *ut assolet*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

in regio conspectu elemosynaria panem in frusta concidit; et elemosynarum more primo remotius exposita, deinde singulatim[1] retracta, comedit universa. Cujus rei rationem cum rex requisisset, respondens Oeneus sub risus modici[2] simulatione; "Domino," inquit, "meo morem in hoc gero:" subtiliter et acute in regem, qui ecclesiasticos honores vacantes diutius in 109.
manu tenere consueverat, ambitus et avaritiæ notam intorquens.

Other eminent Welsh princes of these times.

Notandum[3] hic quoque, quia tres viri tantum nostris diebus, in tribus Gualliæ partibus, justitia, prudentia, principalisque modestia regiminis emicuere; Oeneus Griphini filii Canani filius, in Venedotia; Meredutius nepos ejusdem, filius Griphini, quem fata festina surripuere, in Sudwallia; Oeneus iste de Keveiliauc, in Powisia. Duo vero largitatis eximiæ prærogativa enituere; Kadwaladrus filius Griphini in Venedotia, et Griphinus de Bromfeld, filius Madoci, in Powisia. Resus autem Griphini filius, in Sudwallia, liberalitate et animositate laudem meruit. In Venedotia vero David Oenei filius, et in Sudwallia, finibus de Morgannoc, Hoelus filius Ierverth de urbe Legionum, æqua se inter Kambros et Anglos trutina librantes, fidem integram et opinionem servaverunt.

---

[1] *singulatim*] R. B. Hc., &c.; singillatim, D.

[2] *modici*] Hc. D., Camden; Rd. corrupt; modio, R. B., and F. originally; modica, F. by alteration.

[3] *Notandum, &c.*] This last section of the chapter in D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc.

[Cap. XIII.]

De transitu per Gueneloc et Bromfeld,[1] castellum de Ludelawe, et Leonis monasterium, usque Herefordiam.[2]

Progress to Wenlock.

Profecti sumus inde [3] versus Gueneloch, per arctam viam et præruptam, quam Malam plateam vocant. Hic autem contigit nostris diebus, Judæo quodam cum archidiacono loci ejusdem, cui cognomen Peccatum, et decano cui agnomen [4] Diabolus, versus Slopesburiam iter agente, cum archidiacono forte referente audiret [5] archidiaconatum suum ab hoc loco qui Mala platea dicitur incipere, et usque ad Malum passum versus Cestriam durare, considerans et colligens [6] quoque tam archidiaconi cognomen quam et decani agnomen, lepide satis et facete subjecit; "Mirum," inquit, "si ab hac unquam patria me mea sors reducat incolumem, cujus quippe Peccatum archidiaconus, Diabolus "decanus, archidiaconatus vero Mala platea introitus, "et Malus passus exitus."

109 b.

Thence by Bromfield, Ludlow, and Leominster, to Hereford.

Transivimus autem a Gueneloch per cellulam de Brumfeld, per nobile castrum de Ludlawe, per Leonis monasterium, usque Herefordiam; Mailenyth et Elvail [7] a dextra relictis; a puncto quo per Gualliam laboriosum hoc iter arripuimus, tanquam in circino circueundo, ad punctum denuo jam reversi.

---

[1] *Gueneloc et Bromfeld*] D.; Gueneloch et Brumfeld, R. B.

[2] "Cum notabilibus suis" is here added in R. F. only.

[3] *inde*] D., Camden; abinde, R. B. Hc. Rd.

[4] *agnomen*] R. B. D. Rd.; nomen, Hc., Camden. Richard Peche, or Peccatum, was archdeacon of Salop about 1180 and 1190 (Hardy's *Le Neve*, i. 573). The list of deans about this time is very imperfect. The dean in question was probably a Dayville, or De Eyville, the name of a family of considerable note.

[5] *audiret*] Hc. D., Camden; audierat, R. B.

[6] *colligens*] So the MSS.; intelligens, Camden.

[7] *Mailenyth et Elvail*] D.; Melenit et Elevel, R. B.

In hujus itaque legationis longo laudabilique labore, circiter tria virorum millia crucis signaculo sunt insignita, lanceis et sagittis expeditissima, martiisque negotiis exercitatissima, solam cum hostibus fidei congrediendi moram communiter accusantia; fructuose quidem Christi obsequiis ac feliciter obligata, si salutiferæ crucis expeditio[1] tam expedite fuisset, tantaque maturatione profecta, quanta fuerat tam diligentia quam devotione collecta.

Number of those who took the cross during this progress.

Porro, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam injusto, imperatori Romano viæ, regibusque nostris discordiæ data sunt impedimenta; regi Siculo, qui præ cunctis terræ regibus terram sacram annonis et alimentis in tantæ desolationis articulo sustentabat, mors inopinata et intempestiva; et mortis sequela, [principum][2] nostrorum gravis ob regni jura decertatio, et publicæ stratæ disturbatio; gravissima fidelium populi, transmarinis interea partibus fame et inedia miserabiliter afflicti, medios inter hostes expectatio.

Impediments to the Crusade.

Verumtamen, ut intellectum forte præbeat vexatio, ut aurum igne probetur, et virtus in infirmitate firmetur, hæc accidere permittuntur. "Adversitas" quippe, Gregorio testante, "quæ bonis votis objicitur, "probatio virtutis est, non judicium reprobationis. "Quis enim nesciat quam prosperum fuit quod Paulus "ad Italias vergebat? Et tamen vehemens naufragium pertulit. Sed navis cordis in maris fluctibus "integra stetit."

S. Greg. Mag. Epist. ix. 122. (Migne, iii. 1053.)

---

[1] *expeditio*] Hc. D., &c.; expeditior, R. B.

[2] *principum*] Not in R. B. Hc. D. In Rd., Camden.

[Cap. XIV.]

Descriptio Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Baldewini.[1]

Description of archbishop Baldwin. Ejus autem, cujus legationis insignia, et quasi peregrinationis sanctæ præludia, succincta brevitate prælibavimus, tam interioris hominis quam exterioris proprietatem exprimere, præter rem ne putetur.[2]

110. Erat igitur vir fuscus, vultu simplici ac venusto, statura modica, pro corporis captu habitudine bona, ad tenuitatem tamen quam ad corpulentiam magis accommoda. Erat enim vir modestus ac sobrius, vir abstinentiæ magnæ, et continentiæ tantæ ut vix unquam in ipsum quicquam sinistrum ausa fuisset fama præsumere, vir sermone parcus, iracundia serus, cunctis propemodum naturæ motibus [vel dotibus][3]
Jac. i. 19. temperatus. Erat quippe "Velox ad audiendum, tar- "dus ad loquendum, et tardus ad iram." Literarum[4] studiis a puerilibus annis affatim imbutus, et jugum Domini ab adolescentia portans, moribus et vita eminens in populo lucerna fuit. Unde et[5] archilevitæ quem canonice adeptus fuerat[5] cedens honorem et sponte deserens, mundique pompas alta mente despiciens, Cisterciensis ordinis habitum sancta cum devotione suscepit. Et quoniam moribus olim plusquam monachus extiterat, infra anni terminum abbas effectus; et intra

---

[1] *Baldewini*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B. This chapter is placed, in Hc., after the first preface to the treatise, *supra*, 8.

[2] *ne putetur*] R. B. Hc., &c.; non putavi, D.

[3] *vel dotibus*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. It seems an unmeaning addition, and sounds vastly like an interpolation from a marginal note.

[4] *Literarum, &c.*] Most of what follows, hence to the end, is repeated in Cap. 29 of the *Vit. Remigii, &c.*, of our author; *Anglia Sacra*, ii. 430, &c.

[5] *Unde et*, and *quem canonice adeptus fuerat*] D., &c., and *Vit. Rem.* Not in R. B. Hc.

paucos postmodum annos in episcopum, deinde in archiepiscopum est sublimatus; tanquam super pauca fidelis inventus, et ob hoc supra multa constitutus.

Ceterum quoniam, ut ait Tullius, "Nihil simplici "in genere omni ex parte perfectum natura expolivit," innatæ benignitatis mansuetudinem, quam privatus exercuerat, in potestate non exuens, tanquam baculo sustentans, et non virga castigans, tanquam ubera dans matris, et non verbera patris, remissionis in publico gravi cum scandalo notam incurrit. Adeo nempe lenitatis in ipso tepor ac torpor pastoralem penitus rigorem absumpsit, ut melior monachus simplex quam abbas, melior abbas quam episcopus, melior episcopus quam archiepiscopus fuisse videretur. Unde et[1] eidem Urbanus papa quandoque scripsisse recolitur in hunc modum; "Urbanus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, "monacho ferventissimo, abbati calido, episcopo tepido, "archiepiscopo remisso, salutem, etc." Sane,[2] quoniam in Anglicanis finibus inter regnum et sacerdotium frequens esse solet altercatio et fere[3] continua, insulari tyrannide semper ingruente, tanto notabilior lenitatis hujus eminet excessus, quanto beatum Thomam ejusdem sedis antistitem, pro ecclesiæ libertate usque ad martyrii palmam dimicando, nostris diebus[4] constat gloriosius triumphasse. Quod itaque martyr insignis, pravas regni consuetudines in ecclesiam Dei pullulantes extirpando, multis prius allegatis, demum caput allegando feliciter evicit, hoc Ille, cujus occulta quidem judicia sed nunquam injusta, per martyris ejusdem primi successoris remissam liberalitatem, ne dicam

Cic. de Invent. Rhetor. ii. 3.

His kindness of heart, and too great lenity.

Pope Urban's rebuke to him.

110 b.

St. Thomas's triumph.

The victory lost by the remissness

[1] *Unde et . . . salutem*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in R. B. Hc. It is in *Vit. Rem.*, but in a different place.

[2] The rest of this section, *Sane . . . recuperandum*, in all the MSS., and in *Vit. Rem.*, is omitted in Camden.

[3] *fere*] R. B. D., &c.; quasi, Hc.

[4] *nostris diebus*] D. Rd., and *Vit. Rem.* Not in R. B. Hc.

of Richard and Baldwin, his successors.

ignaviam, recidivo jam morbo, redivivaque[1] malitia, quod non absque dolore dicendum vel audiendum, in ecclesiæ suæ damnum enorme, perditum ire permisit. Quod utique, secundi istius tempore, contra obstinatam nequitiam non lenitate, non patientia dissimulandum, sed rigore[2] potius et asperitate,[3] usque ad sanguinis etiam si opus fuisset effusionem, denuo fuerat recuperandum.

Death-bed dream of archbishop Richard, the first successor of S. Thomas.

Unde,[4] cum primus martyris ille successor morbo decumberet quo paulo post occubuit, noctu in somno vocem hanc terribilem cœlitus emissam audivit; "Dis-"sipasti ecclesiam meam, et ego eradicabo te de terra." Sed utinam de terra morientium, et non viventium, de terra quam terimus, non terra quam quærimus, de terra laboris et sudoris, non de terra dulcoris et decoris. Occulta[5] sunt ergo judicia Dei, sed nunquam injusta. Si talis enim martyri pontifex primo loco vel etiam secundo successisset, qui strenue defenderet quod sub tanto discrimine, capitisque periculo, sed felici commercio, vir sanctus evicit et viriliter obtinuit, pro carnali corona corrupta in terris incorruptibilem et immarcescibilem sumens in cœlis, Angliæ clerus, miserrime suppeditatus iterum et oppressus, continua debitaque libertate gauderet: quam quidem, nisi per sanguinis iterum pastoralis effusionem, vix ullo poterit tempore, tyrannica præcipue regnante prosapia, recuperare. Fructum itaque grandem hac spontanea quasi

---

[1] *redivivaque*] R. Hc. Rd. and *Vit. Rem.*; rediviva, B.; recidivaque, D.

[2] The *Vit. Rem.* has "cum" before "rigore."

[3] The *Vit. Rem.* has "austeritate."

[4] *Unde . . exagitetur*] This section in D. Rd. Not in R. B. Hc., Camden. The first part only, relating archbishop Richard's death-bed dream, is in the *Vit. Rem.* The whole section is repeated by our author in the *De Invectionibus* (vol. i. 144). Gervase describes archbishop Richard's dream more circumstantially (Twysden, 1465); Hoveden also mentions it (Savile, 355).

[5] *Occulta, &c.*] Rest of this section not in *Vit. Rem.*

jactura sibi divina providentia prævidit, ut creditur, in posterum eliciendum; quatinus ex pontificali denuo constantia, et consecutiva demum martyrii gloria, et fidelium devotio, jam quasi languescens et sopita, per miracula denuo resuscitetur; et fidei fervor, qui jam III. refrixerat,[1] ut igne caritatis reflammescat, signis recrebrescentibus et prodigiis tanquam follibus quibusdam et ventilabris exagitetur.

Inter primos[2] tamen martyris successor hic secundus, audita Salvatoris et salutiferæ crucis injuria, nostris proh dolor! diebus per Saladinum irrogata, crucesignatus, in ejusdem obsequiis, tam remotis finibus quam propinquis, prædicationis officium viriliter assumpsit. Et postmodum iter arripiens, navigioque fungens[3] apud Marsiliam, transcurso tandem pelagi profundo, in portu Tyrensi incolumis applicuit: et inde ad exercitum nostrum, [obsidentem pariter et obsessum],[4] Aconem[5] transivit. Ubi multos ex nostris inveniens, et fere cunctos, principum defectu, in summa desolatione jam positos et desperatione; alios quidem longa expectatione fatigatos, alios fame et inopia graviter afflictos,[6] quosdam vero aeris inclementia distemperatos; diem feliciter in terra sacra clausurus extremum, singulos pro posse vinculo caritatis amplectens, sumptibus et impensis, verbis et vitæ meritis, confirmavit. Cujus, cum universo fidelium cœtu, vias, vitas, et actus dirigat in veritate, et ad gloriam nominis sui, fideique palmam quam ipse plantavit, manus ipsorum ad præ-

Baldwin goes to the Holy Land.

His death at the siege of Acre (Nov. 19, 1190).

[1] *refrixerat*] D.; refriguerat, Rd.

[2] *Inter primos . . . hic secundus*] D. Rd., &c., and *Vit. Rem.*; Inter primos hic tamen, R. B. Hc.

[3] *fungens*] D. Rd., &c., and *Vit. Rem.*; fruens, R. B. Hc.

[4] *obsidentem pariter et obsessum*] In Rd. and Camden, only.

[5] *Aconem*] D.; Aconum, R.; Acoñ, B.; Acaronem, *Vit. Rem.*

[6] *graviter afflictos*] R. B. D., &c.; cruciatos, Hc.

lium doceat,[1] et digitos eorum ad bellum, Ille qui solus via, veritas est,[2] et vita; via sine offendiculo, veritas sine ambiguo, vita sine fine. Amen.[3]

Explicit[4] *Itinerarium Giraldi.*

---

[1] *doceat*] R. B. Hc. D., Camden; docere dignetur, Rd.

[2] *est*] Hc. D., &c. Not in R. B.

[3] *Amen*] D. Rd. Not in R. B Hc., Camden.

[4] *Explicit, &c.*] D. Not in R. B. Hc., &c.

GIRALDI CAMBRENSIS

DESCRIPTIO KAMBRIÆ.

DESCRIPTIO KAMBRIÆ.

STEPHANO[1] CANTUARIENSI ARCHIEPISCOPO. IN KAMBRIÆ DESCRIPTIONE PRÆFATIO PRIMA. 111 b.

Ille ego, qui quondam *Hybernicam Topographiam*, cum abditis suis et naturæ secretis, in tribus distinctionibus triennii labore digessi; et *Vaticinalem Expugnationis Hybernicæ* subsequenter *Historiam*, duabus distinctionibus, biennali lucubratione complevi; quique, *Itinerarium* educens, laboriosam viri sancti per Walliæ fines legationem sub ignorantiæ tenebris perire non permisi; Kambriæ nostræ descriptionem, gentisque naturam, aliis alienam nationibus et valde diversam, hoc opusculo declarare, tibique, vir inclite, Stephane[2] Cantuariensis archiepiscope, quem religio pariter[3] et

Having formerly written the *Top. Hib.* and the *Exp. Hib.*; also, the *Itin. Kamb.*; Giraldus now purposes to write a Description of Kambria.

[1] *Stephano*] D., &c.; Huberto, V. N. In T., the MS. of the *Symb. Elect.* in Trin. Coll. Library, Cambridge, the heading of this preface is, "In Kambriæ descriptionem "præfatio prima" (vol. i. 394). The copy of the treatise, from which T. repeated this preface, as appears from the next note, was dedicated to bishop Hugh of Lincoln, Hugh of Burgundy, no doubt, who died in 1200.

[2] *Stephane*] D., &c.; Huberte, V. N.; Hugo Lincolniensis episcope, T.

[3] *quem religio pariter et literatura com.*] T. D., &c.; quem discretio pariter morumque venustas laudabilem reddunt, V., and N. but without "pariter." Compare the *Itin.*, *supra*, 7. The alteration, from the *discretion* and *polished manners* in the address to Hubert, to the *religion* and *learning* in that to St. Hugh and Stephen Langton, is worth remarking.

literatura commendat,[1] sicut *Itinerarium* olim,[2] sic præsentem quoque diligentiæ nostræ laborem vestræ sanctitati destinare disposui, quanquam tanto forte[3] viro munus indignum, digno tamen[4] cui digna donentur præsentatum.

Objections to his employing his talents on such unworthy subjects.

Objiciunt autem nonnulli, et sub dilectionis specie me pictori assimilant; qui pretiosis abundans coloribus, et tanquam Zeusis alter arte[5] præcellens, ubi palatium insigne aut templum depingere cum multa expectatione sperabatur, tugurium aliquod, seu vile quodcunque in sui natura despectumque, tanto artificio tantisque sumptibus illustrare contendit. Sic etenim inter tantas tam illustres mundi materias, me finales hos terrarum angulos, Hyberniam scilicet, Kambriam, [et][6] Britanniam, literis extollere, rhetoricisque coloribus insignire velle mirantur.

That his gifts of grace ought to be devoted to higher and better studies.

Præterea dicunt alii, et acutius obloquuntur, collatam desuper gratiam non in infimis istis evacuandam; nec in principum laudes vana lucubratione consumendam, qui hodie, nec literati nec largi, gloriosa literarum studia nec remunerare norunt nec laudare; quinimmo, quod de sursum illabitur[7] potius ad superna referri, et ejus ad gloriam cuncta converti debere, de cujus plenitudine id totum accepimus, ejusque summopere laudibus
Jac. i. 17. inservire, a quo "Omne datum optimum[8] et omne "donum perfectum" tanquam ab indeficienti fonte
112. descendit, cui vere nunquam ingrato nihil unquam oblatum transire potest[9] irremuneratum.

---

[1] *commendat*] D. Rd.; commendant, T., Camden, and *Itin.*, *supra*, 7.

[2] *olim*] D., &c.; ante, V. N. T.

[3] *forte*] V. N. T. Rd., Camden; fore, D.

[4] *tamen*] V. N. T., &c.; inde, D.

[5] *arte*] V. D. Rd. Not in N., Camden.

[6] *et*] Not in T. D. Rd. In V. N. Camden has "et Cambriam," without *Britanniam*.

[7] *illabitur*] V. N. T., &c. D. has "elabitur" in text, but corrected by "illabitur" in margin.

[8] *omne datum optimum*] V. N. T. D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[9] *transire potest*] V. N. T. D.; transire (only), Rd.; transit, Camden.

Sed quoniam nobiles aliarum regionum historiæ, egregiis olim editæ scriptoribus, in lucem prodiere, nos, ob patriæ favorem et posteritatis, finium nostrorum abdita quidem[1] evolvere,[2] et inclite gesta, necdum tamen in memoriam luculento labore digesta, tenebris exuere, humilemque stilo materiam efferre, nec inutile quidem nec illaudabile reputavimus. Trojano[3] excidio, Thebis, et Athenis, Lavinisque litoribus, impar et inculta quid addere posset opera nostra? Quoniam igitur actum agere quasi nihil agentis opus existeret, malui potius et longe præelegi pauperes finium nostrorum historias, ab aliis hactenus omnino fere relictas, industria nostra parentibus et patriæ non ingrata[4] declarare; et sic postmodum ad majora pedetentim et paulatim anhelare.

Giraldus's reasons for his choice of subjects.

Et ut ex minoribus utcunque liqueat istis, quemadmodum majores, cum sors materias obtulerit, noster valeat stilus explicare.

Ad hæc etiam, quia quædam agenda sunt, et alia non prætermittenda, rudis adhuc[5] viridisque juventæ conamina licuit in istis[6] exerceri, ne sub otio penitus, et delicti fomite[7] desidia, tempora transierint[8] dulciora.

Hæc igitur, quasi præludia quædam, ad inclitos scientiæ scientiarum[9] thesauros, quæ sola scit scire, sola scientes facere hominem tam regere quam imbuere,

---

[1] *quidem*] So the MSS.; quædam, Camden.

[2] *evolvere*] V. N. T. D., Camden; enucleare, Rd.

[3] After *Trojano*, Rd. and Camden have "nimirum."

[4] *ingrata*] So the MSS.; ingratas, Camden.

[5] *rudis adhuc viridisque*] T. D., &c.; rudisque adhuc et viridis, V. N.

[6] After *istis*, Rd. and Camden have "et similibus."

[7] *fomite*] So the MSS.; fonte, Camden.

[8] *transierint*] V. N. T. D.; transirent, Rd.; transeant, Camden.

[9] Giraldus is adapting from a passage of Gregory Nazianzen. The Greek is (*Orat. I., Apologet.* 8 C., ed. Cologne, 1690): Τῷ ὄντι γὰρ ἄυτη μοι φαίνεται τέχνη τις εἶναι τεχνῶν, καὶ ἐπιστήμη ἐπιστήμων, ἄνθρωπον ἄγειν, τὸ πολυτροπώτατον τῶν ζώων καὶ ποικιλώτατον. See vol. i. 272, where Giraldus quotes the passage more fully.

quasi præambula prælibavimus: quam solam facultates aliæ tanquam pedissequæ reginam longe sequuntur, et vestigia semper adorant. In his itaque, tanto ædificio juvenilibus annis tuta struentes fundamenta, ad eximios tam maturæ tam sacræ scientiæ tractatus postmodum explicandos, maturiores annos, Deo duce, vitaque comite, reservavimus.[1] "Ardua quippe fides," ut ait poeta, "robustos exigit annos." In aliis itaque, gratia istius, moram facere fas est, sed moderatam; in hac vero non solum morari, verum etiam mori desiderabile.

Lucan, Phars. viii. 282.

His long promised 112 b. *De Instr. Princ.*; and his purposed Top. of Britain.

Porro ad hæc aggrediendum[2] inducias petimus, sed exiguas; donec, cum libello *De Principis Instructione* toties promisso, *Kambriæ* quam præ manibus habemus *Descriptio*, et *Britannica Topographia*, in publicam notitiam emanaverint.

Gildas the British writer whom Giraldus especially follows.

Præ aliis itaque Britanniæ scriptoribus, solus mihi Gildas, quoties eundem materiæ cursus obtulerit, imitabilis esse videtur. Qui[3] ea quæ vidit et ipse cognovit scripto commendans, excidiumque gentis suæ deplorans potius quam describens, veram magis historiam texuit quam ornatam.

Gildam itaque Giraldus sequitur. Quem utinam moribus et vita sequi posset; factus ejusdem plus sapientia quam eloquentia, plus animo quam calamo, plus zelo quam stilo, plus vita quam verbis imitator.

---

[1] *reservavimus*] So all the MSS.; Camden has "reservabimus."

[2] *aggrediendum*] V. N. T. D.; ingrediendum, Rd., Camden.

[3] *Qui*] V. N. T. D.; Quia, Rd., Camden.

INCIPIUNT[1] CAPITULA LIBRI GIRALDI KAMBRENSIS DE KAMBRIÆ DESCRIPTIONE.

---

[1] *Incipiunt . . . descriptione*] N. D. Rd. Not in V. The whole Table of chapters is omitted in Camden.

[2] *I. II., &c.*] D. Not in V. N. Rd.

[3] *totalis*] V. N., and D. *infra* at head of chapter; totius, D. here.

XIIII.—De verborum facetia et urbanitate.
113. XV.—De loquendi audacia et securitate.
XVI.—De divinatoribus in hac gente, et[1] quasi arreptitiis.
XVII.—De generositatis amore, et genealogia longe retenta.
XVIII.—De antiqua fidei fundatione, Christianitatis amore, et devotione.

Capitula[2] secundi libri.

I.—Secundus liber continet de inconstantia gentis hujus et instabilitate; fidei quoque, sacramentique reverentia nulla.
II.—Quod rapto[3] vivunt; et pacis amicitiæque fœdera non custodiunt.
III.—De martio conflictu invalido, turpique fuga et illaudabili.
IIII.—De ambitiosa terrarum occupatione; et inter fratres divisione.
V.—De gravi eorum exactione, et immoderantia.
VI.—De incestus crimine; ecclesiarum quoque per successiones et participes abusione.
VII.—De peccatis eorum; et tam Britanniæ quam Trojæ, meritis urgentibus, amissione.
VIII.—Qualiter gens ista sit expugnanda.
IX.—Qualiter, expugnata, sit gubernanda.
X.—Qualiter eadem resistere valeat; et rebellare.

---

[1] *et*] V. N. D.; nonnullis, Rd.
[2] *Cap. sec. libri*] D. Not in V. N. Rd.
[3] *rapto*] V. N. Rd., and D. *infra* at head of chapter; raptu, D. here.

PRÆFATIO SECUNDA. AD EUNDEM.[1]

Cum inter varia literarum studia ad historias scribendas studiosæ mentis aciem applicuerim, imprimis patriam, patriæque vicinas et conterminas ex industria regiones, ne natali ingratus solo viderer, pro ingenii modulo literis illustrare, et sic seriatim ad ulteriora simul[2] et utiliora, Deo duce, vitaque comite, quasi salutata primum patria transire disposui. Sed quoniam nonnulli viri magni, quos vidimus et novimus, quibus literæ nauseam creant, libros egregios eis oblatos statim in scriniis recondere, et tanquam perpetuo carceri tradere et retrudere[3] solent, a te, vir optime, cui præsens opusculum transmitti deproperat, petitum, si placet, et impetratum esse cupio; quatinus hæc nostræ diligentiæ monumenta, sicut et priora vobis[4] exarata, quanquam in se modica, aliquando tamen et aliquibus forsan accepta futura, tenebris involvi quæ lucem desiderant non permittas; sed ea potius, quæ publicata pulchrius elucescent,[5] voce liberali ac libera jubeas in commune deduci. Pretium quippe[6] laboris et præmium reputem, si, sopitis interdum orationum

Giraldus, having given his mind to writing history, will not neglect his own country.

To some great men literature nauseous.

Giraldus hopes for encouragement from those to whom he dedicates his works.

113 b.

Only wants his works to be read.

[1] *Præfatio . . . eundem*] D. Rd., Camden; "Ad eundem" only in V. N. The heading in T. is, "In "Kambriæ descriptionem præfatio "secunda;" vol. i. 394.

[2] *simul et utiliora*] V. N. T. D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *retrudere*] T. D. Rd., Camden; recondere, V.; rescindere, N.

[4] *vobis*] T. D. Rd.; nobis, N.; doubtful in V. Camden has "a "nobis."

[5] *elucescent*] T. D.; elucescunt, V. N., Camden; elucescant, Rd.

[6] *quippe*] V. N. T. Rd., Camden; quidem, D.

instantiis et occupationum curis, vel oculos ad hæc quandoque legendum, vel saltem aures ad audiendum[1] accommodes. Nec enim aliam a vobis, cum hodie scripta nemo remuneret, vel expeto, vel exspecto retributionem. Quanquam rationi tamen id dissonum minime foret, nisi a magnatibus hodie quasi conjuratio in auctores facta fuisset, si ille, qui tot virtutibus, et tam industriæ quam naturæ dotibus, moribus electis et munificentiis, his nostris diebus longe præeminet et præcellit, et in hac virtute, ab aliis omnibus derelicta dudum et destituta, se quoque spectabilem et quasi singularem exhiberet.

Desires and expects no remuneration, however right this might be.

Ille, inquam, ut brevi eloquio laudis ad cumulum multa concludam, cui versus illi Marcialis ad Trajanum sub Diocliciano militantem[2] digne poterunt adaptari,

Epigram. xii. 6, 11.

"Laudari debes,[3] quoniam sub principe duro,
"Temporibusque malis, ausus es esse bonus;"

et illi Maronis ad Mecenatem, principis mansuetudinem declarantes,

"Omnia[4] cum posses, tanto tam clarus amico,
"Te sensit nemo posse nocere tamen."

Objections of his friends to his devotion to literature.

"Ad hæc[5] autem objiciunt multi, et hi præsertim qui "dicuntur amici, ob studii vehementiam[6] me rebus seculari-"bus negotiisque familiaribus minus intentum, et ob hoc "segnius in mundanæ dignitatis gradibus provehendum;

---

[1] *ad audiendum*] V. N. T. D. Not in Rd. Camden has instead, "attente."

[2] *militantem*] T. D. Rd.; adhuc militantem, V. N.

[3] Martial has:
"Nunc licet, et fas est; sed tu
"cum principe duro,
"Temporibusque malis, ausus es
"esse bonus."

[4] In Scaliger's *Catalecta Virgilii* (ed. 1617, p. 95), these lines are in "C. Pedonis Albinovani in Mæ-"cenatis obitum Elegeia," where "carus," instead of *clarus*, in the first line.

[5] *Ad hæc, &c.*] The rest of this preface, with the exception of a quotation from Horace, has already appeared, all but word for word, as the latter portion of the first preface to *Exp. Hib.* (vol. v. 211, &c.).

[6] *vehementiam*] T. D., &c., and *Exp. Hib.*; reverentiam, V. N.

"auctorum olim tam historicorum quam poeticorum auctoritatem in desuetudinem abiisse; literarum honorem cum literatis principibus præteriisse; aliis hodie viis ad honorem perveniri. Fateor hæc, equidem[1] fateor; et facile veris acquiesco. Sequuntur enim principes improbi, curiam cupidi, codices[2] et pixides ambitiosi. Sed quoniam,

'Trahit sua quemque voluptas,' Virg. Ecl. ii. 65.

"me literarum a pueritia traxit amor, et tanquam deliciarum omnium caput literatæ studium delectat eloquentiæ. Hoc itaque præditus voto, supra coætaneos multos scrutabunda tam naturalium[3] cursus rerum quam excursus inquisitione profeci; et posteritati consulens, inclita nostri temporis acta sub silentio perire non permisi. Giraldus's love of literature: 114. and proficiency.

"Nec ista tamen absque labore complentur plurimo, sed jocundo. Difficilis namque est tam[4] certa rerum singularum[5] indagatio; difficilis inquisitæ simul et exquisitæ veritatis ordinata dispositio; et ab initiali puncto finalem ad usque,[6] non discrepante materia, recta per medium funis extentio. Difficilis quoque, quatinus tam verbis quam sententiis scintillet oratio, ornati sermonis elocutio: quippe cum ad explicandam memorandorum seriem, non minus interdum[7] elegantium verborum torqueat electio quam vexet[8] inventio. Tanto namque propensiore opus est opera, tantoque singula prius elimanda videntur quam eliminanda, quanto scripto commendata se oculis multorum subjicere Labour attending it. This necessary, because writings

[1] *equidem*] After this word, V. and N. proceed, "pascor deliciis et "reficior," &c., as *infra*, 164, l. 22. They are followed by a number of late MSS. Rd. is the only late MS. I have seen, which gives this preface complete, as in T. D. In all, however, the portion here missing is found in the middle of Cap. 7, Lib. ii. *infra*, with no hint of disconnection. As will be seen hereafter, under Cap. 8, V. and N., followed by the same late MSS., have another and a very large omission, which is not found elsewhere, as with this smaller omission. They must have been derived from some earlier MS., one leaf of which in this preface had somehow got misplaced into the middle of Lib. ii., and which had also altogether lost several leaves afterwards of Lib. i.

[2] *codices*] V. N. T. D., and *Exp. Hib.*; codices clerici, Rd., Camden.

[3] *naturalium . . . excursus*] Instead of this the *Exp. Hib.* has, "cursuum naturæ quam excur-"suum."

[4] *tam*] V. N. T. D. and *Exp. Hib.* Not in Rd., Camden.

[5] *singularum*] V. N. T., &c.; singularium, D.

[6] After *usque*, Rd. and Camden have "terminum."

[7] *interdum*] T. D. Rd., Camden. Not in V. N., *Exp. Hib.*

[8] *vexet*] T. D. Rd.; vexat, V. N., Camden, and *Exp. Hib.*

(*are not only for present eyes.*) "non formidant, nec solum præsentibus sed futuris, argutorum simul subitura judicium et offensorum. Verba nimirum emissa, quia statim evolant et evanescunt, nec laudis eorum memoria nec vituperii diuturna. Scripta vero, quoniam edita semel et publicata non prætereunt, ad auctoris sui permanentem vel gloriam extant vel ignominiam. Quoniam, ut ait Seneca,[1] (*Sidon. Apoll. Ep. iii. 14.*) 'Lividi lectoris malitia dictionem 'sanam et insanam pari revolvit appetitu; non amplius 'concupiscens electa quæ laudet, quam despecta quæ 'rideat.'" Unde[2] poeta:

(*Hor. 2 Ep. i. 262.*)
"Discit enim citius, meminitque libentius illud,
"Quod quis deridet, quam quod probat et vene-
"ratur."

"Igitur inter studia laude dignissima, hujus quoque studii laus non ultima. (*Cic. de Oratore, ii. 9.*) 'Historia namque,' ut ait Seneca,[3] est 'antiquitatis auctoritas, testis temporum, lux veritatis, vita 'memoriæ, magistra vitæ,[4] nuntia vetustatis.'

(*Especial delight in this labour.*) "Tanto denique labor hic delectabilior, quanto dignius quam aliena recitare recitanda proferre, quanto appetibilius ab aliis eligi quam bonus aliorum elector videri, quanto laudabilius digne ab aliis in laudem efferri quam dignus
114 b. aliorum laudator haberi. His itaque pascor deliciis, et reficior; Ieronimo malens similis esse quam Creso, longeque plus opibus cunctis opum approbans contemptorem. His gratulor divitiis[5] et delector; semper intemperantiæ modestiam, semper honestam superfluitati præferens sufficientiam. Et quoniam illa pereunt, ista perire non possunt, illa transeunt, ista cum æternitate contendunt, semper lucro laudem, semper gazis gloriam anteponens."

---

[1] This quotation is in Sidonius Apollinaris. See vol. v. 213, n. 2.

[2] *Unde . . veneratur*] T. D. Rd., Camden. Not in V. N. or *Exp. Hib.*

[3] *ut ait Seneca*] D.; ut ait moralis ille philosophus, Rd., Camden. It is not at all in V. N. T., *Exp. Hib.* The passage is from Cicero.

[4] *magistra vitæ*] This omitted in T.

[5] *divitiis*] V. N. D.; deliciis, T. Rd., Camden. Both readings are also in MSS. of the *Exp. Hib.*

[Cap. I.][1]

De longitudine Kambriæ, et latitudine; qualitate ejusdem, [æqualitate],[2] et inæqualitate.

Kambria, quæ adulterino vocabulo, usitatoque magis sed proprio minus, modernis diebus Wallia dicitur, ducenta milia passuum in longum, circiter vero centum milia in latum habet. Longitudo namque, a portu Yoiger[3] in Monia usque ad portum Eskewin in Winta, quasi per octo dietas extenditur: latitudo vero, a Porthmaur Meneviæ, id est Portu magno, usque Ridhelic,[4] quod Britannice[5] Vadum salicis, Anglice vero nunc Wiliford[6] dicitur, quasi per quatuor dietas expanditur. Montibus excelsis, vallibus imis, silvis immensis, aquis et paludibus, terra munitissima: adeo ut a tempore quo Saxones primum insulam occupaverant, reliquiæ Britonum, qui in has partes secesserunt, nec ab Anglis olim, nec a Normannis postmodum, expugnari ad plenum prævaluissent.[7] Illi vero qui ad australem angulum, qui a ducis Corinei nomine nomen accepit, se susceperunt, quia terra tam munita non est, adeo rebelles esse non valuerunt. Tertia namque

Kambria, improperly called Wales: its length and breadth.

Its mountains, forests, &c.; strongholds against the English and Normans.

The Britons of Cornwall;

---

[1] *Cap. I., Cap. II., &c.*] No numbering is given to the chapters in any MS., I therefore enclose these in brackets. But, as we have just seen, there is numbering in the Table of chapters (*supra*, 159) in D., the only early MS. of this treatise that has come down to us. The same is the case in the *Itinerarium*, which, in the early MSS., has the numbering in the Table of chapters (*supra*, 9), but not to the chapters themselves afterwards. I ought to have mentioned this, but have not in my notes to the *Itinerarium*.

[2] *æqualitate*] Not in V. N. Rd., nor in D., in Table of chapters, *supra*, 159. In D. here.

[3] *Yoiger*] D. Rd.; Horger, V. N.; Gordber, Camden.

[4] *Ridhelic*] N. D.; Rid helig, V.; Rithelic, Rd.

[5] *Britannice*] So all the MSS.; Latine, Camden.

[6] *Wiliford*] V. N. D.; Weliford, Rd.; Wilowforde, Camden.

[7] *prævaluissent*] V. N. D.; potuissent, Rd., Camden.

and of Brittany.

Britonum extantium pars, quæ Armoricum australis Galliæ sinum obtinuit, non post Britannicum excidium, sed longe ante a Maximo[1] tyranno translata est: et post multos et graves, quos Britannica juventus cum ipso sustinuit, bellicos sudores, ultimis his Galliarum finibus imperiali munificentia est remunerata.

[Cap. II.]

De divisione Walliæ totalis in tres partes.

115. Wales divided into three parts; viz., North Wales, South Wales, and Powys.

Divisa est antiquitus Wallia totalis in tres partes tanquam æquales; plus equivalentiæ tamen, quam justæ quantitatis et proportionis habita consideratione; Venedotiam scilicet, quæ nunc Nortwallia, id est, Borealis Wallia dicitur; Sudwalliam, id est Australem Walliam, quæ Kambrice Deheubarth, id est, Dextralis pars dicitur; cujus etiam portio septem cantaredis est conserta Demetia;[2] et Powisiam, quasi mediam et orientalem.

By the three sons of Rhodri Mawr.

Divisionis autem hujus hæc causa suberat. Rothericus magnus, qui Britannice Rotheri Maur dicebatur, totique Walliæ præsidebat, tres filios habuerat,[3] Mervinum, Anaraut, et Cadelh. Hi tres totam inter se Walliam diviserunt. Mervino cessit Nortwallia, Anaraut Powisia, Cadelh vero, cum populi totius et fratrum benedictione, Sudwallia. Ipsa nimirum, quanquam quantitate longe major, propter nobiles tamen qui Kambrice Hucheilwer quasi superiores viri vocantur, quibus abundabat,[4] qui et dominis rebelles esse solebant, dominumque ferre detrectabant,[5] deterior esse

---

[1] *Maximo*] D.; Maximano, V. N.; Maximo rege, Rd., Camden.

[2] *Demetia*] D. Rd.; Demetiam, V. N. See *Itin., supra*, 93, l. 5. This section is strangely altered, and made nonsense of, in Camden.

[3] *habuerat*] So all the MSS.; habuit, Camden.

[4] *abundabat*] V. N. Rd., Camden; abundat, D.

[5] *detrectabant*] V. N., &c.; retrectabant, D.

videbatur. Cadelh autem, præmortuis fratribus, totius Walliæ demum monarchiam obtinuit; et successores sui similiter, usque ad Theodorum. Descendentes enim a Theodoro tantum Sudwalliam obtinuerunt, sicut et pater eorum: hi scilicet, Resus filius Theodori, Griphinus filius Resi, et Resus filius Griphini qui hodie præest.[1]

[Cap. III.]

De generatione principum Walliæ.

Hæc itaque est generatio principum Sudwalliæ: Resus filius Griphini, Griphinus filius Resi, Resus filius Theodori, Theodorus filius Cadelh, Cadelh filius Eneæ, Eneas filius Oenei, Oeneus filius Hoeli da, id est Hoeli boni, Hoelus filius Cadelh, Cadelh filius Roderici magni.

Genealogies of the princes of Wales.

De Cadelo igitur, filio Rotherici magni, descenderunt principes Sudwalliæ. De Mervino principes Nortwalliæ, in hunc modum; David[2] filius Oenei, Oeneus filius Griphini, Griphinus filius Canani, Cananus filius Iago, Iago filius Ythewal, Ythewal filius Meuric, Meuric filius Anaudrech, Anaudrech filius Mervini, 115 b.
Mervinus filius Rotherici magni.

De Anaraut autem generatio non provenit. Unde et principes Powisiæ suam habent per se generationem.

Hoc etiam[3] mihi notandum videtur, quod bardi Kambrenses, et cantores, seu recitatores, genealogiam habent prædictorum principum in libris eorum anti-

As preserved in the ancient books of the bards.

[1] *hodie præest*] V. N. D.; diebus nostris præfuit, Rd., Camden. Rhys ab Gruffudd died in 1197.

[2] *David filius Oenei*] V. N. D.; Leuelinus filius Iorwerth, Iorwerth filius Oenei, Rd., Camden. Llywelyn ab Iorwerth drove his uncle David from North Wales, and obtained the sovereignty, in 1194. See *Itin., supra*, 134.

[3] *etiam*] N., Camden; et, V.; tamen, D.; autem, Rd.

quis et authenticis, sed tamen Kambrice scriptam; eandemque memoriter tenent, a Rotherico magno usque ad beatam Virginem,[1] et inde usque ad Silvium, Ascanium, et Eneam; et ab Enea usque ad Adam generationem linealiter producunt. Sed quoniam tam longinqua, tam[2] remotissima generis enarratio, multis trutanica potius quam historica esse videretur, eam huic nostro compendio inserere ex industria supersedimus.

---

[1] *beatam Virginem*] So all the MSS. Powel makes out, in a note to this passage (Camden, 883), that Giraldus no doubt wrote B. M., *i.e.* Beli Mawr, or Belinus Magnus, from whom all the princely families of Wales traced their descent, and whose name, of very frequent occurrence, was often so contracted in the Welsh pedigrees; and that ignorant Mariolatrous scribes converted Giraldus's B. M. into "beatam Mariam," for which others afterwards wrote "beatam Virginem." All this sounds very like truth; but there are serious objections to it. In the first place, it is difficult to believe that so many Mariolatrous scribes could possibly have concurred in allowing their pens to multiply such blasphemy as that the blessed Ever-Virgin, the mother of God, was also the mother of a mere man. Moreover, the entire evidence of the MSS. of Giraldus is wholly against Powel's supposition: had I found a single instance, where a MS. even so far favoured it as to give "beatam Mariam" instead of "beatam Virginem," I should have felt far less difficulty in accepting his supposition; but in no MS. that I have examined,—and I have examined many more than those whose readings I record in my notes,—is the reading other than "beatam Virginem."

It seems to me that the true solution of the difficulty is perhaps this; viz., that "usque ad beatam Virginem" means simply, Up to the time of the blessed Virgin. And Giraldus's thus introducing her name was not at all unnatural, because, in some Welsh pedigrees, Beli Mawr is said to have had for wife Anna cousin of the blessed Virgin. In the pedigree of Owain, son of Howel the Good, in an 11th century MS. in the British Museum, his descent is traced to "Amalech, qui fuit Beli Magni filius; et Anna mater ejus, quæ dicitur esse consobrina Mariæ Virginis, matris Domini nostri Jesu Christi." *Annal. Camb.* preface, x.

[2] *tam*] V. N. D.; tamque, Rd., Camden.

[Cap. IV.]

Quot cantaredos Wallia contineat, quot curias principales, et quot sedes cathedrales.

Continet autem Sudwallia cantaredos viginti novem, Norwallia duodecim, Powisia sex: quorum tamen hodie tres[1] ab Anglis et Francis occupati sunt. Terra namque, quæ[2] Slopesburia dicitur, olim pars[3] Powisiæ fuerat. Unde et locus, ubi nunc castrum Slopesburiæ situm est, olim Penguern, id est Caput alneti vocabatur.

Number of cantrevs in Wales.

Tres etenim fuerant Walliæ totius curiæ principales,[4] Dynevur in Sudwallia; modernis diebus, antiquitus enim apud urbem Legionum erat; Aberfrau in Nordwallia; Penguern in Powisia. Est itaque numerus omnium cantaredorum totius Walliæ quinquaginta quatuor. Cantaredus autem, id est[5] Cantref, a Cant quod est *centum* et Tref *villa* composito vocabulo, tam Britannica quam Hybernica lingua dicitur tanta terræ portio, quanta centum villas continere solet.

The three royal courts of Wales.

Sunt autem in Wallia sedes cathedrales quatuor. In Sudwallia Menevensis, super Hybernicum mare; David archiepiscopo patrocinante. Hæc antiquitus metropolitana fuerat, et cantaredos continebat viginti quatuor; cum tamen hodie viginti tribus tantum contenta sit. Ergengel etenim, quæ et Anglice Urchenefeld dicitur, intra diocesim Menevensem olim aliquando, 116.
intra Landavensem quoque quandoque fuisse perhibetur. Habuerat[6] autem sedes Menevensis archiepiscopos *Supra*, 102;

The four cathedral sees. St. David's; formerly metropolitan.

[1] *tres*] So the MSS. Camden has "multi."

[2] *quæ*] D. Rd., Camden; quæ nunc, V. N.

[3] *pars*] V. N. D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[4] See *Itin.*, *supra*, 81, l. 1.

[5] *id est . . . villa*] D. Rd., Camden. Not in V. N. Compare *Itin. supra*, 127, l. 10.

[6] *Habuerat*] V. N. Rd., Camden; Habebat, D.

and vol. iii. 151. successive viginti tres:[1] sublato vero pallio, episcopos usque in hodiernum diem viginti quatuor. Quorum nomina et ordinem, causamque pallii sublati, si scire volueris, nostrum *Itinerarium* quæras. *Supra*, 103.

Llandaf. In eadem quoque australi Wallia sedes Landavensis; super mare Sabrinum, juxta nobile castrum de Kairdif; præsule Teliao præsidente; quinque continens cantaredos, et quartam partem unius, scilicet Seighenith.

Bangor. In Nortwallia, inter Moniam et montes Ereri sedes Bangorensis, Danielis abbatis patrocinio gaudens, cantaredos continens circiter novem.

Llanelwy, or St. Asaph. In eadem, paupercula cathedra Lanelvensis; cui et Powisia subest, Asaph episcopo præsidente; cantaredos continens quasi sex.

[Cap. V.]

De duobus montanis; a quibus aquæ nobiles[2] emanantes, Walliam egregie dividunt et distinguunt.

The two mountain ranges, whence rise the rivers of Wales. Scinditur autem et distinguitur aquis Wallia nobilibus, quæ ex montanis duobus originem habent; Elennyth scilicet in Sudwallia, quæ Angli Moruge vocant, quasi paludum cacumina; Ereri quoque in Nortwallia, quæ[3] Anglice Snaudune dicuntur, id est Nivium montes. Hæc tantæ quantitatis et capacitatis esse perhibentur, quod si cuncta totius Walliæ armenta in unum coacta fuerint, eis ad pascua multo tempore sufficere possent. In his etiam duo lacus illi esse perhibentur; quorum alterum insulam erraticam, alterum

The Snowdon lakes: *Itin. supra*, 135.

---

[1] *tres*] V. N. D. Rd., and 1st and 2nd editions of the *Itin.* (*supra*, 102, n. 3); "quinque" instead, in Camden and 3rd edition of the *Itin.*, and in the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 151).

[2] *nobiles*] V. N. Rd., Camden, and D. (*supra*, 159) in list of chapters. But here D. has "notabiles."

[3] *quæ*] D. Rd., Camden; qui, V. N.

autem pisces omnes monoculos certum est continere, sicut in *Itinerario* declaravimus.

"Notandum hic etiam quod in Albania quoque, duobus in "locis, uno ad mare orientale, altero ad occidentale, pisces "marini qui Mulvelli dicuntur monoculi reperiuntur; dextrum "similiter oculum habentes, et sinistro carentes." The one-eyed Scotch mullets: *ibid.*, 136.

De montanis igitur Elennyth nobilis emanat Sabrinæ fluvius, castrum Slopesburiæ complectens; deinde per nobile castrum Brugense, per urbem quoque Wigorniæ, per Gloverniam ferream atque fabrilem; sub qua paucis passuum milibus in mare descendit, quod et ab ejus quoque nomine Sabrinum mare nomen accepit. Hæc aqua, multis olim temporibus, inter Kambriam et Loegriam, hoc est inter Walliam et Angliam, marchia fuit. Hæc Britannice Haveren, a nomine puellæ, filiæ scilicet Locrini, ibi a noverca submersa, vocata est. Unde et Latine, mutatione aspirationis in S, ut in distortis a Græco in Latinum fieri solet, dicta est Sabrina. Sicut pro hal, sal; hemi, semi; hepta, septem. The river Severn; its course; 116 b. the ancient boundary of Wales and England. Origin of its name; Geoffrey, ii. 5.

Waiæ[1] fluvius, ab eisdem quoque montanis [de][2] Elennyth, per Haiæ castrum et Clifordiæ, per urbem Herefordiæ, per castellum de Wiltona et castellum Godricii discurrens, silvam quoque Danubiæ ferro fertilem atque ferina transpenetrando, usque ad[3] Strigulense castrum, sub quo et in mare dilabitur, et Angliam ibidem a Wallia separans modernis diebus marchiam facit. The river Wye; its course. The modern boundary of Wales and England.

Oscha[4] vero non ab Elennyth, sed a montanis de Cantrefbochan originem trahens, per principale castrum de Brecheniauc, quod Aberhotheni dicunt, id est Casum Hotheni, scilicet in Oscham; Aber enim Britannice dicitur locus omnis, ubi aqua in aquam cadit; per castrum de Abergevenni, per Oschæ castrum, per anti- The river Usk.

---

[1] *Waiæ*] D.; Vagæ, V. N. Rd.
[2] *de*] D. Not in V. N. Rd., Camden.
[3] *ad*] V. N. D. Not in Rd., Camden.
[4] *Oscha*] D.; Osca, V. N. Rd.

quam et authenticam Legionum urbem descendens, non procul a Novoburgo in Sabrinum mare demergitur.

The river Rhymni. Remni fluvius de montanis de Brecheniauc per castellum et pontem de Remni in mare descendit. Et ab The Taf. eisdem montanis Taph per sedem cathedralem de Landaf, cui et nomen dedit, usque ad castrum de Kairdif, ubi se mari immiscet, impetuose transcurrit.

De montibus Wlatmorgan,[1] inter egregia Cysterciensis ordinis cœnobia, de Margan scilicet et Neth, The Avan, and Nedd. Avennæ fluvius, et Neth de montibus Brecheniauc,[2] vivo sabulo et absorbente terribiles in mare deproperant. Neth fluvio juxta castellum de Neth profluente.

The Tawe. De montanis quoque[3] de Brecheniauc[4] Tawe fluvius The Llychwyr. 117. per castellum de Abertawe, quod Anglice Sweynesia dicitur, Locher per castellum de Loholt, et Wendraith The Gwendraeth. per Kedwely, in profundum dilabuntur. Ab Elen- The Tywi. nyth iterum nobile flumen Tewi, Cantrefmaur et Cantrefbochan ab invicem separans, per castrum Lanamdeveri, per castellum Dynevur silvis et situ munitissimum, ubi et principalis Sudwalliæ curia fuerat, per nobile castrum de Kairmerdhin, ubi et Merlinus inventus fuerat, a quo et nomen accepit, usque ad castellum de Landestephan in mare transfertur.

De montanis de Presseleu, non procul ab Albæ domus monasterio, per castellum de Sancto Claro, non The Taf. longe ab Abercorran et Talachar Taph fluvius[5] in mare devolvitur.

The two rivers Cleddy. De montanis eisdem duo Cledeu, provinciam de Dugledeu complectentes, eique de suo nomine nomen donantes, alter per castellum de Lanwadein, alter per Haverfordiam, in mare decurrunt. Et dicuntur Britannice Dugledeu, quasi duo gladii.

[1] *Wlatmorgan*] D. Rd.; eisdem, V. N.

[2] *de montibus Brecheniauc*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[3] *quoque*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[4] *Brecheniauc*] D. Rd.; Cantefbochan, V. N.

[5] *Taph fluvius*] D. In Rd. and Camden it comes before, after "Presseleu." Not at all in V. N.

A montibus autem[1] Elennith aqua Teivi nobilis emanat, a superiori parte Cantrefmaur et Kerdigan, non procul ab armentis opimo de Stratflur monasterio, inferius autem Demetiam et Kerdigan usque in Hybernicum mare longe disterminans. Hæc aqua sola in Kambria castores habet. Quorum miracula si scire volueris, *Itinerarium* quæras. Salmone quoque præpingui, præ cunctis Cambriæ[2] fluviis, magis abundat.

The Teivi.

Beavers in this river.

Sed quoniam in multorum forte manus liber iste deveniet ad quas non ille, multaque de castoribus specialia reperies et notabilia, quædam et hic interserere præter rem non putavi. "De hujus enim bestiæ "natura, qualiter a silvis ad aquas materiam vehant; quanto "artificio ex attracta[3] materia mediis in fluctibus munimenta "connectant; quam defensionis artem contra venatores in "occidente prætendant, quam in oriente; de caudis quoque "pisceis, ut aiunt, potius quam carneis, pauca interserere "non inutile reputavi.[4]

Account of the beaver. From *Itin. supra*, 115.

"Castores enim, ut castra sibi in fluviis construant, sui "generis servis pro rheda utentes, a silvis ad aquas lignea "robora miro vecturæ modo contrahunt et conducunt. Qui- 117 b. "dam enim ex eis, naturæ imperio servire parati, ligna ab "aliis præcisa, ventrique supino imposita, quatuor pedibus "complectentes, lignoque in ore ex transverso locato, denti- "bus ab aliis hinc inde cohærentibus, retrogradeque trahen- "tibus, non absque intuentium admiratione, simul cum oneri- "bus attrahuntur. Simili quoque naturæ artificio, in scrobium "purgatione, quas sibi pedibus in terra fodiendo scalpendo- "que conformant, meloti[5] utuntur. In utroque vero anima- "lium genere, servi notabiles inveniuntur tam degenerante "quadam naturæ deformitate, quam abrasa et attrita dorso- "rum depilatione.

---

[1] *autem*] D. Rd.; etiam, V. N., Camden.

[2] This is about the only instance where D. has Cambria, and not Kambria.

[3] *ex attracta*] V. N. D., *Itin.*; extracta, Rd., Camden.

[4] Camden here stops in this repetition about the beaver, with "Re- "liqua vide supra pag. 861," the page of his *Itin.* where the account of the beaver begins.

[5] *meloti*] D. Rd.; melotæ, V. N. And so in the *Itin.*, the 1st and 2nd editions have "melotæ," but the 3rd, "meloti;" *supra*, 115, n. 7.

The beaver. *Itin. supra*, 116.

"In aliquo vero profundissimo fluvii[1] angulo et pacifico, in castrorum constructione tanto artificio ligna connectunt, ut nec aquæ stilla de facili penetrando subintret, nec procellæ vis labefactando concutiat: nec[2] violentiam quamlibet præter humanam, et hanc ferro munitam reformident.

"Ex salicum autem ramis in castrorum constructione ligna connectunt; soliisque variis in altum, quantum aqua excrescere solet et ultra, ostiis interius a solio in solium aptatis, machinam distinguunt; ut juxta fluminis incrementa, fluctuantes undas cum voluerint ab alto despicere valeant. Ex salicibus autem, ut per annuos crescendo[3] salicum saltus hispidum exterius silvescat arbustum; tota interius arte latente.

"Hoc animal in aquis ad libitum perdurat; et sub eisdem, more bufonum, velutique phocæ pilosæ quæ fluxum maris atque refluxum lenitate pilorum et hispiditate declarant, halitum fovet.

"Sub aquis igitur indifferenter et sub divo, tria hæc animalium genera spiritum trahunt. Suntque tibiis curtis, corpore lato, caudis nullis vel quasi mutilatis; et talpis quodammodo, sive melotis, in corporis compositione conformia.

"Notandum etiam quod quatuor hæc solum dentes bestia præfert; oris anteriori parte duos supra, et duos inferius e contra; eisque, latis plurimum et acutis, tanquam dolabris utitur ad secandum.

"Habent autem in proxima castris ripa scrobes subterra-
118. neas, latibulaque munitissima in sicco. Ad quæ venator[4]
explorans dum præacutis sudibus desuper transpenetrare molitur, ictum audiens, et violentiam timens, quamcitius ad castri munimenta se bestia confert. Sed primo ad ipsum foraminis ingressum in ripa residens, aquam exsufflat, pedibus scalpendo[5] terram immiscet, et ex limpida visuique pervia turbidam reddit et cœnulentam, ut sic hostis a ripa cum fuscina ferrea saltum observantis artem arte deludat.

"In eois autem[6] regionibus, cum canes narium sagacitate

---

[1] *fluvii*] D. Rd. and *Itin.*; fluviorum, V. N.

[2] *nec*] V. N. Rd. and *Itin.*; sed, D.

[3] *crescendo*] D. Rd. and *Itin.* Not in V. N.

[4] *venator*] V. N. Rd. and *Itin.* Not in D.

[5] *pedibus scalpendo*] D. Rd. Not in V. N. In like manner it is in the 3rd edition of the *Itin.*, but not in the 1st and 2nd. See *supra*, 117, n. 1.

[6] *autem*] N. D. Rd. and *Itin.*; que, V.; quoque, Hc.

"sequentes se nullatenus effugere posse præsentit, ut damno The beaver.
"partis totum redimat, partem quam appeti naturali industria *Itin. supra*, 117.
"novit projiciendo, venatoris in prospectu[1] seipsam bestia
"castrat. Unde et a castrando Castor nomen accepit. Præterea, si bestiam præcastratam canes iterum forte persequantur, ad eminentem se statim conferens locum, coxa in altum elevata, partem venatori quam appetit præcisam ostendit. De quibus[2] Cicero in Scauriana; 'Redimunt se 'ex illa parte corporis, propter quam maxime expetuntur.' Juvenalis;

"'Qui se
"'Eunuchum ipse facit, cupiens evadere damno
"'Testiculi.'

"Et Bernardus;

"'Prodit item castor proprio de corpore velox
"'Reddere quas sequitur hostis avarus opes.'

"Sic igitur ut hinc pellem, quæ in occidente quæritur, tueri valeat, illinc partis medicinalis quæ in oriente diligitur largitione, totum quanquam tamen non totum conservet, mirabili, ne dicam ingenio, vi quadam ingenita et quasi discretiva, venatoris astutiam vitare molitur.

"Notandum quoque quod castores caudas habent latas et non longas, in modum palmæ humanæ spissas; quibus tanquam pro remigio natando funguntur. Cumque totum corpus reliquum valde pilosum habeant, hanc partem omni pilositate carentem, in morem phocæ marinæ,[3] planam habent et levigatam. Unde et in Germania, arctoisque regionibus, ubi abundant beveres, caudis hujusmodi, piscium ut aiunt naturam tam sapore quam colore sortitis,
"viri etiam magni et religiosi jejuniorum tempore pro pisce 118 b.
"vescuntur."

A montibus eisdem Escud erumpit; et superiores The river Ystwyth.
Kereticæ regionis partes de Penwethig[4] transpenetrando, sub castro[5] Aberescud in mare descendit.

---

[1] *prospectu*] N. D. and *Itin.*; conspectu, V. Hc. Rd.

[2] *De quibus . . . . avarus opes*] These quotations in D. Rd. Not in V. N. In like manner they are in the 3rd edition of the *Itin.*, but not in the 1st and 2nd. See *supra*, 117, n. 2.

[3] *marinæ*] D. Rd. and *Itin.* Not in V. N.

[4] *de Penwethig*] D.; de Penweic, Rd. Not in V. N.

[5] *castro*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

The Dyvi. A niveis autem Ereri montibus nobilis Devi fluvius originem trahens, Sudwalliam a Nortwallia longe discernit et distinguit. Ab eisdem quoque montibus Mau fluvius magnus emanans, Trait maur et Trait bochan, id est Tractus Maris[1] major et minor, Dissennyth[2] similiter, et Arthro, per Meirionith et terram Canani dilabuntur. Cunewe vero de sub Ereri pede boreali montis emergens, sub nobili castello Dugannu se marinis undis immiscet. A latere montis ejusdem, per castellum Rudhelan,[3] et sic usque[4] in mare Cloid dilabitur. De lacu Pemmelesmere Deverdoe,[5] quam Angli Deiam vocant, originem ducens, et per Cestriam currens, longeque a latere dextro silvam de Coleshulle, Basingeworc, et divitem non procul inde argenti venam, vivum[6] et absorbens mare influendo sabulum facit; et inter Angliam et Walliam a parte boreali, sicut et Waia[7] ab australi, moderno tempore marchiam facit.

The rivers Maw, Traeth Mawr, and Traeth Bychan, Dysynwy, and Artro.

The Conwy.

The Clwyd.

The Dwfyr Dwy, or Dee.

[Cap. VI.]

De amœnitate Walliæ et fertilitate.

Comparison of North and South Wales.

Totius autem Walliæ, sicut australis pars circa regionem Kereticam, et præcipue Demetiam, campestri planitie, maritimoque litore longe amœnior, sic borealis Venedotia et situ terrarum munitior, et robustis virorum corporibus fecundior, uberique gleba fertilior

---

1 *Maris*] V. N. Rd. Not in D. Compare *Itin.*, *supra*, 123, l. 22. This clause is given very incorrectly in Camden; made utter nonsense of.

2 *Dissennyth . . . Arthro*] D. Rd. Not in V. N. Compare *Itin.*, *supra*, 124, where also is mention of these rivers in the 3rd edition of the treatise, but not in the 1st or 2nd.

3 *castellum Rudhelan*] D. Rd.; castellum de Rothelant, V. N.

4 *usque*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

5 *Deverdoe*] D.; Devardoeu, Rd.; Benerdu, V. N. Dwfyr Dwy, the Welsh name of the river Dee.

6 *vivum*] V. N. Rd., Camden; vivumque, D.

7 *Waia*] D.; Vaga, V. N. Rd., Camden.

esse dignoscitur. Sicut enim[1] montes Ereri cunctis Walliæ totius armentis in unum coactis ad pascua, sic insula Moniæ triticei graminis fertilitate toti Walliæ fertur aliquamdiu sufficere posse. Unde et Monia Mamkembre Britannice, id est Mater Kambriæ, dici solet.

The pastures of Snowdon, and cornland of Anglesea.

Merionyth autem et terra Canani præ aliis omnibus hispida nimis est et inacessibilis.

Pars ista Walliæ lanceis longis præstat; sicut australis, et præcipue circa Wintæ fines, arcu solet prævalere.

Lances of the North, and bows of the South.

Notandum etiam, quia[2] in Nortwallia lingua Britannica delicatior, ornatior, et laudabilior, quanto alienigenis terra illa impermixtior, esse perhibetur. Kereticam tamen in Sudwallia regionem, tanquam in medio Kambriæ ac meditullio sitam, lingua præcipua uti et[3] laudatissima plerique testantur. Cornubia vero, et Armorica Britannia, lingua utuntur fere persimili; Kambris tamen, propter originalem convenientiam, in multis adhuc et fere cunctis[4] intelligibili. Quæ, quanto delicata minus et incomposita magis, tanto antiquo linguæ Britannicæ idiomati magis, ut arbitror, appropriata. Sicut in australibus Angliæ[5] finibus, et præcipue circa Devoniam, Anglica lingua hodie magis videtur incomposita: ea tamen, vetustatem[6] longe plus redolens, borealibus insulæ partibus per crebras Dacorum et Norwagiensium[7] irruptiones valde corruptis, originalis linguæ proprietatem, et antiquum loquendi modum magis observat. Cujus etiam rei non solum argumentum, sed et[8] certitudinem inde habere potes,

119.

Language of the North the purest.

Language of Cornwall and Bretagne very like Welsh.

Language of the South of England, of Devonshire especially, purer than that of the North.

[1] *enim*] V. N. D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[2] *quia*] D. Rd.; quod, V. N.

[3] *et*] N. D. Rd.; et etiam, V. Hc.

[4] *et fere cunctis*] D. Not in V. N. Rd. has "et fere" only.

[5] *Angliæ*] V. N. Rd., Camden; Anglorum, D.

[6] *vetustatem*] D. Rd.; vetustate, V. N.

[7] *et Norwagiensium*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[8] *et*] D. Rd.; etiam, V. N.

Old English books written in this idiom. quod omnes libros Anglicos Bedæ, Rabani, regis Aeluredi, vel aliorum quorumlibet, sub hujus idiomatis proprietate scriptos invenies.

[Cap. VII.]

Unde dicta sit Kambria, et unde Wallia.

Origin of the name Kambria. Dicta est autem Kambria a duce Kambro, Bruti filio. Brutus etenim ab Enea,[1] mediantibus avo Ascanio et patre Silvio, descendens, et Trojanorum reliquias, qui in Grecia detenti fuerant, in occiduam hanc insulam ducens, cum annis non paucis feliciter regnasset, et tam terræ quam genti de suo nomine nomina dedisset, in extremo tandem positus articulo, tribus filiis suis regnum Britanniæ totale divisit. The three sons of Brutus. Primo et[2] primævo, scilicet Locrino, medium illud et meditullium inter Humbrum et Sabrinam; quod et ab ejus nomine Loegria vocatur. Juniori[3] vero, Albanacto, totam trans Humbrum insulæ partem; quæ et ab ejus nomine Albania dicitur. Medio[4] vero, scilicet Kambro, totam trans Sabrinam regionem; quæ similiter et ejus nomine Kambria nomen accepit. Hinc igitur proprie et vere patria Kambria, hinc patriotæ Kambri dicuntur, vel Kambrenses. Eorum autem qui Kembraec, lin-
119 b. guam Kambricam, a Kam Græco, hoc est, distorto Græco, propter linguarum affinitatem, quæ ob diutinam in Grecia moram contracta est, dictam asserunt,[5] probabilis quidem et verisimilis est, minus tamen vera relatio.

---

[1] *ab Enea*] V. N. Hc. Not in D. Rd.

[2] *et*] V. N. D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *Juniori*] V. N. D.; Medio, Rd., Camden. Albanact was the younger son; Geoffrey ii., 1.

[4] *Medio*] V. N. D.; Natu minori, Rd., Camden.

[5] *dictam asserunt*] D. Not in V. N. Rd. And these have no "dictam "dicunt" before, after "Kam "Græco," as in Camden.

Wallia vero non a Walone duce, vel Wendoloena reginâ, sicut fabulosa Galfridi Arthuri mentitur historia; quia revera neutrum eorum[1] apud Kambros invenies; sed a barbarica potius nuncupatione nomen istud inolevit. Saxones enim,[2] occupato regno Britannico, quoniam lingua sua extraneum omne Wallicum vocant, et gentes has sibi extraneas Walenses vocabant. Et inde, usque in hodiernum,[3] barbara nuncupatione et homines Walenses, et terra Wallia vocitatur. Geoffrey, xii. 19. Origin of the barbarous name Wallia.

Sed quoniam de qualitate terræ et quantitate, de generatione principum, origine fluminum, et ratione nominum hactenus explicuimus, naturam gentis et proprietatem evolvere subsequenter aggrediemur.

[Cap. VIII.]

De gentis hujus natura, moribus, et cultu. Et primo, de audacia ejusdem,[4] agilitate, et animositate.

Gens igitur hæc gens levis et agilis, gens aspera magis quam robusta, gens armis dedita tota. Non enim nobiles hic[5] solum, sed totus populus ad arma paratus: bellica tuba sonante, non segnius ab aratro ruricola, quam aulicus ab aula prorumpit ad arma. Non etenim hic, ut alibi, Characters of the Welsh. All given to arms.

"Redit agricolis labor actus in orbem." Virg. Georg. ii. 401.

Solum quippe Martio et Aprili, solum semel aperiunt ad avenas: nec bis in æstate, tertioque[6] in hieme, ad tritici trituram terras vertendo laborant. Totus propemodum populus armentis pascitur et avenis, lacte, Their agriculture. Their food.

[1] *eorum*] D., Rd.; istorum, V. N.

[2] *enim*] N. D. Rd.; vero, V. Hc.

[3] *hodiernum*] V. D. Rd.; hodiernum diem, N. Hc.

[4] *ejusdem*] V. N. D.; and Table of Chapters *supra*, 159; ejus, Rd. Camden.

[5] *hic*] D. Rd.; hii, V. N.

[6] *tertioque*] V. N. Rd., Camden.; tertio, D.

caseo, et butyro. Carne plenius, pane parcius vesci solent.

No merchandise, &c.

Their patriotism, and love of liberty.

Non mercimoniis, non navigiis, non mechanicis artibus, nec ullo prorsus nisi martio labore vexantur. Patriæ tantum tutelæ student, et libertatis: pro patria pugnant, pro libertate laborant: pro quibus[1] non solum ferro dimicare, verum etiam vitam dare dulce videtur. Unde et in toro turpe, in bello mori decus reputant. Ac si[2] illud poetæ aperte dixerint:

"Procul hinc avertite pacem:
120. "Nobilitas cum pace perit."

Nec mirum, si non degenerant. Quorum etenim hi reliquiæ olim,

Virg. Æn. viii. 648.

"Encadæ in ferrum pro libertate ruebant."

Their unarmed valour.

De his igitur hoc spectabile, quod nudi multoties cum ferro vestitis, inermes[3] cum armatis, pedestres[4] cum equitibus congredi non verentur. In quo plerumque conflictu sola fiunt agilitate et animositate victores; illis quorum poeta sic meminit, sicut situ, sic et natura non dissimiles;

Lucan, Pharsal. i. 458.

"Populi quos despicit Arctos,
"Felices errore suo; quos ille timorum
"Maximus haud urget leti metus. Inde ruendi
"In ferrum mens prona viris, animæque capaces
"Mortis, et ignavum redituræ parcere vitæ."

Their arms.

Armis tamen utuntur levibus, agilitatem non impedientibus; loricis minoribus, sagittarum[5] manipulis, et

---

[1] *quibus*] V. N. He., Camden; civibus, D. Rd.

[2] *Ac si . . . . perit*] This in D. Rd., and corruptly in Camden. Not in V. N. I have failed to identify the quotation. Lucan has (*Pharsal.* ii. 101) "Nobilitas cum plebe "perit."

[3] *inermes*] D. Rd.; inermi, V. N.

[4] *pedestres*] V. N. D.; pedites, Rd., Camden.

[5] In V. N., and in all the many later manuscripts of the first edition, without one exception, there is here a very large omission, viz., of the

lanceis longis; galeis, et clipeis, ocreisque ferreis rarius. Equis autem cursoribus et generosis, quos patria gignit, nobiliores ad bella feruntur. Pars autem populi major, propter terras palustres pariter et inæquales, ad prælia pedestres incedunt. Equites autem, pro locorum et temporum opportunitate, seu fugiendo seu fugando[1] facile pedites fiunt. Nudis autem pedibus ambulant; vel corio crudo consutis barbaris pro calciamento peronibus utentes. Pacis quoque et juventutis tempore, silvas et saltus transpenetrare, montium alta transcurrere, dies huic labori noctibus continuare, ex industria prædiscunt; et quasi sub pace prælia dum cogitant, nunc lanceando, nunc sagittando,[2] bella præludunt.

Generally fight on foot.

Go barefooted.

Training of the youth in time of peace.

Illud autem in hoc loco notandum videtur, quod Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, diebus nostris, imperatori Constantinopolitano Manueli, super insulæ Britannicæ situ ac natura, magisque notabilibus, literis et nuntiis inquirenti, inter cetera hoc quasi præcipue notabile rescripsit. In quadam insulæ parte sunt gentes, quæ Walenses dicuntur, tantæ audaciæ et audacitatis,[3] ut nudi cum armatis congredi non vereantur; adeo ut sanguinem pro patria fundere promptissimæ,

Henry II.'s testimony to their bravery.

"Vitamque velint pro laude pacisci."

Virg. Æn. v. 230.

Quod et mirandum, quia bestiæ per totam propemo-

---

remainder of this chapter, the eight following chapters, and part of the next one. After *sagittarum* follows directly, in all these manuscripts, without any break or other sign whatever of dislocation, "vesci "solent. Agris igitur plurimum "utuntur pascuis, &c.," as in about the middle of Cap. 17 *infra*, 201, n. 2. For this portion of the treatise thus missing, so far as I have been able to see, in every now known existing manuscript of the first edition,—I have therefore only the manuscripts D. and Rd. of the 2nd edition, with what aid Camden may give me, upon which to form my text.

[1] *seu fugiendo, seu fugando*] D.; seu dimicando, seu fugiendo, Rd., Camden.

[2] *sagittando*] D.; fatigando, Rd., Camden.

[3] *audacitatis*] D.; serenitatis, Rd.; ferocitatis, Camden.

dum insulæ faciem quasi mansuescunt, homines vero prædicti[1] bestiales mansuescere nesciunt.

120 b. Deer of the Peak district, trampling dogs and men to death.

In tanta quoque multitudine ob pacem eis indultam hic feræ, præcipueque cervi et damæ abundant, ut in borealibus insulæ finibus versus Pech,[2] nostris diebus, canes eorumque duces in impetu numerositatis suæ ad interitum cervi suppeditaverint.

[Cap. IX.]

De sobria ejusdem cœna, et parcimonia.

Great temperance of the Welsh.

Præterea, nec crapulæ dediti nec temulentiæ;—quibus nec cœnæ nec vestium[3] ulla sumptuositas, sed in equis solum et armis, eorumque apparatibus, tota versatur intentio; quibus ad patriæ prædæque tuitionem mens semper erecta;—a mane in[4] vesperam jejuni, totum rebus agendis animum, totum consiliis et providentiæ diem donant. Vespere vero cœna sobria.

Their endurance of hunger and cold.

Et si forte nulla vel minima fuerit, vesperam alteram patienter exspectant. Et tamen nec fame nec frigore tardati, ad hostiles irrogandum invasiones noctes tenebrosas diligunt et procellas.[5]

[Cap. X.]

De hospitalitate et dapsilitate.

No beggars amongst the Welsh.

Nemo in hac gente mendicus. Omnium enim hospitia omnibus sunt communia. Largitatem quippe, et præcipue[6] dapsilitatem, cunctis virtutibus anteponunt.

---

[1] *prædicti*] D.; projecti, Rd., Camden.

[2] *Pech*] D., Camden; Peake, Rd. The district of the Peak, Derbyshire.

[3] *vestium*] Rd., Camden; vescium, D.

[4] *in*] D., Camden; ad, Rd.

[5] *procellas*] D. Rd.; procellosas, Camden.

[6] *præcipue*] D., Camden. Not in Rd.

Adeo nempe[1] hospitalis hic gratia communione lætatur, quod itinerantibus ea nec offeratur nec petatur. Tantum etenim, domum intrantes, protinus[2] arma custodiæ tradunt: deinde statim aquam offerentibus si pedes ablui permiserint, hospitio suscepti sunt: aquæ nimirum pedibus oblatio hospitalis apud hanc gentem[3] est invitatio. Obsequium autem oblatum si forte recusant, matutinas recreationes et non hospitia volunt.

Their bounty and hospitality.

Per turbas igitur et familias, capite sibi præfecto, gentis hujus juventus incedit; solum armis et otio data, patriæque defensioni[4] promptissima. Unde et tecta cujuslibet veluti propria secure subintrant.

Qui matutinis autem horis adveniunt, puellarum affatibus et cithararum modulis usque ad vesperam delectantur. Domus enim hic quælibet puellas habet, et citharas, ad hoc deputatas. Unde et duo notabilia hic reperies; quia zelotypiæ vitio sicut nulla magis quam Hybernica, sic nulla minus quam Kambrica gens laborat; omnes quoque de curia seu familia viri, citra doctrinam omnem, citharizandi per se peritiam tenent. Vespere vero, cessantibus jam adventantium turbis, juxta numerum virorum et dignitatem, juxta domus quoque facultatem, exhibitio procuratur. Ubi non ferculis multis, non saporibus et gularum irritamentis[5] coquina gravatur; non mensis, non mappis, non[6] manutergiis, domus ornatur. Naturæ magis student quam nitori. Unde cœnantibus, non binis ut alibi, sed ternis, scirpis et herbæ viridi,[7] scutellis etiam latis et amplis, fercula cuncta simul apponunt. Pani

The company of girls, and music, always ready for visitors. No Irish jealousy. All skilled in the harp.

121.

The simple evening meal, and its arrangements.

[1] *nempe*] D. Camden; enim, Rd.

[2] *protinus*] D., Camden; Not in Rd.

[3] *gentem*] Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[4] *patriæque defensioni*] D., Camden; ad patriæ defensionem, Rd.

[5] *irritamentis*] D., Camden; incitamentis, Rd.

[6] *non*] D.; vel, Rd., Camden.

[7] *viridi*] D.; viridis, Rd.; nitidæ, Camden.

quoque tenui et lato, quotidiano labore decocto, [cujusmodi[1] in veteri instrumento Lagana dici solent], interdum pulmentaria supponunt. Talibus olim usus est mensis puer ille nobilis, de cujus et hi se genere jactant, et cujus adhuc ex parte mores observant; testante poeta,

Virg. Æn. vii. 116.

"Heu mensas consumpsimus, inquit Iulus."

The guests waited on by the host and hostess.

Cum autem certatim obsequiis familia tota deserviat,[2] soli præ ceteris hospes et hospita semper astando solicite cuncta perlustrant; nec unquam, nisi post plenam omnium refectionem, cibos sumunt; ut si quis forte defectus accidere debeat, in ipsos cadat.

All sleep together in the common room.

In the same dress as in the day.

Demum autem, hora soporis instante, publico strato per latera domus in longum, juncis solum tenuiter insertis, panno quoque duro et aspero, quem patria parit, qui et vulgari vocabulo Brachan[3] dicitur, superposito, communiter accumbunt. Nec alius eis nocte cultus quam die: pallio namque tenui et interula solum omni tempore frigora pellunt: igne tamen sicut die, sic et nocte tota, ad pedes accenso,[4] propinquoque[5] pariter concubantium calore multum adjuti. Cum autem vel latus inferius tori duritia lassari, vel etiam nimio superius algore frigescere cœperit, illico ad ignem prosiliunt, de cujus beneficio promptissima utriusque incommodi remedia quærunt; et sic ad strata revertentes, seque[6] urgente gravamine crebro vertentes, alternis vicibus latus unum frigori, alterum vero duritiæ donant.

[1] *cujusmodi . . . solent*] Not in D. In Rd., Camden.

[2] *deserviat*] Rd., Camden; deferveat, D.

[3] *Brachan*] D.; Brichan, Rd.; Brychan, Camden.

[4] *accenso*] D., Camden; accensa, Rd.

[5] *propinquoque*] D.; propinquo, Rd., Camden.

[6] *seque . . . vertentes*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[Cap. XI.]

De crinium tonsura, dentium cultu, et barbæ rasura.

Tam mulieribus autem in hac gente, quam etiam maribus, ad aures et oculos tonsura rotunda. Mulieres autem peplo candido et amplo, more Parthico, in coronam per gradus erecto[1] capita velant. How the hair worn. Women's turbans.

Dentes vero in utroque sexu, præ omni quam vidimus natione, propensius curant: quos assidua[2] coryli viridis confricatione,[3] laneique[4] panni purgatione, tanquam eburneos reddunt. Eorundem etiam culturæ gratia, alimentis abstinent a[5] calidis; frigidis autem, tepidis, et temperatis semper utuntur. Care of their teeth. 121 b.

Barbam viri, præter gernoboda solum, radere solent. Et hanc non de novo, sed ab antiquo, longisque retro seculis, consuetudinem tenent: sicut ex libro de gestis Julii Cesaris, ab ipso conscripto, perpendi potest. Ubi et hæc verba reperies; Britonum gens "omni "parte corporis abrasa, præter superius labrum."[6] Solent enim, ut agiliores fierent, etiam comis capita nudare; casum Absolonis, quoniam silvas et nemora sæpe percurrunt, vitare volentes. Unde et usque in[7] hodiernum gens hæc inferiorem quoque,[8] præ gentibus aliis, pilositatem magis abradit. No beard, but a mustache, as in Cæsar's time. De Bell. Gall. v. 14.

Refert etiam Julius, quod Britones temporibus illis, martio certamine congressuri, facies suas vitreo quodam unguento liniebant; unde et easdem tam luridas Ibid.

---

[1] *erecto*] D., Camden; erectam, Rd.

[2] *assidua*] D., Camden; assidue, Rd.

[3] *confricatione*] D., Camden; fricatione, Rd.

[4] *laneique*] D.; lanei quoque, Rd., Camden.

[5] *a*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[6] *superius labrum*] D. Rd. Cæsar has "præter caput et labrum superius;" and so Camden.

[7] *in*] D., Camden; ad, Rd.

[8] *quoque*] D. Not in Rd. Camden has it, but no "inferiorem."

habebant[1] et perlucidas, ut vix[2] in eorum vultus, præsertim sole repurcusso, hostes aciem intendere prævaluissent.

[Cap. XII.]

De ingenii acumine et subtilitate.

Their cleverness and acuteness.

Item, ingenii gens subtilis et[3] acuti. Cuicunque studio animum applicuerint, venæ divitis dote præcellunt. Totaque communiter hæc natio, præ gentibus aliis occiduo climate degentibus, arguta nimis est et astuta.

Their skill in music.

In musicis instrumentis, tanta sonoritatis[4] dulcedine aures deliniunt et demulcent; tanta modulorum celeritate pariter et subtilitate feruntur; tantamque[5] discrepantium[6] sub tam præcipiti digitorum rapacitate consonantiam præstant; quantam, ut breviter transeam, in tribus nationibus, titulo *De musicis instrumentis, Hibernica Topographia* nostra declarat in hæc
Vol. v. 153. verba. "Mirum quod, in tanta tamque[7] præcipiti digitorum
"rapacitate, musica servatur proportio; et arte per omnia
"indemni, inter crispatos modulos, organaque multipliciter
"intricata, tam suavi velocitate, tam dispari paritate, tam
"discordi concordia, consona redditur et completur melodia.
122. "Seu diatessaron seu diapente chordæ concrepent, semper
"tamen a B molli incipiunt, et in idem redeunt, ut cuncta
"sub jocundæ sonoritatis dulcedine compleantur. Tam sub-
"tiliter modulos intrant et exeunt; sicque, sub obtuso gros-
"sioris chordæ sonitu, gracilium tinnitus licentius ludunt,

[1] *habebant*] D., Camden; habent, Rd. The words of Cæsar are: "Omnes vero se Britanni vitro "inficiunt, quod cœruleum efficit "colorem, atque hoc horridiores "sunt in pugna aspectu."

[2] *vix*] D., Camden. Not in Rd., which has "non" instead afterwards, before "prævaluissent."

[3] *et*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[4] *tanta sonoritatis*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[5] *tantamque*] Rd., Camden; tanta, D.

[6] *discrepantium*] D., Camden; discrepantiam, Rd.

[7] *tamque*] D.; tam, Rd., Camden, and *Top. Hib.*

"latentius delectant, lasciviusque demulcent; ut pars artis "maxima videatur artem velare, tanquam

"'Si lateat,[1] prosit; ferat ars deprensa pudorem.' Ov. Ars. Am. ii. 313.

"Hinc accidit ut ea, quæ subtilius intuentibus, et artis ar- "cana acute discernentibus, internas et ineffabiles comparant "animi delicias, ea non attendentibus, sed tanquam[2] videndo "non videntibus, et audiendo non intelligentibus, aures potius "onerent quam delectent, et tanquam confuso inordinatoque "strepitu invitis auditoribus fastidia pariant tædiosa." Tribus autem utuntur instrumentis; cithara, tibiis, et choro. Musical instruments.

In causis, actionibus, et foro civili, captando, insinuando, inveniendo, disponendo, refutando, et confirmando, nullas penitus naturalis rhetoricæ partes omittunt. Their powers of rhetoric.

In cantilenis rhythmicis, et dictamine, tam subtiles inveniuntur, ut miræ et exquisitæ inventionis lingua propria tam verborum quam sententiarum proferant exornationes. Their rhythmical songs, &c. Unde et poetas, quos Bardos vocant, ad hoc deputatos in hac natione multos invenies; juxta illud, The Bards.

"Plurima[3] concreti fuderunt carmina Bardi." Lucan, Phars. i. 449.

Præ cunctis tamen[4] rhetoricis exornationibus, annominatione magis utuntur; eaque præcipue specie, quæ primas dictionum literas vel syllabas convenientia jungit. Their love of alliteration;

Adeo igitur hoc verborum ornatu duæ nationes, Angli scilicet et Kambri, in omni sermone exquisito utuntur, ut nihil ab his eleganter dictum, nullum egregium,[5] nullum nisi rude et agreste censeatur elo- in common with the English.

---

[1] The line of Ovid is:

"Si latet ars, prodest; affert de- "prensa pudorem."

[2] *tanquam*] Instead of this, "qua- "si" in *Top. Hib.*

[3] The line of Lucan is:

"Plurima securi fudistis carmina, "Bardi."

[4] *tamen*] D.; autem, Rd., Camden.

[5] *nullum egregium*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

quium, si non schematis hujus lima plene fuerit expolitum. Sicut Britannice in hunc modum;

Instances of this in Welsh.

"Dychaun Dyu da dy unic."[1]
"Erbyn dibuill puill paraut."[2]

Anglice vero sic;

In English.

"Godis to gedere gamen and wisdom."[3]
"Ne halt nocht alsor isaid, ne al sorghe atwite."[4]

122 b.

"Betere is red thene rap, and liste thene lither
"streingthe."[5]

In Latin also.

In Latino quoque haud dissimiliter eloquio, eandem exornationem frequens est invenire. In hunc modum Virgilius;

Æn. iii. 183.

"Tales casus Cassandra canebat."

Et illud ejusdem ad Augustum;[6]

"Dum dubitet natura marem faceretve puellam,
"Natus es, O pulcher, pene[7] puella, puer."

---

[1] Over this line is interlined in D., in very minute letters, and by the same hand apparently as that of the text: "i.e. facere potest bene "Deus unico; ac si diceret, homi-"nem potest juvare Deus, etsi "solus sit." This line in Rd. is: "Di gaun dub da y unic."

[2] Over this line, in like manner, is in D.: "i.e. contra insensatum "sensum præpares." In Rd. it is, "Vrth pob kirbuil puyl paraut." Camden, very corrupt, is nearer to this than to the line of D.

[3] Over this line again is, in D.: "i. e. bona est una cum jocundi-"tate sapientia." In Rd. this line is, "God is te gedere gamen an "wisedome." This is the only one of the three English lines that is given in Camden.

[4] Over this line again is, in D.: "i.e. non attinet omne malum suum "alii revelare, nec omne alterius "incommodum ei exprobrare." The line in Rd. is, "Ne halt nozt al sel "isait, ne al sore atwite."

[5] Over this line again is, in D.: "hoc est, plus valet deliberatio "quam præpropera festinatio, et "plus moderatio quam violentia." In Rd. this line is, "Better is red "then yap, an list then lidere "strength."

[6] In the *Catalecta Virgilii*, &c. (ed. Scaliger, 1617, p. 177), these lines are given, addressed not to Augustus, but "In puerum formo-"sum." Scaliger has "dubitat" in the first line, instead of "dubitet."

[7] *pene*] Rd., Camden, Scaliger; pena, D.

In nullis tamen linguis, quas novimus, hæc exornatio adeo ut in prioribus duabus est usitata.

Mirum autem quod Gallica lingua, alias tam ornata, hunc verborum ornatum, ab aliis tam usitatum, prorsus ignorat. Nec ego tamen id[1] crediderim, quod priores populi duo, tam diversi ab invicem et adversi, in hoc verborum ornatu ex arte conveniant, sed potius ex usu longo: qui, quia placuit solum, et facili similium ad similia transitu aures demulcet, per succedentia tempora inolevit. Sicut Tullius, in libro *De Elocutione*, de talibus qui usum habent et non artem loquitur, dicens; "Ceteri, cum legunt orationes bonas, "aut poemata, probant oratores et[2] poetas; neque "intelligunt quare commoti probent; quod eo[3] scire "non possunt, ubi sit, aut quid sit, quomodo factum "sit id, quod eos maxime delectet."

Not used by the French.

Cic., De Elocutione.

[Cap. XIII.]

De symphonicis eorum cantibus, et[4] *cantilenis organicis.*

In musico modulamine, non uniformiter, ut alibi, sed multipliciter, multisque modis et modulis, cantilenas emittunt. Adeo ut in turba canentium, sicut huic genti mos est, quot videas capita, tot audias carmina discriminaque vocum varia, in unam denique sub B mollis dulcedine blanda consonantiam, et organicam convenientia melodiam.

Their singing in parts; not in unison, as elsewhere.

In borealibus quoque majoris Britanniæ partibus, trans Humbriam scilicet, Eboraci finibus, Anglorum populi, qui partes illas inhabitant, simili canendo symphonica utuntur harmonia: binis tamen solum-

The like in Yorkshire.

---

[1] *id*] D., Camden ; hoc, Rd.

[2] *et*] D., Camden ; aut, Rd.

[3] *quod eo*] D. ; sed eo, Rd. ; eo quod, Camden.

[4] *cantibus et*] D., and Table of Chapters *supra*, 159. Not in Rd., Camden.

modo tonorum differentiis, et vocum modulando varietatibus; una inferius submurmurante, altera vero superne demulcente pariter et delectante. Nec arte tamen, sed usu longævo, et quasi in naturam mora diutina jam converso, hæc vel illa sibi gens hanc
123. specialitatem comparavit. Qui adeo apud utramque invaluit, et altas jam radices posuit, ut nihil hic simpliciter, nihil nisi[1] multipliciter ut apud priores, vel saltem dupliciter ut apud sequentes, melice proferri consueverit: pueris etiam, quod magis admirandum, et fere infantibus, cum primum a fletibus in cantus erumpunt, eandem modulationem observantibus.

In this case derived probably from the Northmen.

Angli vero, quoniam non generaliter omnes, sed boreales solum, hujusmodi vocum utuntur modulationibus, credo quod a Dacis et Norwagiensibus, qui partes illas insulæ frequentius occupare, ac diutius obtinere solebant, sicut loquendi affinitatem, sic et canendi proprietatem contraxerunt.

[Cap. XIIII.]

De verborum facetia et urbanitate.

Their ready witticisms.

De curia vero et familia viri, ut et[2] circumstantibus risum moveant, sibique loquendo laudem comparent, facetiam in sermone plurimam observant; dum[3] vel sales vel lædoria, nunc levi lingua, nunc mordaci, sub æquivocationis vel amphiboliæ nebula, relatione diversa, transpositione verborum et trajectione, subtiles

Examples.

et dicaces emittunt. Unde et exempla quædam, explanandi gratia, subsequenter annecti non superfluum reputavi. Tegengel nomen est provinciæ apud Venedotiam, cui dominabatur David Oenei filius; quam et quidam frater ejus quandoque possederat. Hoc idem etiam

---

[1] *nihil nisi*] D.; nisi, Rd. ubi, Camden.

[2] *et*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *dum*] D., Camden; unde, Rd.

nomen fuit mulieris cujusdam, quam uterque habuisse dicebatur. Unde et a quodam[1] dictum est; "Inju-"rium est David[2] Tegengel habere, cum frater ejusdem "ante Tegengel habuerit." Item, cum ecclesiam Menevensem provinciæ princeps, Resus filius Griphini, cum suorum multitudine, peregrinandi causa aliquando devotius adisset, factis oblationibus, et missarum solemnitate completa, accessit ad eum juvenis quidam in ipsa ecclesia, seque filium ejus esse publice protestando, et ad pedem[3] ipsius se prosternendo, quatinus eidem[4] rei certitudinem candentis ferri examine probare liceret cum lacrimis humiliter imploravit. Quo verbo ad familiam et filios ejusdem duos, qui jam exierant, extra delato, subjecit juvenis quidam; "Nec "mirum. Alii enim aurum obtulerunt, alii argentum. 123 b.
"Hic autem, quoniam utroque caruit, quod habuit "obtulit, scilicet ferrum;" paupertatis incommodum juveni dicaciter improperans.

Cum de domo quadam forti, et quasi inexpugnabili, sermo a quibusdam factus fuisset, dixit unus eorum; "Vere domus hæc fortis est; quia si in ea esca fuerit, "nunquam erit conquisita:" in dominum[5] domus ambiguo verborum involucro avaritiæ notam intorquens: potuit enim *conquisita* ad utrumque referri, et ad escam et ad domum.

Similiter et dominam domus cujusdam quidam avaritiæ notans, dixit; "Hoc solum in hospita nostra "reprehensibile invenio, quod parum butyri ex con-"suetudine sali imponit:" cum accessorium rei principali soleat apponi, subtili verborum trajectione, quoniam in quantitate abundare videbatur, accessorium principale constituens.

---

[1] *a quodam*] D.; aliquod, Rd.; aliquoddam, Camden.

[2] *injurium est David*] D.; injuriosum, Rd., Camden.

[3] *pedem*] D., Camden; pedes, Rd.

[4] *eidem*] D., Camden; ejusdem, Rd.

[5] *in dominum . . potuit enim conquisita*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

Similar witticisms given by Macrobius. Similia, in Macrobio *De Saturnalibus*, philosophorum et magnorum virorum dicta, scripto commendata hæc et hujusmodi multa reperies. Cicero "cum Lentu-
Saturn. ii. 3. "lum generum suum, exiguæ staturæ hominem, longo "gladio accinctum vidisset; 'Quis,' inquit, 'generum "'meum ad gladium alligavit?'" Accessorium, causa præscripta, in principale convertens.

Ibid. Idem, cum Quinti Ciceronis fratris "imaginem clipea-"tam cum ingentibus lineamentis usque ad pectus ex "more pictam vidisset, ait; 'Frater meus dimidius "'major est quam totus.'"

Saturn. ii. 2. Cum soror Fausti mœchum haberet fullonem; "Mi-"rum," inquit frater,[1] "sororem meam maculam habere, "cum fullonem habeat."

Ibid., condensed. Cum Hanibali Antyochus copias bellatorum et armorum ingentes in campis ostenderet, quas bellum facturus populo Romano comparaverat, "Putasne," inquit, "O Hanibal, hæc omnia satis esse Romanis?" Hanibal, imbelles militum ejusdem cohortes eludens, "Plane," inquit, "satis esse credo Romanis hæc, etsi "avari sint." Lepide satis et acerbe respondens: cum rex de æstimanda æquiparatione quæreret, ille vero de præda dixerit.[2]

[Cap. XV.]

De loquendi audacia et securitate.

124. Their boldness and confidence of speech. Loquendi audaciam,[3] et respondendi fiduciam, coram principibus et magnatibus, cunctis communiter, etiam[4] minimis in plebe sicut majoribus, in omni negotio natura dedit.

---

[1] *frater*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[2] *dixerit*] D.; dixit, Rd., Camden.

[3] After *audaciam*, Rd. has "et "securitatem," not in D. or Camden.

[4] *etiam*] D.; et, Rd., Camden.

Romanos et Francos hanc eandem naturæ dotem habere videmus: non autem Anglos, sicut nec Saxones a quibus descenderant, nec Germanos. Sin autem servitutem causaris in Anglis, et hunc eis inde defectum assignas; in Saxonibus et Germanis, qui et libertate gaudent, et eodem tamen vitio vexantur, ratio non provenit.

As with the Romans and Franks, but not with the English, &c.

Saxones igitur et Germani, a gelida poli regione cui subjacent, hanc contrahunt[1] et naturæ geliditatem. Angli quoque, quanquam olim a regione remoti, originali tamen natura tam exteriorem in candore qualitatem, quam etiam interiorem illam geliditatis, eadem ex causa, liquida scilicet et gelida complexionis natura, proprietatem inseparabiliter tenent.

Causes of this difference.

Britones autem e diverso ex calida et adusta Dardaniæ plaga, quanquam in fines hos temperatos advecti, quia

" Cœlum, non animum mutant, qui trans mare cur-
" runt,"

Hor. 1 Ep. ii. 27.

tam exterius fuscum illum cognatumque terræ colorem, quam etiam naturalem interius ex adusto humore calorem, unde securitas, originaliter trahunt.

Tres etenim populi, Romani Enea duce, Franci Antenore, Britones Bruto, post Trojanum excidium,

" Reliquiæ Danaum atque immitis Achillis,"

Virg. Æn. iii. 87.

ab Asia in Europam varias ad partes profugerunt. Tribus igitur his[2] nationibus hinc animositas, hinc nobilitas, et tanta generositatis antiquitas; hinc[3] perspicacis ingenii subtilitas, et loquendi[4] securitas.

Romans, Franks, and Britons, of Trojan origin.

Inter has autem gentes, quæ Trojani reliquiæ sunt

---

[1] *contrahunt et*] D.; et trahunt, Rd.; trahunt, Camden.

[2] *his*] Rd., Camden. Not in D.

[3] *hinc*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[4] *loquendi*] Rd., Camden. Not in D.

excidii, soli Britones, quia multis forte[1] post eversionem patriæ annorum curriculis in Grecia detenti, tardius in occiduos hos Europæ fines advecti sunt, et primæva gentis suæ vocabula, et originalis linguæ proprietatem abundantius retinuerunt. Invenies etenim in his hæc nomina; Oeneus, Resus, Eneas, Hector, Achilles, Eliodorus, Theodorus, Ajax, Evander, Ulixes, Elena, Elissa, Wendoloena, et alia multa in hunc modum antiquitatem redolentia.

Welsh words from Greek or Latin. 124 b.

Notandum etiam, quod verba linguæ Britannicæ omnia fere vel Græco conveniunt vel Latino. Græci Ydor[2] aquam vocant, Britones Duur;[2] salem Hal,[3] Britones Halein;[3] Mis, Tis,[4] pro ego et tu, Britones autem Mi, Ti; Onoma, Enou;[5] Penta,[6] Deca,[7] Pimp,[6] Dec.[7] Item Latini frenum dicunt, et tripodem, gladium, et loricam; Britones froin, trebeth, cledhif, et lhuric:[8] unico unig, cane can;[9] belua beleu.[10]

[Cap. XVI.]

De divinatoribus in hac gente, et quasi arreptitiis.

Welsh diviners.

Sunt et[11] in hoc Kambriæ populo, quod alibi non reperies, viri nonnulli, quos Awennithion[12] vocant, quasi mente ductos. Hi super aliquo consulti ambiguo, statim frementes spiritu quasi extra se rapiuntur, et tanquam arreptitii fiunt. Nec incontinenti tamen quod

---

[1] *multis forte post eversionem*] D., and Rd., but with no "forte." Camden has, "ut videtur, multis "post vastationem et eversionem."

[2] *i.e.* ὕδωρ, *dwfr* in modern Welsh.

[3] *i.e.* ἅλς, *halen.*

[4] *Mis, Tis, . . . Mi, Ti*] D. Rd. Not in Camden. As to where Giraldus found his Greek *Mis* and *Tis*, for *I* and *You*, is beyond my Greek scholarship.

[5] *i.e.* ὄνομα, *enw.*

[6] *Penta, Pimp*] *i.e.* πέντε, *pump.*

[7] *Deca, Dec*] *i.e.* δέκα, *deg.*

[8] These, in modern Welsh, are *Ffrwyn*, *Tribedd*, *Cleddyf*, and *Llurig.*

[9] *Ci* is Welsh for a dog; in plural, *Cwn.*

[10] *Bela* is Welsh for a wolf.

[11] *et*] D., Camden. Not in Rd.

[12] *Awennithion*] D.; Aweindion, Rd. *Awenyddion*, the plural of *Awenydd*, a poet.

desideratur edisserunt: sed per ambages multas, inter varios quibus effluunt sermones, nugatorios magis et vanos quam sibi cohærentes, sed omnes tamen ornatos, in aliquo demum verbi diverticulo qui responsum solerter observat quod petit accipiet enucleatum. Et sic denique de hac extasi tanquam a somno gravi ab aliis excitantur, et quasi per violentiam quandam ad se reverti compelluntur.

Ubi et duo notanda reperies; quia post responsum, nisi violenter excitati et revocati, ab hujuscemodi quasi furore reverti non solent; et quod in se reversi, nihil horum omnium, quæ ab his interim prolata sunt, ad memoriam revocabunt.

[Unde[1] et, si forte super hoc iterum vel alio consulti dicere debeant, aliis omnino verbis et alienis enuntiabunt:] forsan sicut per phanaticos et energumenos spiritus interdum loquuntur, quanquam ignaros.

Solent autem eis hæc dona plerumque in somnis per visiones infundi. Quibusdam enim videtur, quod eis vel lac dulce, vel mel in ore[2] infundatur: aliis autem, quod eis schedula inscripta ori imponatur. Et statim a somno erecti, et canori effecti,[3] se gratiam hanc suscepisse publice profitentur.

Tale est illud Esdræ, de se scribentis; "Dixit 4 Esd. xiv. 38.
"Dominus mihi, Aperi os tuum. Et aperui os meum;
"et ecce, calix plenus aqua, cujus color similis igni.
"Et cum bibissem, eructavit cor meum intellectum, et
"in pectus meum introivit sapientia."

Faciunt autem inter ipsa initia[4] invocationes[5] ad Deum vivum[6] et verum, et ad sanctam Trinitatem,

[1] *Unde . . enuntiabunt*] Not in D. In Rd., Camden.

[2] *in ore*] D.; ori, Rd., Camden.

[3] *et canori effecti*] D. Not in Rd., Camden. Rd. also has "ex-"perrecti" instead of *erecti* of D. and Camden.

[4] *ipsa initia*] D.; initia, Rd.; vaticinia, Camden.

[5] *invocationes*] D., Camden; vocationes, Rd.

[6] *vivum*] D., Camden; unum, Rd.

ut peccatorum meritis a veri inventione non impediantur. In aliis autem nationibus quam hac Britannica, sicut et olim Trojana de qua descendunt, prophetas hujusmodi raro reperies. Calcas etenim et Cassandra apud Ylion, nobilis illius obsidionis tempore, vaticinii spiritum habentes, urbis excidium aperte prædixerunt. Unde et Helenus Priami filius, qui archiflamen eorum erat, propter vaticiniorum libros quos habebat, tam Calcantis quam et aliorum longe ante, super patriæ destructione, primo statim ad Grecos una cum Calcante se transtulit anno: a quibus et egregie postmodum in Grecia remuneratus est. Cassandra vero puella, Priami regis filia, quotidie urbis eversionem canebat; nec ei tamen, ob superbiam Trojanorum nimiam et præsumptionem, fides habebatur. Nocte quoque qua urbs prodita fuit, proditionem ipsam et modum prodendi manifeste præcinuit. Unde Virgilius;

125. Such prophets amongst the Trojans.

Æn. iii. 183.

"Tales casus Cassandra canebat."

Prophecies of the two Merlins.

Sicut et olim, extante adhuc Britonum regno, gentis excidium, et tam Saxonum primo, quam etiam Normannorum post adventûm, Merlinus uterque, tam Celidonius quam Ambrosius, vaticinando declaravit.[1]

Noct. Att. xv. 18. Not quoted exactly.

Illud quoque, quod de talibus Agellius refert, hic interserere dignum duxi. "Quo Gaius Cesar et Pompeius die per civile bellum collatis signis in Thessalia conflixerunt, in Transpadana Italia memoratu "digna res accidit. Sacerdos namque Cornelius, et "loco nobilis, et sacerdotii religionibus[2] venerandus, "et vitæ castitate sanctus, repente, mota mente, "Cesarem vicisse" proclamavit: "pugnæque dies, et "exitus, omnesque[3] pugnandi reciprocationes, et ipsa

[1] *vaticinando declaravit*] D.; fertur vaticinando declarasse, Rd., Camden.

[2] *religionibus*] D.; religione, Rd., Camden.

[3] *omnesque*] D.; omnes, Rd.; omnis (belonging to *exitus*), Camden.

"duorum exercituum conflictatio, ejus vaticinantis "motu atque verbis repræsentata est."

Sin autem quo[1] spiritu proferantur hujusmodi, scrupulosus lector inquiras, non dico quod pithonico, non dæmoniaco; verum, quia sicut solius est proprium scire futura Dei, sic et futurorum scientiam dare, potius spiritu scientiæ desuper et ex[2] gratia dato.[3] "Divisiones quippe gratiarum sunt," ut ait Apostolus, "unus autem atque idem spiritus." Unde Petrus, in epistola secunda; "Non voluntate humana allata "est aliquando prophetia; sed Spiritu Sancto inspi-"rati, locuti sunt homines."

Objections to such prophecies answered.

1 Cor. xii. 4.

2 Pet. i. 21.

Ad idem facit illud in Daniele, quod Chaldei regi Nabugodonosor super somnii sui[4] interpretatione, quam ab ipsis extorquere volebat, responderunt. "Non est," inquiunt, "homo super terram, qui sermonem tuum, "rex, possit implere: sed neque regum quisquam "magnus et potens verbum hujuscemodi sciscitatur ab "omni ariolo, et mago, et Caldeo. Sermo enim quem "tu, rex, quæris, gravis est; nec reperietur quisquam, "qui indicet illum in conspectu regis, exceptis diis, "quorum non est cum hominibus conversatio."

125 b.

Dan. ii. 10.

Super eundem locum Ieronymus; "Confitentur[5] "arioli, et omnis scientia secularis, præscientiam futu-"rorum solius Dei esse, non hominum. Unde pro-"batur prophetas spiritu Dei locutos, qui dixerunt "futura."

On Dan. ii. 9, 10. Not quoted exactly.

Ad hoc autem, quod objiciunt quidam, quia[6] si spiritu Dei ducerentur, quandoque præmitterent, "Hæc "dicit Dominus Deus," vel aliquid in hunc modum, more prophetico; et quia talis prophetandi modus in Merlino non reperitur, eum potius pithonico spiritu

---

[1] *Sin autem quo*] D.; Sin autem, Rd.; Si, Camden.

[2] *ex*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *dato*] D., Camden; datur, Rd.

[4] *sui*] D., Camden. Not in Rd.

[5] *Confitentur*] Rd., Camden, with Jerome; Confiteantur, D.

[6] *quia*] D. Not in Rd., Camden

locutum esse plerique conjectant; et quia etiam de sanctitate ipsius vel devotione, quanquam fidelis fuerit,[1] minime legitur: ad quæ respondeo, quod non solum sanctis, sed etiam[2] infidelibus interdum et gentilibus, sicut Baleæ et Sybillæ, et etiam malis, ut Cayphæ, sicut et Balaæ, prophetiæ spiritus datus est. Unde

Hom. xiv. in Num. Not quoted exactly. Origenes super Numeri;[3] "Ne mireris si eum, quem "diximus scribas et pharisæos et doctores populi sig-"nificare,[4] videas de Christo prophetare. Cayphas

Joh. xi. 50. "enim ait; 'Expedit nobis, ut unus moriatur homo "'pro populo.' Sed, inquit, 'Quia erat pontifex anni "'illius, prophetavit.' Nemo ergo extollatur si pro-"phetet, si præscientiam mereatur: quia prophetiæ "destruentur, cessabunt linguæ, scientia destruetur: "permanent autem fides, spes, caritas: major autem "est caritas, quæ sola nunquam cadit." Et non solum prophetabant,[5] sed virtutes etiam[6] et signa mali quandoque faciebant, quod boni plerique non poterant. Sicut Johannes Baptista, qui tantus erat, signa non fecit; sicut Johannes Evangelista testatur,

Joh. x. 41. dicens, "Et multi venerunt ad Jhesum, et dicebant "quia Johannes quidem signum fecit nullum," et cetera. De matre quoque Domini non legitur quod signum[7] aliquod fecerit. De filiis autem Scevæ legi-

Act. xix. 14. mus in Actibus Apostolorum, quod in nomine Jhesu, quem Paulus prædicabat, dæmonia ejecerunt.[8] Unde

Matt. vii. 22. in Mathæo et Luca reperies; "Multi dicent in illa

126. "die mihi, Domine, Domine, nonne in nomine tuo "prophetavimus, et in nomine tuo dæmonia ejecimus, "et in nomine tuo virtutes multas fecimus? Et tunc

---

[1] *fuerit*] D., Camden; fuit, Rd.

[2] *etiam*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *Numeri*] D.; Numerum, Rd.; Numer., Camden.

[4] *significare*] Rd., Camden; signare, D.

[5] *prophetabant*] D.; prophetizabant, Rd., Camden.

[6] *etiam*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[7] *signum*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[8] *ejecerunt*] D., Camden; ejecerint, Rd.

"confitebor illis, quia nunquam novi vos." Et alibi; "Respondens autem Joannes dixit; Magister, vidimus quemdam in nomine tuo dæmonia ejicientem; et prohibuimus eum, quia non sequitur nobiscum. Jhesus autem ait; Nolite prohibere eum: nemo est qui faciat virtutem in nomine meo, et possit cito male loqui de me. Qui enim non est adversus nos, pro nobis est." Item Alexander Macedo, gentilis, montes Caspios transtulit; et decem tribus intra eorundem promontoria, ubi usque in hodiernum resident, et usque in adventum Heliæ et Enoch residebunt, miraculose conclusit. Merlini itaque fidem legimus, prophetiam legimus; sanctitatem ejus vel miracula non legimus.

Marc. ix. 37. Luc. ix. 49.

Objiciunt etiam quia prophetæ non extra se fiebant, quando prophetabant: sicut de Merlino Silvestri legitur, quod amens factus prophetabat; et de his similiter quasi arreptitiis, de quibus hic locuti sumus. Sed alii per somnia, visiones, et ænigmata, ut Ezechiel et Daniel; alii per facta et dicta, ut Noe in arcæ fabricatione ecclesiam, Abraham in filii immolatione Christi passionem, Moyses dicens, "Suscitabit vobis Deus prophetam de fratribus vestris; hunc audite," et cetera, Christum significavit;[1] alii excellentiore quodam modo, per internam scilicet[2] Sancti Spiritus inspirationem ac revelationem, ut David. Quibus id solum, quod in libro Regum primo de Saule legitur David persequente, respondeo: quia cum accepisset Saul David in Abaioth,[3] qui est collis in Ramatha, ubi erat cuneus prophetarum, transfugisse, misit lictores in Abaioth[3] ut raperent David; qui cum vidissent prophetas, et Samuelem stantem super eos, factus est in[4] illis spiritus Domini,

Deut. xviii. 15.

1 Reg. xix. 18–24.

[1] *significavit*] Rd., Camden; signavit, D.

[2] *scilicet*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *Abaioth*] D. Rd.; Naioth, Camden, with Vulgate. And so in two cases directly afterwards.

[4] *in*] D., with Vulgate. Not in Rd., Camden.

et prophetabant. Misitque Saul secundos et tertios nuntios, qui et ipsi prophetaverunt: et iratus Saul abiit post eos, et antequam veniret in Abaioth[1] ingrediens prophetabat, et quasi amens factus, et exutus veste regia, tota die et nocte canebat cum ceteris, David et Samuele clam videntibus. Nec mirum si illi, qui spiritum Domini, datamque desuper gratiam tantam subito suscipiunt, a terrenæ mentis interim statu alienari videantur.

[Cap. XVII.]

De generositatis amore, et genealogia longe retenta.

126 b. Their especial regard for high birth. Care about their genealogies.

Generositatem vero, et generis nobilitatem, præ rebus omnibus magis appetunt. Unde et generosa conjugia plus longe cupiunt, quam sumptuosa vel opima. Genealogiam quoque generis sui etiam de populo quilibet observat; et non solum avos, atavos, et tritavos,[2] sed usque ad sextam vel septimam, et ultra procul generationem, memoriter et prompte genus enarrat in hunc modum; Resus filius Griphini, Griphinus filius Resi, Resus filius Theodori; et sic deinceps, ut supra de generatione principum.

Supra, 167.

Love of their race; and vengefulness.

Genus itaque super omnia diligunt; et damna sanguinis atque dedecus acriter ulciscuntur. Vindicis enim animi sunt, et iræ cruentæ; nec solum novas et recentes injurias, verum etiam veteres et antiquas velut instantes vindicare parati.

Have no towns, or castles; but cling to the woods.

Non urbe, non vico, non castris cohabitant; sed quasi solitarii silvis inhærent. In quarum eisdem[3] margine non palatia magna, non[4] sumptuosas et super-

---

[1] See note 3, p. 199.

[2] *et tritavos*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

[3] *eisdem*] D.; ejusdem, Camden. Not in Rd.

[4] *non*] D.; nec, Rd., Camden.

fluas lapidum cæmentique structuras in altum erigere,[1] verum tecta viminea, usibus annuis sufficientia, modico tam labore quam sumptu connectere mos est. Their wattled huts.

Non pomeriis utuntur, non hortis. Utrorumque tamen fructibus, eis aliunde porrectis, libenter vesci[2] solent. No orchards or gardens.

Agris igitur plurimum utuntur pascuis, parum cultis, floridis parce, consitis parcissime. Little but pasture land.

Boves autem ad aratra vel plaustra binos[3] quidem jungunt rarius, sed quaternos frequentius; stimulatore præambulo, sed retrogrado. Quem et pericula plerumque, dum tauri juga detrectant,[4] retro cadendo contingit experiri. Their mode of ploughing.

Falcibus quoque minus[5] utuntur ad metendum: plus autem et expeditius ferro quodam modico, in cultelli modum formato, baculis binis ad capita laxe et flexibiliter catenato. Sed quoniam Of reaping.

> "Segnius irritant animos demissa per aures,
> "Quam quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus,"

Hor. A. P. 180.

melius videndo quam audiendo modum attendes.

Sunt[6] et his naviculæ ad piscandum, seu flumina transnavigandum, vimineæ; non oblongæ, non rostratæ, sed quasi rotundæ, vel potius in triangulum formatæ; undique coriis animalium crudis non intus sed extra[7] contectæ. Cum autem naviculam salmo injectus forte[8] 127. cauda fortiter percusserit, non absque periculo plerumque vecturam pariter et vectorem evertit. Naviculas istas piscatores, barbaro ritu, ad aquas eundo et rede- Their coracles.

---

[1] *in altum erigere*] D., Camden. Not in Rd.

[2] *vesci*] With this word manuscripts V. N., &c., begin again, after their long loss, *supra*, 180, n. 5.

[3] *binos . . frequentius*] D. Rd.; non binos jungunt sed quaternos, V. N.

[4] *detrectant*] D.; detractant, V. N. Rd.

[5] *minus*] V. D. Rd.; minus minutis, N.

[6] *Sunt, &c.*] The rest of this chapter in D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[7] *non intus sed extra*] D.; intus et extra, Rd., Camden.

[8] *forte*] D. Not in Rd., Camden.

The famous tale-teller Bledri.

undo humeris portant. Unde famosus ille fabulator Bledhericus, qui tempora nostra paulo prævenit, super hoc casu sic ænigmatice proloqui consueverat: "Sunt "apud nos gentes, quæ cum ad prædandum deprope-"rent,[1] equos humeris impositos usque ad prædam "ipsam portant. Ad prædam vero capiendam equis "insiliunt. Eaque[2] capta, statim equos humeris iterum "injectos domum redeundo reportant."

[Cap. XVIII.]

De antiqua fidei fundatione; Christianitatis[3] amore, et devotione.

Introduction of Christianity into Britain. Geoffrey, iv. 19; Bed. i. 4. Mission of Germanus and Lupus. Geoffrey, vi. 13; Bed. i. 17. Still existing customs, from their teaching.

Præterea olim, longeque ante excidium Britannicum, quia[4] per annos circiter ducentos, per Faganum et Duvianum, ad petitionem Lucii regis ab Eleutherio papa in insulam transmissos, in fide fundati sunt[5] et solidati. Unde[6] a tempore quo Germanus Altisiodorensis et Lupus Trecensis, propter corruptionem quæ paganorum irruptionibus, Saxonum scilicet,[7] jam irrepserat, et præcipue ad explantandam[8] hæresim Pelagianam in insulam missi sunt, nihil hæreticum, nihil rectæ fidei articulis contrarium sensere. Ab eorundem quoque doctrina, hæc, ut fertur, usque in hodiernum diem[9] documenta tenuerunt. De quolibet pane apposito primum fractionis angulum pauperibus donant.

---

[1] *deproperent*] D., Camden; deproperant, Rd.

[2] *Eaque*] D.; atque, Rd., Camden.

[3] D. has "et" before *Christianitatis*. It is in no other MS., and not in D. in Table of chapters, *supra*, 160.

[4] *quia*] V. N., D. originally, Rd., Camden. Altered in D., by a later hand, to "quasi."

[5] *sunt*] D. In Rd. it comes after *solidati*. Not in V. N.

[6] *Unde*] D.; Unde et, Rd. Not in V. N.

[7] *Saxonum scilicet*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[8] *explantandam*] D.; explanandam, V. N.; expellendam, Rd., Camden.

[9] *diem*] D. Not in V. N. Rd.

Terni quoque, in Trinitatis memoriam, ad prandium sedent. Viro cuilibet religioso, monacho vel clerico, vel cuicunque religionis habitum præferenti, cum obviam veniunt,[1] statim projectis armis cernuo capite benedictionem petunt. Episcopalem vero confirmationem, et chrismatis qua gratia Spiritus datur inunctionem, præ alia gente totus populus magnopere petit. Omnium quoque rerum quas possident, animalium, pecorum, et pecudum, interdum decimas donant: quando videlicet vel uxores sibi maritali copula jungunt, vel peregrinationis iter arripiunt, aut quamlibet vitæ suæ, ecclesiæ consilio, correctionem assumunt.

The great tithe.

Hanc autem rerum suarum partitionem Decimam magnam vocant. Cujus duas partes ecclesiæ suæ[2] 127 b.
baptismali, tertiam vero episcopo diocesano dare solent.

Præ omni autem peregrino labore, Romam peregre libentius eundo, devotis mentibus Apostolorum limina propensius adorant.

Pilgrimages to Rome.

Ecclesiis autem et ecclesiasticis viris, sanctorum quoque[3] reliquiis, baculis, et campanis bajulis, libris textis, et cruci, devotam reverentiam exhibere, longeque magis quam aliam gentem his omnibus honorem[4] deferre videmus. Unde et ecclesiæ istorum longe majorem quam alibi pacem habent. Non etenim in cemiteriis solum, verum etiam extra procul, per metas et fossas ulteriores, ab episcopis causa pacis impositas et constitutas, animalibus ad pascua[5] pax servatur.

Reverence of churches, relics, &c.

Ecclesiæ vero majores, quibus majorem antiquitas reverentiam exhibuit, quantum armenta mane ad pascua exire et vespere redire possunt, pacem præbent. Unde et si cum principe capitales quis inimicitias incurrerit, si ecclesiæ refugium quæsierit, eadem sibi et suis pace gaudebit: adeo ut hac immunitatis indemni-

Right of sanctuary in the more antient churches.

---

[1] *veniunt*] V. D. Rd.; venerunt, N.

[2] *suæ*] D. Not in V. N. Rd.

[3] *quoque*] D. Rd.; que, V. N.

[4] *honorem*] D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[5] *pascua*] D. Rd.; pabula, V. N.

tate, longe canonum indulgentiam excedente, qui corpori solum et membris tali in casu salutem præstant, multi abutentes, et audacius ob hanc impunitatem hostiliter excedunt, et ab his etiam refugii locis, tam patriam undique totam quam principem ipsum graviter infestando molestant.

Hermits and anchorites.

Heremitas[1] et anachoritas abstinentiæ majoris, magisque spirituales, alibi non videas. Gens etenim hæc in omni vehemens est intentione. Unde et sicut malis nusquam pejores, sic bonis meliores non reperies.

Felix itaque gens, et fortunata; gens vere utraque sorte beata; si prælatos haberent bonos et pastores, unoque gauderent principe, et illo bono.

EXPLICIT LIBER PRIMUS; LAUDABILIUM.

---

[1] *Heremitas*] D. Rd.; Heremitas autem, V. N. This passage is repeated by Giraldus in the treatise *De Jure, &c.*, vol. iii. 115.

INCIPIT LIBER[1] SECUNDUS; ILLAUDABILIUM.

Præfatio[2] *secundi libri.*

Quoniam, in priore libro, gentis Britannicæ naturam, mores, et modos satis[3] evidenter explicuimus; eaque præcipue quæ virtuti consona, et in unum collecta ad laudem ejus et honorem vere poterant explanari; de cetero competens ordo deposcit, ut in sequenti operis partitione, more historico, ad ea quoque quæ virtutis et laudis lineam egredi videntur calamum vertamus: "impetrata[4] tamen veritatis explicandæ venia, citra quam "omnis historia non solum auctoritatem sed et merito[5] nomen "historiæ demeretur. Naturam enimvero imitari arte pro- "fessus auctoritatem pictor amittit, si diligentius apta dum "protrahit, minus idonea verecunde prætermittit.

Giraldus now proceeds to describe the bad points of the Welsh.

128.

"Unde et, quoniam

"'Vitiis sine nemo nascitur; optimus ille est
"'Qui minimis urgetur,'

Hor. 1 S. iii. 68.

"nihil humanum a se alienum sapiens putet. Semper enim "mundanis in rebus, quia nulla sub cœlo perfecta felicitas, "et mala sunt vicina bonis, et vitia virtutibus distinguuntur. "Sicut ergo sive naturæ sive industriæ bona mentem bene "compositam audita delectant, sic recitata bonis contraria non

Ter. Heaut. I. 1, 25.

[1] *liber*] V. N. Not in D. Rd.; this "Incipit" forming one rubric with the "Explicit" of Lib. i.

[2] *Præfatio secundi libri*] D. Rd. Not in V. N. The heading in T., the *Symbolum Electorum*, is, "In "Kambriæ descriptionem præfatio "tertia," vol. i. 394.

[3] *satis*] T. D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[4] *impetrata . . . non offendant*] This repeated from lib. i, cap. xlvi of the *Expug. Hibern.*, vol. v. 301.

[5] *merito*] This not in the *Expug. Hibern.*

"offendant." Corrumpi nimirum ex longo exilio et paupertate, pejoresque ad usus gentis hujus natura perverti potuit. Sicut enim multa paupertas extinguere vitia solet, sic nonnulla interdum ex eadem contraria virtutibus adolescunt.

[Cap. I.]

De inconstantia gentis hujus et instabilitate; fidei quoque sacramentique reverentia nulla.

Their inconstancy.

Gens igitur hæc gens fidei tenerrimæ;[1] nec minus animo levis quam corpore. Gens ad facinus quodlibet sicut facillime impellitur, sic a proposito seu jam incepto eadem facilitate revocatur. Gens in omni quidem mobilis actione, semper tamen in malo pertinacior: nullius nempe rei præter inconstantiæ solius constantiam habens.

Constant in evil, if in anything.

Their disregard of oaths, and of all truthfulness.

Nullum eis jusjurandum; nulla fidei, nulla veritatis reverentia. Adeo namque fidei fœdus, aliis inviolabile gentibus, parvipendere solent, ut non in seriis solum et necessariis, verum in ludicris, omnique fere verbo firmando, dextræ manus ut mos est porrectione, signo usuali dato, fidem gratis effundere consueverint.

Always ready for perjury.

Præterea quicquid commodi, quicquid temporalis emolumenti, sacramenti transgressione provenire potest, passim perjurio parant. Adeo quidem ut in causis tam ecclesiasticis[2] quam forensibus, nunc excipiendo, nunc

[1] *tenerrimæ*] So all the MSS. Wharton has "tenuissimæ" in his text, with "tenerrimæ, *Cod. Cotton.*" (*i.e.* D.) in the margin. Perhaps, therefore, "tenuissimæ" was the reading of the lost Westminster MS. used by Wharton. Compare the beginning of cap. 39, lib. ii. of *Expug. Hibern.* (vol. v. 398), where we have, "Gens itaque fidei tenerrimæ, nec levis minus animo "quam corpore."

[2] *tam ecclesiasticis . . replicando*] D. Rd.; foroque civili tam excipiendo quam explicando, V. N. Wharton has this latter reading in his text, no doubt from the Westminster MS., and gives the other reading, from *Cod. Cotton.* (D.), in the margin.

replicando, puta quicquid ad præsens expedire videtur jurare parati, pars utraque semper agere, semper probare nitatur. Quanquam tamen venerandæ leges, ubi sacramenta sacra putantur, ubi reverentia veris et honor exhibetur honestis, in rei favorem, et odium actoris, probationem actori tanquam onus imponant, porro populo versuto et versipelli jugum hoc suave et onus leve videtur. 128 b.

[Cap. II.]

Quod rapto vivunt; et[1] *pacis amicitiæque*[2] *fœdera non custodiunt.*

Ad hæc etiam rapinis insistere, raptoque vivere, furto, et latrocinio, non solum ad exteros et hostiles populos, verum etiam inter se proprium habent. Their rapine and thieveries.

Pacis quoque et amicitiæ fœdera, visa nocendi opportunitate, non respiciunt: fidei sacramentique religionem turpi postponentes lucro. Quod[3] et Gildas olim in libro *De excidio Britonum*, more historico suæ gentis vitia veritatis amore non supprimens, his verbis declaravit; "Nec in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles." No regard for solemn treaties. Gildas, § 6.

Sed quando Julius Cesar, qui tantus erat quantus et orbis, sub Cassibelliano duce Proofs of British valour.

"Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis," Lucan, Phars. ii. 572.

numquid non fortes fuere? Quid etiam, quando Belinus et Brennius Romanum imperium suis addidere victoriis? Quid Helenæ nostræ filii imperatoris tempore Constantini? Quid Aurelii Ambrosii regno, quem

---

[1] *et*] V. D. Rd., Wharton. Not in N.

[2] *amicitiæque*] D. Rd., Wharton; et amicitiæ, N.; amicitiæ, V. The heading as in the text agrees with that in Table of chapters *supra*, 160.

[3] *Quod*] D. Rd., Wharton; idem, V. N.

etiam laudibus Eutropius[1] effert? Et Arturi nostri famosi, ne dicam fabulosi, tempore quanti fuere?

Proofs to the contrary.

Sed, e diverso, qui a Scotis et Pictis, populisque tam vilibus, fere debellati, auxiliatrices Romanas toties vexarunt legiones,[2] dicentes, sicut[3] ex Gilda colligimus, "Barbari nos ad mare, mare autem ad barbaros im-"pellit:[4] hinc submergimur, hinc trucidamur," numquid tunc fortes, numquid laudabiles fuere? A Saxonibus quoque in auxilium vocatis, et stipendiario munere locatis,[5] quando expugnati et subacti, numquid fortes? Et quod[6] omnium istorum validius ignaviæ eorum argumentum est, quod Gildas, qui vir sanctus erat et de gente eadem, in cunctis quas de gestis eorum[7] scripsit historiis, nihil unquam[8] egregium de ipsis posteritati reliquit.

Gildas, § 20.

Gildas has no good word for the Britons.

Hujus autem contrarii solutionem, Deo duce, vitaque comite, in Britannica promittimus Topographia.

129. Id tamen[9] hic tantillum ad majorem evidentiam addere sufficiat, quod ex quo Maximus[10] ille Britonum princeps, cujus in capite libelli mentionem fecimus, totum armatæ juventutis Britanniæ in transmarina ducendo robur exhauserat, multis postmodum annis vacua viris et viribus[11] insula piratis et prædonibus mansit exposita. Quæ quidem antea incomparabili

Britain's strength exhausted by Maximus.

Supra, 166.

---

[1] I can find nothing of the sort in Eutropius.

[2] *legiones*] D. Rd., Wharton; legationes, V. N.

[3] *sicut ex Gilda colligimus*] D., Wharton. Not in V. N. Rd.

[4] *impellit*] D. Rd., Wharton; nos impellit, V. N.

[5] *locatis*] V. N. Rd., Wharton; conductis, D.

[6] *Et quod, &c.*] Against this, in the margin, Wharton has "Deest in "*Cod. Cotton.*," but erroneously. There is nothing whatever omitted in D.

[7] *gestis eorum*] V. N. D. Rd.; gente ipsorum, Wharton.

[8] *unquam*] D. Rd.; usquam, V. N., Wharton.

[9] *Id tamen, &c.*] Hence, to end of chapter, in D. Rd. Not in V. N.; and, according to Wharton, not in the lost Westminster MS.

[10] *Maximus ille Brit. princeps*] D., Wharton; Britonum princeps ille tam re Maximus quam nomine, Rd., and Sloane 1691, and 4785.

[11] *et viribus*] D., Wharton. Not in Rd., and Sloane 1691, and 4785.

strenuitatis gloria floruerat; adeo quidem ut per ejus alumnos, prædictus ille tyrannus totam fere Cisalpinam Galliam subjugaverit, ipsumque Romanum imperium armis attemptare præsumpserit. Processu quoque temporis, longa demum propagatione multiplicata, et armis instructa, in pristinæ probitatis audaciam Britannica juventus excrevit. Distinguantur igitur in hunc modum tempora, et concordabit scriptura.[1] His successes owing to the Britons.

De Gilda vero, qui adeo in gentem suam acriter invehitur, dicunt Rritones, quod propter fratrem suum Albaniæ principem, quem rex Arthurus occiderat, offensus hæc scripsit. Unde et libros egregios, quos de gestis Arthuri, et gentis suæ laudibus, multos scripserat, audita fratris sui nece, omnes, ut asserunt, in mare projecit. Cujus rei causa, nihil de tanto principe in scriptis authenticis expressum invenies. Gildas destroyed his history of Arthur, &c.

[Cap. III.]

De martio conflictu invalido; turpique fuga et illaudabili.

In bellico conflictu, primo impetu, acrimonia, voce, vultu terribiles effecti, tam clamore horrendo cœlum replente, tubarumque prælongarum clangore altisono, quam pernici pariter ac præcipiti cursu, crebris quoque[2] jaculorum ictibus, gens asperrima. Porro si suscepta viriliter passa fuerit primo repulsam, confusioni facillime data. Statim ut terga dederint, solum fugæ præsidio, nullique penitus confidunt rebellioni. Quod tamen in martiis conflictibus reprehensibile poeta non ignoravit, dicens; In battle, the fierce first attack of the Welsh: but, if repulsed, their cowardly flight.

"Ignavum scelus est tantum fuga;" Lucan. Phars. ix. 283.

[1] *concordabit scriptura*] So all the MSS. Wharton has "concor-" dabunt scripta;" no doubt an improvement of his own, or of his scribe, upon Giraldus.

[2] *quoque*] D. Rd., Wharton; que, V. N.

et alibi,

Hor. A. P. 31. "In vitium culpæ ducit fuga, si caret arte."

129 b. Sicut ergo de Theutonicis legitur,[1] sic et istis idem adaptari [2] potest; "In primo impetu majores sunt "viris, in secundo vero minores mulieribus." In fuga nimirum et confectione crebro revertens, et tanquam Parthicis a tergo sagittis fugiendo repugnans, animosa virilitas magis apparet. Et tamen, sicut in bellicis successibus ac victoriis, etiam ignavi de virtute gloriantur, sic et in pejori fortuna vix etiam viris sua virtus conceditur.

But this a consequence of their way of warfare;

Totum itaque vel fugando vel fugiendo certamen eorum. De plano namque confligere, deque victoria cominus contendere, diuque viriliter dimicare; cujusmodi conflictum poeta describit, dicens,

Stat. Theb. viii. 398.

"Jam clipeo clipeus,[3] umbone repellitur umbo,
"Ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspide cuspis;"

and of their light-armed troops.

Ever ready to fight again.

gens exiliter[4] armata, et agilitate potius quam robustis viribus confisa, sustinere non potest. Verumtamen hodie confecta, et cruentam in fugam turpiter conversa, cras nihilominus expeditionem parat, nec damno nec dedecore retardata. Et si apertis congressibus, belloque indicto forte non prævalet, insidiis saltem et nocturnis irruptionibus hostem gravat. Unde et, quoniam nec fame nec frigore gravata, nec martio labore fatigata, nec casibus adversis in desperationem data, sed post lapsum protinus[5] resurgere prompta, bellique discrimina denuo subire parata, sicut prælio facile, sic bello difficile vinci solet.

---

[1] *legitur*] Before this Wharton has, "in Romana Historia." It is in no MS.

[2] *adaptari*] D. Rd.; assignari, V. N., Wharton.

[3] Statius has, "Jam clipeus clipeis."

[4] *exiliter*] D. Rd.; leviter, V. N., Wharton.

[5] *protinus*] D.; statim, V. N. Rd., Wharton.

Unde et Claudianus de gentis ejusdem, vel similis,[1] natura loqui videtur, dicens;

"Dum pereunt, meminere mali; si corda parumper
"Respirare sinas, nullo tot funera sensu
"Prætereunt; tantique levis jactura cruoris."

In Eutrop. ii. 116.

[Cap. IIII.]

De ambitiosa terrarum occupatione; et inter fratres divisione.

Their unjust occupations of lands.

Finales autem fossas effodere, terminos transponere, et metas transcurrere, terrasque modis omnibus vel occupare vel dilatare, gens præ gentibus aliis ambitiosa.

Adeo quidem hoc ambitionis vitio communi labe laborant, quod terras quascunque seu precario, seu commodato, locationis, conductionis, emphyteoseos, vel alio quocunque titulo semel ipsos[2] possidere contigerit, sacramentis etiam vero domino ac proprietario super indemnitate ac securitate palam interpositis, nihilo- 130.
minus tamen easdem tanquam proprias et hereditarias sibi jure perpetuo vindicabunt.

Hinc itaque lites in curia, et contentiones; hinc cædes et incendia; hinc crebra fratricidia.

Equal rights of inheritance amongst brothers. The custom of foster-fathering. The ill-consequences.

Ad hæc[3] etiam, quod fratres inter se pro herili terras portione dividunt et distinguunt, antiquus in hac gente mos obtinuit. Accessit et aliud incommodum grave, quod principes filios suos generosis de terra sua viris diversis diversos alendos tradunt: quorum quilibet alumnum suum post patris obitum extollere, aliisque præferre, toto conamine nititur et machinatur. Per quod graves terris eorum toties, nec sine cædibus multis et fratricidiis, seu fratrum exocu-

[1] *vel similis*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.
[2] *ipsos*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.
[3] *hæc*] V. D. Rd., Wharton; hoc, N.

lationibus crebris, virium quoque omnium et successuum experientia difficile[1] sedabiles, emergere solent turbationes.

Unde et inter fratres collactaneos quam naturales longe veriores invenies amicitias.

Hoc etiam in his notabile, quod fratres plus mortuos diligunt quam vivos. Vivos enim ad mortem persequuntur; mortuos autem, et ab aliis interemptos, totis viribus ulciscuntur.

Quibus[2] et illa Malachiæ verba vere adaptari posse videntur; "Periit sanctus de terra, et rectus in hominibus non est. Omnes in sanguine insidiantur: vir fratrem suum venatur ad mortem: malum manuum suarum dicunt bonum."

Mich. vii. 2.

[Cap. V.]

De gravi eorum exactione, et immoderantia.

Their exactions of victuals and drink.

Ubi autem copiam inveniunt, et potestatem exercere possunt, exactores improbissimi.[3] Cibo namque, potuque præsertim inebriante, extra briam omnem poni cupientes, modum et modestiam minus observant: quasi[4] cum apostolo dicentes, "Scimus et abundare, scimus et penuriam pati;" sed non cum eodem, "Omnibus omnia facti," ut omnia lucrifaciant Deo. Sicut enim, ingruente necessitate, nimiæ abstinentiæ sunt et parsimoniæ; sic, post longam esuriem, lupis in hoc et aquilæ similes, quia sicut et illi rapto vivunt et raro reficiuntur, ad alienam præcipue positi mensam, immoderatam appetunt refectionem.[5]

Phil. iv. 12. 1 Cor. ix. 20–22.

Their abstinence, in need; and wolfish gluttony, in plenty.

[1] *difficile*] D. Rd.; facile, V. N. Wharton has "facile fœdabiles."

[2] *Quibus . . bonum*] This in D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton. *Malachiæ* is a mistake for *Micheæ*.

[3] *improbissimi*] D. Rd., Wharton; improbissimi sunt, V. N.

[4] *quasi . . dicentes*] D. Rd.; dicentes cum apostolo, V. N., Wharton.

[5] *refectionem*] D. Rd.; saturitatem, V. N., Wharton.

Sunt igitur in penuria parci, in copia superflui. Suam tamen nemo substantiam, sicut in Anglorum gente videmus, ob gulæ propriæ crapulæque vitium, in damnum fenebre [1] donat. 130 b. But not so as to waste their own substance.

In sumptibus autem exhibitionis [2] et honore,[3] volunt omnes omnibus, quoniam

"Facinus quos inquinat æquat," Lucan. Phars. v. 290.

prava consuetudine parificari.

[Cap. VI.]

De incestus crimine; ecclesiarum quoque per successiones et participes abusione.

Crimen autem incestus adeo apud omnes, tam minores in populo quam etiam majores, enormiter invaluit, quod in quarto gradu et quinto passim, in tertio quoque plerumque, quia non est timor Dei ante oculos eorum, consanguineas ducere nec verecundantur nec verentur. Ad sedandas quippe inimicitias, quas inter se toties, quia veloces pedes eorum ad effundendum sanguinem, hostiliter incurrunt, hujuscemodi per se dispensationibus passim abutuntur. Ob generositatis etiam amorem, quam tantopere cupiunt et affectant, suæ genti se jungentes, alienis omnibus, tanquam sanguine et origine, juxta [4] innatæ præsumptionis arrogantiam, longe disparibus, modis omnibus copulari recusant. Their incestuous marriages; even with cousins.

Matrimoniorum autem onera, nisi expertis antea cohabitatione, commixtione, morum qualitate, et præcipue fecunditate, subire non solent. Proinde et Cohabitation usual before marriage.

---

[1] *in damnum fenebre*] D.; in dam. funebre, Rd.; fenori, V. N., Wharton.

[2] *exhibitionis*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.

[3] *honore*] D. Rd., Wharton; honoribus, V. N.

[4] *juxta . . arrogantiam*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

Girls purchased, on trial.

puellas, sub certo parentibus pecuniæ pretio,[1] et resipiscendi pœna statuta, non ducere quidem in primis sed quasi conducere, antiquus in hac gente mos obtinuit.

Church abuses.

Ecclesiæ vero[2] istorum omnes fere tot personas et participes habent, quot capitalium virorum in parochia genera fuerint.

Hereditary succession to benefices.

Successive quoque, et post patres, filii ecclesias obtinent, non elective; hereditate possidentes, et polluentes sanctuarium Dei. Quia si prælatus alium eligere et instituere forte præsumpserit, in instituentem procul dubio, vel institutum, genus injuriam vindicaret.

Like excesses in Bretagne. 131. Hild. Epp. ii. 30 (65 of old Edd.). Therefore common to the whole British race. Ps. xiii. 1–3.

De duobus[3] autem his excessibus, incestus videlicet et successionis, radicatis olim in Armorica Britannia, necdum eradicatis, scribit in quadam epistola sua Ildebertus Cenomanensis episcopus, dicens[4] se concilio interfuisse cum clero Britanniæ, ob has enormitates gentis illius extirpandas convocato. Ex quibus constare potest utrumque vitium toti huic genti, tam cismarinæ quam transmarinæ, ab antiquo commune fuisse. Unde et illud psalmistæ David non incompetenter huic populo adaptari posse videtur; "Corrupti "sunt, et abominabiles facti sunt in studiis suis. "Non est qui faciat bonum; non est, usque ad unum. "Omnes declinaverunt: simul inutiles facti sunt;[5] "non est qui faciat bonum, non est usque ad unum. "Sepulchrum patens est guttur eorum; linguis suis "dolose agebant; venenum aspidum sub labiis eorum. "Quorum os maledictione et amaritudine plenum est: "veloces pedes eorum ad effundendum sanguinem. "Contritio et infelicitas in viis eorum; et viam pacis

---

[1] *pretio*] D. Rd., Wharton; numero, V. N.

[2] *vero*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[3] *De duobus . . commune fuisse*] This is repeated, in nearly the same words, in the *De Jure, &c.* (vol. iii. 130).

[4] *dicens*] D. Rd. and *De Jure, &c.*; dicens etiam, V. N., Wharton.

[5] Rest of the chapter omitted in Wharton.

"non cognoverunt. Non est timor Dei ante oculos "eorum."

Similiter[1] et illud Salomonis; "Fili mi, ne ambu- "les cum eis; prohibe pedem tuum[2] a semitis eorum. "Pedes enim illorum ad malum currunt; et festinant "ut effundant sanguinem."

Prov. i. 15, 16.

[Cap. VII.]

De peccatis eorum; et tam Britanniæ quam Trojæ, meritis urgentibus, amissione.

Præterea, peccatis urgentibus, et præcipue detestabili illo et nefando Sodomitico, divina ultione tam olim Trojam quam postea Britanniam amiserunt. Legitur enim,[3] quia Constantinus imperator, occidentali imperio beato Silvestro et successoribus suis cum urbe relicto, Trojam reædificare proponens, ibique orientalis imperii caput erigere volens, audivit hanc vocem, "Vadis reædificare Sodomam;" et statim mutato consilio versus Bizantium vela pariter et vexilla convertit; ibique imperii sui caput constituens, urbem eandem felici suo nomine decoravit.

Their sins, especially the sin of Sodom, the cause of the loss of Troy, and of Britain.

De Mailgone quoque Britonum rege, aliisque plurimis, in historia Britonum legitur, eodem vitio laborantibus.

Geoffrey, xi. 7.

Verumtamen multo jam tempore adeo a Britonibus enormitas illa prorsus evanuit, ut ejus etiam memoria jam apud eos vix habeatur. Proinde, quasi pœnitentia jam fere peracta, et quoniam numero præter solitum et multitudine, viribus et armis,[4] bellorum quoque

This sin long unknown amongst the Welsh. 131 b. Their penitence, &c.;

[1] This last section in D. Rd. Not in V. N.

[2] *pedem tuum*] D., with Vulgate; pedes tuos, Rd,

[3] Wharton adds, "in Romana "historia." It is in no manuscript that I have seen.

[4] Here, in V. N,, &c., without sign of anything wrong, comes continuously their missing portion of the second Preface (*supra*,163, n. 1).

and confident boasts of recovering the dominion of Britain.

successibus, et terrarum incrementis, nostris plurimum diebus adaucti sunt, gloriantur ad invicem, prædicant, et confidentissime jactant, toto quod[1] mirum est in hac spe populo manente, quoniam in brevi cives in insulam revertentur; et juxta Merlini sui vaticinia, exterorum tam natione pereunte quam nuncupatione, antiquo in insula tam nomine quam omine Britones exultabunt.

Sed mihi quidem[2] longe aliter visum est. Quoniam enimvero

Ov. Ar. Am. ii. 437.

"Luxuriant animi rebus plerumque secundis,
"Nec facile est æqua commoda mente pati;"

et quia

Ov. Rem. Am. 749 and 746.

"Non habet unde suum paupertas pascat amorem;"
"Divitiis alitur luxuriosus amor;"

ut paupertati potius in hoc exilio,[3] quo extorres fere facti sunt a regno, attribuenda sit vitii[4] illius, quo in divitiis carere nescierant, illa carentia, quam virtuti.

Their impenitence proved by their other gross sins.

Qualiter etiam pœnitentiam egisse,[5] nedum peregisse dicentur, quos tot peccatis vitiorumque voragini datos, perjuriis puta, furtis, latrociniis, rapinis,[6] homicidiis et fratricidiis, adulteriis et incestibus, obstinata de die in diem amplius malitia implicitos videmus et irretitos? Adeo[7] quidem ut verbis Osee prophetæ in ipsos uti vere quis possit; "Non est veritas, et non est mise-"ricordia,[8] et non est scientia Domini in eis. Male-

Os. iv. 1–3.

[1] *toto quod*] V. D., &c.; totoque, N.

[2] *quidem*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.

[3] *hoc exilio*] V. N. Rd., Wharton; exilio hoc, D.

[4] *vitii*] D., &c.; vitium, V. N.

[5] *egisse*] D. Rd. Not in Wharton. Instead of *egisse nedum*, V. and N. have "gule nec dum."

[6] *rapinis*] D., &c. Not in V. N.

[7] The rest of this section, *Adeo . . . vapulabit*, in D. Rd. Not in V. N. Wharton has the marginal note, "Deest ista periodus in *Cod. West.*;" but, no doubt by mistake, opposite to the beginning of the clause before, "Qualiter," &c.

[8] Wharton gives no more of this quotation, stopping with "miseri-"cordia," &c.

"dictum, et mendacium, et homicidium, et furtum, et "adulterium inundaverunt; et sanguis sanguinem "tetigit. Propter quod[1] lugebit terra eorum, et in- "firmabitur omnis qui habitat in ea." "Et populus "non intelligens vapulabit." Os. iv. 14.

Alia quoque, de quibus jactant, operosis regum Normannorum curis, quibus Francorum superbiæ in transmarinis tantopere[2] indulgent, longe verius quam vel eorum viribus magnis vel potentiis sunt assignanda. Others of their boasts worthless.

Hujus autem rei si certitudinem quæris, respice reges Anglicos Normannis priores. Qui, quoniam hac solum insula Britannica contenti fuerant, et tantum his debellandis operam dabant, eosdem pene penitus sæpe deleverant. Sicut rex Offa suo in tempore; qui et fossa finali, in longum extensa, Britones ab Anglis exclusit; Ethelfridus quoque, qui nobilem Legionum urbem destruxit, et egregii illius Bangornensis monasterii monachos, in auxilium orando vocatos, gladiis interemit. Et sicut longe plenius Haroldus ultimus: qui, pedes ipse, cumque[3] pedestri turba,[4] et levibus armis, victuque patriæ conformi, tam valide totam Kambriam et circuivit, et transpenetravit, ut in eadem fere mingentem ad parietem non reliquerit. Victories of the English before the Norman conquest. Of Offa; Ethelfrid; 132. and Harold especially.

In cujus victoriæ signum, perpetuamque memoriam, lapides in Wallia more antiquo in titulum erectos, locis plerisque[5] in quibus victor extiterat, literas hujusmodi insculptas[6] habentes plurimos invenies, HIC FUIT VICTOR HAROLDUS. Memorial stones of Harold's victories.

Ob has igitur tam cruentas tamque recentes Anglorum de hac gente victorias, primi tres Normannorum reges in tanta subjectione tamque pacificam suis diebus Wales in peaceful subjection to the first

[1] *quod*] D.; hoc, Rd., with Vulgate.

[2] Wharton has, "tanto præindul- "gent."

[3] *cumque*] V. N. Rd., Wharton; cum, D.

[4] *turba*] So the MSS. Wharton has "turma."

[5] *plerisque*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.

[6] *insculptas*] V. N. Rd., Wharton; sculptas, D.

three Norman kings. Walliam tenuere. Quorum temporibus gens hæc in numero plurimum adaucta, armis etiam et equis a Normannis et Anglis, quos et curiam sequendo et obsides dando jam frequentaverant, edocta paulatim et assueta, trium sequentium tempore, propter majores, ut diximus, quibus transmarinas ad partes tenebantur curas, cervicem[1] erigentes, et terras occupantes, pristinum ferre jugum omnino respuerunt.

[Cap. VIII.]

Qualiter gens ista sit expugnanda.

How the Welsh are to be subdued. A year's continual care and toil necessary.

Porro qui gentem hanc subjugare, pacificamque tenere voluerit, hac arte utatur. In primis operam ad minus annuam, operosamque curam et assiduam, huic adhibere negotio princeps[2] in animo fixum habeat. Gens etenim, quæ nec in campo contra exercitum armatum consertis viribus aperte congreditur, nec in castellis obsidionem exspectat, non impetu primo, sed per moram diligentem et vacationem est expugnanda.

Their divisions to be fostered by gifts and promises.

Deinde vires eorum dividat, et quosdam ex ipsis ad alios confundendos, quia se invicem odio et invidia persequi solent, donariis alliciat tam præmissis quam promissis. Et sic, autumnali in tempore, non solum

Castles to be built.

marchia, sed etiam terra interior locis idoneis, castellis, alimentis copiose refertis[3] et familiis bonis, bene

132 b. muniatur.

Trade with England to be stopped. And the coast blockaded.

Interim autem cuncta mercimonia ferri,[4] panni, salis, et bladi, quibus ab Anglicana copia sustentari solent, arctius eis inhibeantur. Naves quoque, validis plenæ viris, ne per Hybernicum vel Sabrinum mare eis præ-

---

[1] *cervicem*] D. Rd., Wharton; cervices, V. N.

[2] *princeps*] So V. N. Rd. and Wharton. In D. it comes at the end of the sentence, after "habeat."

[3] *copiose refertis*] So the MSS. Not in Wharton.

[4] *ferri*] So the MSS.; frumenti, Wharton.

dicta navigio deferri possint, aliquot ad tutelam adhibeantur: quibus et ab hostibus arceantur, et suis victualia deferantur.

Subsequenter autem, hieme ingruente majore, vel potius[1] ejusdem fine, Martio videlicet et Februario, cum et foliis silvæ, et pascuis montana caruerint, prædis abductis, ipsisque jam per familias et crebros undique castrensium impetus plurimum afflictis, cum exercitu pedestri valido, mediocriter et non ad onus armato, usque ad eorum latibula, silvarumque condensa, et arborum confraga, viriliter transpenetretur. Semper autem pedestribus turmis e vestigio sequentes, ad fortitudinem et refugium, milites aliquot adjiciantur. Et sic, per crebras confligentium mutationes, ut fatigatis semper turmis novæ succedant, per cædes quoque et strages multas, si casus obtulerit, expugnentur. Non enim his sine, nec absque periculo multorum et damno, gens poterit inimica debellari.

In the early spring, their fastnesses to be penetrated by a strong force of light-armed infantry.

Frequent supplies of fresh troops.

Much loss to be expected.

Sed licet hodie de Anglorum exercitu stipendiarii multi ceciderint, cras nihilominus ad eadem discrimina totidem vel plures moneta dabit. De Kambrensibus autem, quoniam nec alienigenas nec stipendiarios habent, quicunque ceciderint, damnum eis inpræsentiarum irreparabile fiet.

English stipendiaries may be replaced; but to the Welsh, loss of men irreparable.

In hoc[2] itaque negotio, sicut artifici credendum est in sua facultate, sic horum præcipue standum est consilio, qui, circa similia patriæ negotia conversati diutius et usitati, mores gentis et modos agnoscunt; quorumque magnopere refert, ut gens inimica, quacum ex crebris belli diutini conflictibus hostilitatem plurimam et odium implacabile contraxerunt, eorundem opera vel debilitari possit vel deleri.

The counsels of the lord marchers to be followed.

---

[1] *vel potius . . Februario*] So the MSS. Not in Wharton.

[2] Almost the whole of the next five sections, down to "congressi-"bus adhibendi," is repeated from Cap. 38 of the 2nd Book of the *Exp. Hib.* (vol. v. 395), in nearly the same words, but not in the same order; and in two or three instances with additional matter.

Felices dixerim Kambriæ fines, quos Anglorum gens inhabitat, si reges eorundem, in partibus illis guber-
133. nandis, et propulsandis inimicæ gentis injuriis, plus marchionum et baronum patriæ quam Andegavorum et Normannorum consiliis et dispositionibus olim usi fuissent.

For such war the troops of the marches the best.

In hac autem expeditione, sicut et[1] in alia qualibet sive Hybernica sive Kambrica, gens in Kambriæ marchia nutrita, gens hostilibus partium illarum conflictibus exercitata, competentissima; puta, formatis a convictu moribus, audax et expedita; cum alea Martis exegerit, nunc equis habilis, nunc pedibus agilis inventa; cibo potuque non delicata, tam Cerere quam Baccho, causis urgentibus, abstinere parata. Talibus tam Hybernia quam Kambria viris initium habuit expugnationis: talibus quoque, vel nullis, consummabilis finem habitura conquisitionis. Flandrenses quippe, Normanni, Coterelli, et Bragmanni, quanquam suis in terris milites egregii sint, et armis instructissimi, Gallica tamen militia multum[2] a Kambrica, sicut ab Hybernica, distare dignoscitur. Ibi namque plana petuntur, hic aspera; ibi campestria, hic silvestria; ibi arma honori, hic oneri; ibi stabilitate vincitur, hic agilitate; ibi capiuntur milites, hic decapitantur; ibi redimuntur, hic perimuntur.

And light-armed troops much the best.

Sicut igitur, ubi militares acies de plano conveniunt, gravis illa et multiplex armatura, tam linea scilicet quam ferrea, milites egregie munit et ornat, sic, ubi solum in arcto confligitur, seu loco silvestri seu palustri, ubi pedites potius quam equites locum habent, longe levis armatura præstantior. Contra inermes namque viros, quibus semper in primo fere impetu vel parta est statim vel perdita victoria, expeditiora satis arma sufficiunt; ubi fugitivam et agilem per arcta vel

---

[1] *et*] D. Rd. Not in V. N., Wharton.

[2] *multum*] So the MSS. Not in Wharton.

aspera gentem sola necesse est gravi [1] quadam et armata mediocriter agilitate confundi. Cum illa nimirum armatura multiplici, sellisque recurvis et altis, difficile descenditur, difficilius ascenditur, difficillime, cum opus est, pedibus itur.

Ut igitur

"Singula quæque locum teneant sortita decenter," Hor. A. P. 92.

contra graves et armatos, solumque virium robore et armorum ope confisos, de plano dimicare victoriamque vi obtinere contendentes, armatis quoque viris et viribus opus ibi esse proculdubio protestamur: contra leves autem et agiles, et aspera petentes, levis armaturæ viri, taliumque præsertim exercitati congressibus, adhibendi. 133 b.

Urbes autem et castra quæ Sabrina perlabitur, totaque terra ab occidua ejusdem parte versus Walliam ab Anglis occupata, necnon et Slopesburiæ provincia, et Cestria tota, communiæ [2] viribus et armis, vel alio quovis speciali libertatis honore, provida principis largitione lætentur. The towns, &c., on the Severn to have special corporate rights.

Ubi et annis singulis, per viros probos et discretos ad hoc deputatos, qui patriæ tutelæ et defensioni, non rapinis intendant et destructioni, bellici apparatus, armorum scilicet et equorum, visio fiat. Barones [3] quoque partium illarum super unanimi gentis hostilis expugnatione sacramentis arctissime constringantur: quatinus ibidem tam militibus et civibus, quam servientibus populoque toto, armis instructis et assuetis, et libertati in hunc modum libertas opponatur, et per superbiam superbia retundatur. Their arms and horses to be inspected annually. The whole population to be trained to arms.

Kambri nimirum, quia nec laboriosis oneribus oppri- Liberty

[1] *gravi* seems wrong. But the sentence is as in the text in all MSS., both of the *Exp. Hib.* and of the present treatise.

[2] *communiæ*] D.; communi se, V. N.; communiter, Rd.; communitæ, Wharton.

[3] *Barones . . constringantur*] So the MSS. Not in Wharton.

enjoyed by the Welsh. muntur,[1] nec servilibus operibus atteruntur, nec dominorum exactionibus ullis molestantur, hinc eis ad propulsandas injurias cervix erecta, hinc ad patriæ tutelam audacia tanta, hinc armis semper et rebellionibus gens parata.[2] Nihil est etenim quod adeo corda virorum ad probitatem excitet, erigat, et invitet, ut libertatis hilaritas; nihil adeo deprimit et deterret, ut servitutis oppressio.

Poterit etiam hæc regni particula, armis et animositate munita, non solum in finibus istis, verum et alibi, in necessitatis articulis, tam remotis partibus quam propinquis, egregie principi militare.

Et si forte a provinciis istis, annuis vectigalibus fiscali minus ærario proveniat, regni pace et regis honore plene et abunde defectus iste[3] compensetur. Præsertim etiam cum expeditionis unius ad Walliarum[4] partes gravis admodum et periculosa sumptuositas multorum soleat annorum[5] fiscales finium illorum reditus æquiparare.

[Cap: IX.]

Qualiter, expugnata, sit gubernanda.

134. How the Welsh, when subdued, to be governed. To be treated

Gens[6] igitur hæc, sicut per industriam prædicto tenore est expugnanda, sic, expugnata, moderato in hunc modum regimine est gubernanda. Constantis et vindicis animi viris cura regiminis committatur: qui et pacis tempore, dum legibus obtemperat, et servire

[1] *opprimuntur . . . operibus*] So the MSS. Not in Wharton.

[2] *parata*] D. Rd.; promptissima, V. N., Wharton.

[3] *defectus iste*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[4] *Walliarum partes gravis*] So the MSS.; Walliam gravis partes, Wharton.

[5] *annorum*] D. Rd.; armorum, V. N., Wharton.

[6] Much of the first four sections of this chapter, down to "lapsus "anterior," *infra*, 224, is repeated from Cap. 39 of the 2nd Book of the *Exp. Hib.* (vol. v. 398), but with alterations and additions.

non recusat, ipsam interim stabili conventione deliniat, et honore præveniat. Gens[1] etenim hæc, sicut et gens barbara quævis, quanquam honorem nesciant, honorari tamen super omnia quærunt; et veritatem, quam in se non habent, in aliis approbant et venerantur. with kindness, if peaceful.

Cum autem innatæ[2] levitatis indicio a pace resilire præsumpserint, dissimulata prorsus mansuetudine, continuo vitium vindicta sequatur. Cum iterum ad pacem reversi fuerint, condigna delicti satisfactione secuta, quoniam With strict severity, if rebellious.

"Post inimicitias iræ meminisse malorum est,"

quamdiu fideliter steterint dissimulata prorsus injuria pristina, [statim] tam[3] securitate gaudeant quam honore: quatinus tam ad obsequendum, quam ad pacis bona sequendum, et præmium invitet, et a temerariis ausibus secutura semper pœna deterreat.

Porro, qui ista confundunt, in delictis deferendo, in obsequiis deprimendo, in guerra blandiendo, in pace deprædando, imbelles spoliando, rebelles venerando, sicut plerosque vidimus, et finium[4] illorum cura commissa abusos novimus, hi, confusa sub se cuncta reddentes, demum et ipsi confunduntur. Have been very differently treated by some rulers.

Præterea, quia minus ea lædere solent quæ prævidentur, et quia felix est illa civitas quæ in pace bellum cogitat, pacis tempore contra imminentia Martis[5] incommoda, tam castrorum constructione, quam silvestrium viarum ampliatione, necnon et familiæ In time of peace, castles to be built, roads made, &c.

---

[1] *Gens . . . . venerantur*] This clause is from Cap. 36 of *Exp. Hib. II.* (vol. v. 390), but in different words.

[2] *innatæ*] So the MSS., and so in *Exp. Hib.* (398). Wharton has "usitatæ" in his text, and "innatæ "*Cod. Cotton.*" in the margin; as if "usitatæ" was the reading of the lost Westminster MS.

[3] *statim tam*] V. N., Wharton, and *Exp. Hib.*; tamen tam, Rd.; tam, D.

[4] *et finium . . . novimus*] D. Rd. Not in V. N. or Wharton, and not in the corresponding passage of the *Exp. Hib.* (398).

[5] *Martis*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

bonæ retentione, vir bonus et[1] prudens præmuniatur[2] et præparetur. Qui enim in pace servantur[3] et sustentantur, hi longe promptius, securius, atque fidelius, urgentibus incommodis, ad bella vocantur. Et quoniam semper insidias sub amicitiæ fuco gens vi subacta[4] molitur, princeps aut[5] præfectus nunquam eorum[6] caput suum aut castrum fidei[7] donet. Quoniam enimvero, insignium virorum exemplis, quorum quosdam crudeliter extinctos, alios autem castris et honore privatos, per talem[8] incuriam vidimus et negligentiam; nationis enim subdolæ[9] longe[10] fortius timenda est ars quam Mars, pax quam fax, mel quam fel, malitia quam militia, proditio quam expeditio, amicitia præfucata quam inimicitia despicata; expedit itaque viro prudenti ac provido alienis in malis fugienda contemplari. Indemnis etenim est[11] castigatio, quam prædocent exemplaria: quoniam, ut ait Enodius, "Ruina præcedentium posteros docet, et cautio est "semper in reliquum lapsus anterior."

No ruler ever to trust in their good faith.

134 b.

How they

Citra[12] conflictum autem et sanguinis effusionem

---

[1] *bonus et*] D. Not in V. N. Rd., Wharton, or *Exp. Hib.*

[2] *præmuniatur*] D. Rd., Wharton, and *Exp. Hib.*; prævideatur, V. N.

[3] *servantur*] D. Rd.; foventur, V. N., Wharton.

[4] *vi subacta*] So the MSS.; insubacta, Wharton.

[5] *aut*] D.; vel, V. N. Rd., Wharton.

[6] *nunquam eorum*] V. N. Rd., Wharton; eorum nunquam D.

[7] *fidei*] So the MSS. Wharton has "fidelitati" in his text, and "fidei *Cod. Cotton.*" in the margin; as if "fidelitati" was the reading of the Westminster MS.

[8] *talem*] D. Not in V. N. Rd., Wharton.

[9] *enim subdolæ*] D.; subdolæ, Rd.; subdolæ et subactæ, V. N., Wharton.

[10] *longe . . . despicata*] This was evidently, in Giraldus's estimation, one of the primest specimens of his exquisite scholastic pen. It has occurred in the *Top. Hib.* (vol. v. 166), as well as in the *Exp. Hib.* (399).

[11] *est*] D. Rd. Not in V. N. But V. has "et" before *etenim*. Wharton has "est enim."

[12] *Citra, &c.*] Opposite to this, in margin of Wharton, is, "Desunt "reliqua hujusce capituli in *Cod.* "*Westm.*" But this section, "Ci- "tra . . compellantur," is in V. N. as well as D. Rd. Wharton's marginal note is probably misplaced.

tanta expedire negotia pius princeps si præelegerit, marchia ut diximus per omnia latera bene munita, commerciis quoque per mare per terras districte prohibitis, quidam Kambrensium in alios, stipendiis datis, terrisque aliorum in alios collatis, letalibus exitiis excitentur; ut[1] sic demum[2] tam fame et inedia, cunctorumque fere ingruente penuria necessariorum, quam cædibus inter se creberrimis, et inimicitiis implacabilibus demum afflicti, infra non longum tempus[3] ad deditionem proculdubio compellantur.[4]

may be compelled to submission, without loss to the English.

Tria sunt enim quæ gentem hanc destruunt, et fructuosæ propaginis gaudia percipere non permittunt. Quod paternam hereditatem filii inter se, tam naturales quam legitimi, herili portione dividere contendunt: propter quod et fratricidia, ut diximus, crebra contingunt. Et quod fortibus et generosis provinciæ viris filii traduntur alendi: quorum quilibet, defunctis patribus, suum modis ómnibus, unde cædes et incendia tot, patriæque destructio tota, anteponere conatur alumnum. Et hoc præcipue, quod, aliarum[5] gentium more quæ[5] feliciter vivunt, unius regis consilio, unique subjici dominio, obstinata pariter et elata mente recusant.

Three things their ruin.

1st, The Gavelkind inherit-ance.

2nd, The foster-fathering.

3rd, and especially, their refusal to be governed by one prince.

---

[1] *ut*] D. Rd., Wharton; et, V. N.

[2] *demum*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[3] *non longum tempus*] D. Rd., Wharton; triennium vel quadriennium, V. N.

[4] After this follows, in V. and N., "Unde et expulso prorsus veteri "colono, aliaque ad regna trans-"lato, de Cambria coloniam prin-"ceps efficere prævalebit.
"Porro terram tam hispidam et "tam inviam, tamque colonos do-"mabiles habere nesciam, quas-"desertum penitus bestiis relin-"quere, atque forestam inde facere, "provido principi longe tutius et "consultius fore, nonnulli sunt qui "arbitrentur."
With this the chapter ends in V. N. They have not the last section of D. Rd., "Tria . . recusant."

[5] Rd. has "aliorum" and "qui."

[CAP. X.]

Qualiter eadem[1] resistere valeat, et rebellare.

How the Welsh may effectually rebel.

Sed quoniam pro Anglis hactenus diligenter admodum et exquisite disseruimus, sicut autem ex utraque gente originem duximus, sic æque pro utraque disputandum ratio dictat, ad Kambros denuo, in calce libelli, stilum vertamus, eosque de arte rebellandi breviter sed tamen efficaciter instruamus.

135. They must practise French warfare: have unanimous princes; or rather, one good prince.

Si ergo armatura Gallica Kambri plenius et communius uti consueverint,[2] stabilique magis pugnæ quam agilitati dimicando confisi fuerint;[3] item si principes eorum unanimes in defensione et inseparabiles esse voluerint; vel potius, si uno gauderent principe, et illo bono; in terra tam hispida, tam munitissima, gens prævalida vinci ad plenum vix valeret.

If inseparable, they would be insuperable. Their strong country, &c.

Si igitur inseparabiles fieri[4] vellent, et insuperabiles valde[5] fieri possent; præcipue tribus adjuti, terra scilicet[6] in se munita, parvoque vivere gente tam consueta quam contenta, et plebe tota sicut et nobilibus armis instructa.

While the English fight for plunder and pay; they for liberty and their country.

Præsertim etiam cum Angli pro cupiditate certent, Kambri pro libertate; illi de lucro captando, isti de damno vitando; stipendiarii eorum[7] pro pecunia, isti pro patria; illi, inquam, ut hos ab insula prorsus expellant, totamque terræ faciem simul obtineant, isti vero ut qui[8] universo tamdiu regno soli præsidebant, in hoc saltem ejusdem angulo pessimo, silvis,[9] mon-

---

[1] *eadem*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[2] *consueverint*] D. Rd.; assueverint, V. N., Wharton.

[3] *confisi fuerint*] D. Rd.; confiderint, V. N., Wharton.

[4] Instead of this first *fieri*, Wharton has "esse."

[5] *valde*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[6] *scilicet*] D. Not in V. N. Rd., Wharton.

[7] *eorum*] D. Rd.; illorum, V. N., Wharton.

[8] *qui*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[9] *silvis*] V. N. D., Wharton. Not in Rd.

tibus, et paludibus conserto[1] delitescant, et quasi pro delictis huc relegati, præscriptisque divitiarum excessibus, usque ad præfinitum tempus in paupertate et inedia pœnitentiam agant.

Plurimam quippe animositatis scintillam exprimere, plurimam rebellionis audaciam imprimere potest continua pristinæ nobilitatis memoria; et non solum Trojanæ generositatis, verum etiam regni Britannici tantæ et tam diuturnæ regiæ majestatis recordatio.

Their ancient nobility; Trojan and British.

Unde et Anglorum rege Henrico secundo in australem Walliam apud Pencadeyr,[2] quod *Caput cathedræ* sonat, nostris diebus in hanc gentem[3] expeditionem agente, consultus ab eo senior quidam populi ejusdem,[4] qui contra alios tamen vitio gentis eidem adhæserat, super exercitu regio, populoque rebelli si resistere posset, quid ei videretur, bellicique eventus suam ut ei declararet opinionem, respondit; "Gravari
" quidem, plurimaque ex parte destrui et debilitari
" vestris, rex, aliorumque viribus, nunc ut[5] olim et
" pluries, meritorum exigentia, gens ista valebit.
" Ad plenum autem, propter hominis iram, nisi et ira
" Dei concurrerit, non delebitur. Nec alia, ut arbi-
" tror, gens quam hæc Kambrica, aliave lingua, in die
" districti examinis coram Judice supremo, quicquid
" de ampliori contingat, pro hoc terrarum angulo
" respondebit."

Answer of a Welsh adherent to Henry II. as to the subjugation of Wales.

They will never be destroyed; 135 b. and their language never cease.

Explicit.[6]

---

[1] *montibus et paludibus conserto*] D. Rd.; et paludibus, V. N., Wharton.

[2] *Pencadeyr*] D.; Pencader, V. N., Wharton. This expedition of Henry II. into South Wales was in 1163: *supra*, 138.

[3] *in hanc gentem*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[4] *populi ejusdem*] D. Rd.; de gente Cambrorum, V. N., Wharton.

[5] *ut*] D. Rd., Wharton. Not in V. N.

[6] *Explicit*] D.; Explicit Giraldus Cambrensis, V. N.; Explicit libellus de Cambriæ descriptione, Rd.

GLOSSARIES.

GLOSSARY I.

OF UNUSUAL WORDS.

[When Welsh words occur only once, and are explained in the notes, as for instance at p. 194, I have not thought it necessary always to repeat them in this Glossary.]

A.

Abaioth, 199, n. 3; used by Giraldus instead of Naioth of the Vulgate, 1 Reg. xix., 18–23. I can suggest no explanation.

Aber, 20, l. 14; 171, l. 32; a Welsh word, signifying the junction of one river with another, or of a river with the sea; a common component of the Welsh names of places.

Arpentum, 114, l. 26; *Fr.* Arpent, an acre, or other measure of land. *See* Du Cange. Giraldus seems to use it in the sense of a small plot of land, without reference to any exact amount.

Aureolus, 125, l. 16; a bird, described as "aureo croceoque "colore conspicua," and a sweet songster. Perhaps the goldfinch is meant. It sounds more like the golden oriole. This is now a very rare visitant to England; but it does not at all follow that it was an equally rare bird, in the very different state of the country, in Giraldus's days. It is a bird of a closely-wooded country.

Awennithion, 194, l. 21; Awenyddion, the plural form of the Welsh word Awenydd, a poet, an inspired person.

B.

Baco, 90, l. 12; the whole salted carcase of a pig; or rather, perhaps, a flitch of bacon. *See* Du Cange.

Bangu, 18. The Welsh name for a handbell, Giraldus says; but I find no such word in Welsh dictionaries.

Beveres, 118, l. 11; beavers. *See* Du Cange, under Bever. In other instances Giraldus calls them "Castores."

Brachan, or Brichan, 184, l. 16; a coarse cloth manufactured by the Welsh; "Pannus durus et asper, quem patria parit."

Bragmanni, 220, l. 18; the name given by Giraldus,—and by no one else, so far as I have been able to see,—to the mercenary troops, generally called Brabancenes, or Routiers, by other writers of his time. *See* Glossary, Vol. v., 417.

Bria, 212, l. 19; a measure. The word seems to be applied especially, as by Giraldus, to the quantity of drink meted out to each one of a party. *See* Du Cange.

C.

Cantaredus, 127, l. 10, and elsewhere; a cantrev. A Welsh and Irish term, Giraldus explains, for the district of land containing a hundred vills; from cant, a hundred, and tref, a township, 169, l. 16. So also in Vol. v., 145, 348. Giraldus several times uses the Welsh word, when naming some special cantrev. *See* Cantrev Bychan, and Cantrev Mawr, in Index, *infra*.

Caymiticus, 69, l. 15; Cain-like, fratricidal.

Chorus, 187, l. 10; the Welsh Crwth, or Crowd; a musical instrument of the Welsh and Scotch. *See* Glossary, Vol. v., 418.

Cœlibes, or Colidei, 124, l. 9; the monks called Culdees. *See* Du Cange, under Colidei.

Collum pedis, 64, l. 19; the neck-like part of the leg, at the ancle. *See* Du Cange.

Communia, 221, l. 18; where it seems to mean a community; a corporate body, with especial privileges. *See* Du Cange, under Commune (2), &c.

Confraga, 219, l. 11; breakings down of trees, for purposes of defence against an enemy. *See* Du Cange, under Confragmentum.

Conjecturare, 60, n. 1., 98, l. 22; to conjecture, to divine. In the first instance, the majority of manuscripts have instead the more classical word "conjectare."

Cornhiriez, 62, last line; trumpeters: from the Welsh corn, a horn, and hir, long.

Coterelli, 220, l. 18; means much the same as Bragmanni, *supra*; one of the names given to the Routiers. *See* Du Cange.

D.

Da, id est, bonus, 167, l. 13; Dda, Welsh for good.

Dieta, 165, ll. 9, 12; a day's journey. Giraldus makes it equivalent to 25 miles; "octo dietæ" of l. 9 representing the same distance as "ducenta milia passuum" of l. 6; and "quatuor dietæ" of l. 12, the same as "centum milia" of l. 7. In the *Top. Hib.* (Vol. v., 24), Giraldus measures Irish distances by great and Irish day's journeys of 40 miles,—"dierum magni et Hibernici, quadraginta scilicet "miliarium, excursus."

Dissipare, 98, l. 15; where it is used as a neuter verb, in the sense of To scatter themselves, To disappear.

Duur, 77, l. 15; 194, l. 12. Dwfr of modern Welsh, water.

E.

Energumeni, 195, l. 16; *Gr.* Ἐνεργούμενοι; persons possessed by evil spirits.

Ensis, 89, l. 2; where used for the blade-bone of a shoulder of mutton. I find no other instance of such use of the word.

Epilogium, 70, l. 22; an epilogue. *See* Du Cange.

Exhibitio, 183, l. 24; 213, l. 5; the entertainment of guests. Exhibitus, in the sense of entertained as guests, occurs repeatedly.

G.

Gernoboda, 185, l. 12; the hair of the upper lip, the moustache. *See* Du Cange, under Grani.

H.

Hal, 77, l. 17; 171, l. 19; 194, l. 12; *Gr.* Ἅλς, salt.

Haleyn or Halein, 77, ll. 17, 25; 194, l. 13; Halen of modern Welsh, salt.

Hemi, 77, l. 29; 171, l. 19; *Gr.* Ἡμι, half.

Hepta, 77, l. 29; 171, l. 19; *Gr.* Ἑπτά, seven.

HERILIS PORTIO, 69, l. 12; 134, l. 15; 211, l. 22; 225, l. 14. The equal share of the deceased father's estate, which, by the custom of Gavelkind, which prevailed in Wales, came to each son.

HUCHEILWER, or SUPERIORES VIRI, 166, l. 27; Uchelwr, of modern Welsh; from uchel, high, and gwr, a man.

K.

KAM, 178, l. 23; Cam, in modern Welsh, crooked.

KEMBRAEC, 178, l. 22; Cymraeg, the Welsh language.

KEMMOTUS, 34, l. 3; Cymwd in Welsh, a comot, the fourth part of a cantrev.

L.

LECATOR, 109, l. 1; a scurrilous person. *See* Du Cange.

LECHLAVAR, 107; Llech Llafar, *i.e.*, the speaking stone.

LEPORARIUS, 69, l. 24; 138, l. 22. *Fr.* Lévrier. Not a harrier, as the word would seem to indicate, but a greyhound; a dog that runs hares, not by scent, but sight. *See* Du Cange, under Canis Leporarius. A harrier was Brachetus, a Brachet.

M.

MAM KEMBRE or MAMKEMBRE, 127, l. 27; 177, l. 5; Mam Cymmru, *i.e.*, the mother of Wales; proverbially applied, Giraldus says, to the island of Mon, or Anglesey, because of its great fruitfulness in corn.

MELOTUS, 115. l. 21; a badger. Used by Giraldus in the third edition only of the *Itinerarium*, and the second of the *Descriptio Kambriæ*. In the earlier editions of these treatises, he had used the ordinary form "Melota;" as also in all the editions of the *Topographia Hibernica*. I find no instance of "Melotus" elsewhere.

MULVELLUS, 136, l. 11; a sea fish; the mullet (?). *See* Du Cange.

O.

Odoporion, 3, l. 3 ; *Gr.* Ὁδοιπόριον. Giraldus, in the third edition only of the Itinerary, thus calls his history of archbishop Baldwin's progress through Wales. According to Leland, a metrical history of Richard I.'s expedition to the Holy Land was entitled "Hodœporicon Ricardi Regis." *See* Professor Stubbs' Preface (xxxvi) to the *Itin. Regis Ricardi.*

P.

Parii lapides, 45, l. 4 ; where they are said to be vulgarly called "Liberi," free-stone, because of their being easily worked. Giraldus uses the word in other instances. In the *Vita S. Remigii, &c.*, cap. xxvi (*Anglia Sacra*, ii. 419, l. 21), he describes St. Hugh as building a new east end of Lincoln cathedral with "Parii lapides :" and so again when describing Hugh's church-building at Lincoln, in the as yet unpublished *Vita S. Hugonis* (MS. No. 425, C. C. C. Cambridge, p. 106). And in the life of archbishop Geoffrey (I. 3), in a passage omitted by Wharton, Giraldus describes, when writing about events of the year 1174, the "Pàriæ structuræ" of a new hall lately built by archbishop Roger at York. *See* also *De Instr. Princ.*, 143, l. 9.

Pascha Floridum, 124, l. 5 ; Palm Sunday.

Penitimus, 56, l. 31 ; 137, l. 18 ; superlative of the adjective "Penitus;" innermost. The comparative "Penitior" occurs at p. 15, l. 26. "Penitimus" occurs several times in the *Exp. Hib.* of Vol. v. ; 234, l. 20; 336, l. 25 ; 391, l. 23 ; 402, l. 22. I ought to have noticed it in the glossary to that volume, but it never struck me as being other than a good classical word, until a good classical friend accused me of having misread the word "Finitimus," which would have made equally good sense in the passage where he happened to hit upon the strange to him "Penitimus." But he is well versed in medieval as well as classical Latinity. The word, therefore, is perhaps peculiar to Giraldus. I certainly can give no instance of its use in any other writer, though it seems perfectly familiar to me. It is not mentioned by Du Cange.

Phanatici, 195, l. 16; frenzied persons, I suppose. Giraldus describes spirits as speaking by the mouths of "Phanatici et Energumeni."

Præcluis, 8, l. 23; famous, illustrious. *See* Du Cange. It is not a very rare word, but it seems to have puzzled medieval copyists. *See* note 2, p. 8. Giraldus had used it before, in the *Exp. Hib.* (Vol. v., 235, l. 7.).

S.

Spec, 125, l. 14; where said to be the French word for "Picus," a woodpecker; "Pic" of modern French.

Stadia, 16, n. 1; 126, n. 3. In these places it is used for miles, in the first edition of the *Itin.*, as given us in manuscripts R, B; after editions having "milia," or "miliaria," or "passuum milia." In another instance, however, manuscripts R. and B. have "miliaria" (92, l. 8); agreeing, in this diversity, with their copy of the *Exp. Hib.*; where also they have the correct word, as well as the strange "Stadia;" *See* Vol. v., preface, xxxii. In one case (17, n. 2), the third edition of the Itinerary has "stadia," with the first; though the second edition, as given us in manuscript Hc., has "milia." This must have been owing to a mere bit of inadvertence.

T.

Texti Libri, 203, l. 20. Textus–i is an unusual form; but, no doubt, Giraldus's "Libri Texti," if I am right in joining them, mean simply the same as "Textus–uum," treasured and holy copies of the Gospels. *See* Du Cange. Perhaps the words ought to be written separately, "Libris, Textis;" but this would not at all remove the difficulty about Textus–i.

Thymallus, or Umbra, 33, l. 22; the grayling. *See* Vol. v., 434.

Trait, 124, l. 1; traeth, in modern Welsh; a tract of sand; a sandy estuary; or rather, perhaps, an inlet of the sea. *See* Traitmaur in Glossary II.

TREF, i.e. villa, 169, l. 17; Welsh for a township; still so spelt.

TRICATURA, 123, l. 10. This word, of which I can find no other instance, must mean a twisting or interlacing, or something of the sort. At any rate, it is clear that Giraldus's "Ferrea loricæ tricatura" is the coat of mail of the ring armour of his time.

TURTRA, 33, l. 18; 136, l. 4. So Giraldus continues to call the trout, as in the *Topog. Hibern.* of Vol. v. *See* the Glossary to that volume. In the metrical abstract of Higden (*Polychronicon*, I., 422), it is "Turtrus;" the gender being changed to suit the rhyme.

U.

UMBRA. *See* Thymallus.

V.

VIRGEUS, 69, l. 25; where applied to the markings of a greyhound. Striped, or streaked, it would seem to mean; a medieval form of Virgatus. *See* Du Cange under Virga (1) and Virgatus; where is, "*Glossæ Gr. et Lat.*, Ῥαβδωτὸς, "Virgeus."

Y.

YDOR, 77, l. 13; 194, l. 12; *Gr.* Ὕδωρ, water. And YDRI l. 14; *Gr.* Ὑδρία, a water-vessel.

GLOSSARY II.

OF NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES.

A.

Abercorran, 172; another name, it would seem, for Talacharn, or Laugharne, Caermarthenshire. But Giraldus speaks of "Abercorran *et* Talachar," as if they were two distinct places. By the former, perhaps, he means the town, at the mouth of the river Corran; and by the latter the adjoining castle of Talacharn. The *Brut y Tywys.*, in one instance (A° 1189), calls the castle Abercorran; but in others, Talacharn.

Aberescud, 175; Aberystwyth, Cardiganshire.

Aberfrau, 81, 169; Aberffraw, Anglesey; where the royal court of the princes of North Wales.

Abergevenni, 47, &c., 171; Abergavenni, Monmouthshire.

Aberhotheni, 20, 32, 171; Aber-Honddu, or Aberhodni, the Welsh name of the town Brecknock or Brecon; where the principal castle of the province of Brecheiniog, 32, l. 4; 171, l. 30. Giraldus's Brecheniauc is always the province, not the town.

Abertawe, 73, 172; Abertawe, or Abertawy, the Welsh name of Swansea, Glamorganshire.

Aberteivi, 112, 122; the Welsh name of Cardigan, the town. Giraldus's Keirdigan, Keredigan, &c., is always the province, Ceredigion.

Acon, 151; Acre, Palestine.

Aelivedha; St. Elevetha, or Aled, or Elined. *See* 32, n. 2.

Alba Domus, or Alba Landa, 9, 59, 82; Whitland, Cistercian Abbey, Caermarthenshire. Called in Welsh, Ty Gwyn, or Ty Gwyn ar Dav, i.e., the White House on the river Tav.

Albania, 60 ; Scotland. Originally all Britain north of the Humber : 178, l. 17.

Album Monasterium, 142 ; Whitchurch, Shropshire.

Alunus, 107, &c. ; the river Alan, at St. David's.

Anaraut, 166, 167 ; Anarawd, son of Rhodri Mawr; prince of North Wales, end of 9th century. Giraldus, by mistake, makes him prince of Powys.

Anaudrech, 167 ; where Giraldus makes him a prince of North Wales, and son of Mervyn son of Rhodri Mawr. Some Welsh authorities speak of Avandreg, a daughter of Mervyn, but none, so far as I have seen, of a son of any such name. *See* Williams' *Eminent Welshmen*, under Mervyn.

Angharat, 142. A woman's name ; Angharad of Welsh writers.

Ardudoe, 122 ; Ardudwy, a comot of cantrev Dunodig in province of Caer Yn Arvon, in *Llywelyn's Survey*. The name is still retained in a deanery of the archdeaconry of Merioneth. The cantrev Dunodig comprised parts of the present Merionethshire and Carnarvonshire.

Arthro, 124, 176 ; the river Artro, Merionethshire. Giraldus is wrong about it at 124, l. 4.

Arvon ; i. e., the country over against Mon or Anglesey, 124, l. 23. In *Llywelyn's Survey*, Arvon is a cantrev of Caer yn Arvon. *See* Kaerarvon.

Aurelius Ambrosius, 207 ; Ambrosius Aurelianus of Gildas (§ 25), and Bede (H. E. I., 16); Emrys Wledig of Welsh traditions. Giraldus follows Geoffrey in the name.

Avanus, 16; Afan, or Avan, a saint of the 6th century ; founder of Llanafan Fawr in Buellt (Brecknockshire). *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 208.

Avenna or Avenina, 9, 72, 172 ; the river Afan, or Avon, Glamorganshire.

B.

Bangor, 10, 124, 125. " Bangorensis ecclesia " occurs at p. 55, and " Sedes Bangorensis " at p. 170.

Barri, 66 ; Barry Island, off Glamorganshire, whence Giraldus's family name.

Barrocus, 66; Baruck, or Baroc, the saint from whom Barri island received its name, and who is said to have flourished in the latter half of the 7th century. He is not found in Welsh hagiology. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 304.

Basingewerc, 137, 176; Basingwerk, Flintshire. It is called Dinas Basin in *Brut.*

Belinus, and Brennius, 207; Beli and Bran, of Welsh traditions; kings of Britain, sons of Dyvnwal Moelmud.

Berdeseie, 124; Bardsey island. *See* Enthli.

Bernacus, 117; Brynach, a saint of the 5th century. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 156.

Bledhericus, 202; Bledri, a man's name.

Brechanus, 31; Brychan, circa A.D. 400–450, prince of Garthmadryn, afterwards called from him Brecheiniog, which is still the Welsh name for Brecknockshire. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 110, &c.

Brecheniauc, 9, 18, 20, and repeatedly afterwards; Brecheiniog, the province, nearly represented by the present Brecknockshire; never the town of Brecknock, which Giraldus always calls by its Welsh name Aberhodni. The great lake of Brecheiniog, 33 (bottom of page), is Llyn Savaddan, or Llangorse mere, or Brecknock mere, a few miles east of the town of Brecknock.

Brennius. *See* Belinus.

Brevy, or Brevi, or Landewi Brevi, 10, 102, 119; Llanddewi Brefi, Cardiganshire.

Bromfeld, or Brumfeld, 11, 146; Bromfield, Shropshire.

Broynles, 31; Bryullys, or Brwynllys, Brecknockshire. *See* n. 1, p. 31.

Brugense Castrum, 171; Bridgnorth, Herefordshire.

Bueld, 16; Buellt, or Builth: in *Llywelyn's Survey*, Buallt, a cantrev of the province of Rhwng Gwy a Havren, in principality of Powys; now a hundred of Brecknockshire.

C.

Cadelh, or Cadelus, 166, 167; Cadell, son of Rhodri Mawr; prince of South Wales, end of 9th century.

Cadwallanus, 16, 69; a man's name, Cadwallon.

Caldei Insula, in Welsh Enispir, 92; Ynys Pyr, or Caldey island, off Pembrokeshire.

Cananus. *See* Chananus.

Cantrebochan, or Cantrefbochan, 36, 61, 81, 171, 172; Cantrev Bychan, a hundred of Caermarthen.

Cantrefmaur, or Kantrefmaur, 34, 80, 81, 172; Cantrev Mawr, one of the three cantrevs of Brecheiniog; the name also of a cantrev of Caermarthen.

Caradocus, 69; Caradawg, or Caradog, son of Iestin.

Cassibellianus, 207; Cassivellaunus of Cæsar; Cassibellaunus of Bede (*H.E.* i. 2); the British prince who opposed Cæsar's invasion. Caswallawn of the Welsh Triads, &c.

Castellum Radulphi, 84; Châteauroux, in Berry.

Cestria, or Urbs Cestrensis, 10, 139, 141; Chester; called "Legionum urbs," 217, l. 16. At 221, l. 18, Cestria is used for the county.

Chananus, or Cananus, 10, 122, 167; a man's name, Cynan.

Chanani terra, or Terra filiorum Chanani, 122, 134, 177; Meirionydd so called.

Claudiocestria, 63, 69; Gloucester; Caer Loyw of *Brut.* *See* Glovernia.

Claudius, 14; a man's name, Clud, or Clut.

Cledeu, 82, 172; Cleddau, or Cleddy; the name of two rivers in present Pembrokeshire.

Cloid, 137, 176; the river Clwyd, Denbighshire and Flintshire.

Coidwroneu, or Coit Wroneu, 9, 47. The name which Giraldus gives to a difficult defile, through which archbishop Baldwin passed on his way from Brecknock to Abergavenni. Coid is *Coet*, a wood. Wroneu is the river Grwyney, or Gronwy.

Coleshulle, 130, 137, 176; Consyllt, a district of the present Flintshire, by the English called Coleshill. *See* Tegengel.

Crugmaur, i. e., Collis magnus, 118; Crug Mawr, in north of Pembrokeshire.

Crukeri castrum, 16; Pen-y-Crug, Old Radnor.

Cunanus; Cynan, the name of an abbot of Margam, 67.

Cunewe, 133, 136, 176; the river Conwy, or Conway, Carnarvonshire.

D.

DANUBIÆ SILVA, 55, 171 ; the forest of Dean, Gloucestershire.

DAVID, 101, &c. ; Dewi, saint, first archbishop of St. David's.

DEGANNOE, 10. *See* Dugannu.

DEHEUBARTH, 34, 166 ; still so spelt. It means the right-hand part, or south part, and is the Welsh name of South Wales. Giraldus explains it, 34, l. 6, by "Dextralis Walliæ pars." *See* Sudwallia.

DEIA, or DEYA, 10, 139, 176 ; the river Dee. *See* Deverdoeu.

DEMETIA, or DEMETICA PROVINCIA, 89, 93, 130, 166, 173, 176; Dyfet, or Dyved, a province of South Wales, including the present Pembrokeshire, with part of Caermarthenshire. It is "Demetia," or "Dewet," "Dyvet," &c., of the *Annal. Camb.* ; "Dyfet," &c., of *Brut.* In *Llywelyn's Survey*, where it is "Dyved," a province of the principality of "Dinevwr," it has eight cantrevs assigned to it, instead of seven, as given it by Giraldus (93, l. 4 ; 166, l. 17).

DEUGLEDEU, or DUGLEDEU, 82, 172 ; Daugleddau, or Deugleddyv, the district between the two rivers Cleddy, in Pembrokeshire. In *Llywelyn's Survey* it is "Daugleddyv," a cantrev of Dyved.

DEUTRAIT, 123 ; a castle described by Giraldus as lately built near to the Traeths Mawr and Bychan, towards the northern mountains. So far as I can learn it has not been identified. Deutrait would mean the Two Traeths, or inlets of the sea. The castle, therefore, was probably somewhere between them, or rather perhaps between the rivers running into them. *See* Traitmaur.

DEVERDOEU, or DEVERDOE, 139, 176 ; Dwfr Dwy, the Welsh name of the river Dee. Caer Leon ar Dwfr Dwy, was the Welsh name of Chester.

DEVI, 10, 122, 176 ; the river Dyvi, or Dovey, which separates North from South Wales.

DEXTRALIS KAMBRIA, 85 ; South Wales. *See* Deheubarth, and Sudwallia.

DINEVOR. *See* Dynewr.

DOGMAELIS SANCTI MONASTERIUM, or CŒNOBIUM, 110, 112 ; St. Dogfael's abbey, now St. Dogmael's, Pembrokeshire,

DOGMAELIS—*cont.*
near Cardigan. The Welsh name of the place is Llandudoch.

DUBRICIUS, or DUBRITIUS, 56, 101, 120; St. Dyfrig, archbishop of Caerleon, 5th and 6th centuries.

DUGANNU, 135, 136, 176; DEGANNOE in Table of Chapters, p. 10; Dyganwy Castle, Carnarvonshire.

DUVIANUS, 202; one of the missionaries sent by pope Eleutherius to Lucius: Dyfan, of Welsh traditions. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 82, &c.

DYNAS EMEREIS, 133; Dinas Emrys, Carnarvonshire.

DYNEWR, or DINEVUR, &c., 80, 81, 169, 172; Dinevwr, or Dinefwr, now generally called Dinevor Castle. Caermarthenshire, the court of the princes of South Wales.

DYSSENYTH, 124, 176; the river Dysynwy, or Dysinni, Merionethshire, which enters the sea a little north of Towyn. Giraldus is wrong about it at 124, l. 3.

E.

ELENNITH, or ELENNYTH, 119, 138, 170. This, Giraldus says, was the Welsh name for the Plinlimmon range of mountains, and was called Moruge by the English. I have found these names in no other early authority, and, so far as I have been able to see, neither of them now survives. From these mountains of Elennyth spring the rivers Severn and Wye, 171; the Teivi, 173; and the Ystwyth, 175.

ELISSET, a prince of Powys, 142; Elise, son of Madog ab Maredudd.

ELTUTUS, 28; Illtyd, a saint of the 5th or 6th century. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 178, &c. The general Latin form is Iltutus.

ELVAIL, ELVEMIA, or ELEVEMIA, 14, 18, 19, 146; Elvael, in *Llywelyn's Survey* Elvel, a cantrev of the province Rhwng Gwy a Havren, in principality of Powys, now part of Radnorshire.

EMELYN, 10, 114, in heading only; no mention of it in chapter itself. Emlyn, now Newcastle Emlyn, Caermarthenshire.

ENEAS, 14, 17; a man's name, the Welsh Einaun, or Einon.

Enislannach, 131; Ynys Glanach, or Ynys Seiriol; Priestholme, or Puffin island, Anglesey.

Enispir, or Insula Pirri, 92; Ynys Pyr, or Caldey island, off Pembrokeshire. *See* Caldei.

Enthli, or Berdeseie, 124; Ynys Enlli, or Bardsey island, off the west point of Carnarvonshire.

Ereri, or Erery, 10, 133, 135, 170, 176; Eryri, the Welsh name of the Snowdon range of mountains.

Ergengel, *Anglice* Urchenefeld, 169; where it is said to have been once a cantrev of the dioceses of St. David's and Llandaf. Ergyng, or Erchenfield; Erging in *Llywelyn's Survey*, a comot of Iscoed Gwent; now part of Herefordshire, west of the river Wye.

Escud, 175; the river Ystwyth, Cardiganshire.

Eskeirhir, i. e., Tibia longa, 111; a man's name; Longshanks, as we should call him. Eskeir, now Esgair, is the Welsh for a shank, and Hir is long.

Eskewin, 165; a port in Gwent, now Porthysgewydd, or Portskewet, Monmouthshire (?).

Estratflur, 10. *See* Stratflur.

Estratmarchel, 59; Ystrad Marchell, or Strata Marcella, Cistercian abbey, Montgomeryshire.

Eudas, or Ewedas of 1st edition; a man's name, 50.

Evionyth, 123; Eivionydd, a comot of cantrev Dunodig in Caer yn Arvon, in *Llywelyn's Survey*. Efionedd is still the name of a hundred of Carnarvonshire.

Ewennith, 67; Ewenny, Glamorganshire, a cell of St. Peter's, Gloucester.

Ewias, or Ewyas, 34, 37. In *Llywelyn's Survey* it is Euas, a comot of Iscoed Gwent; now included in Monmouthshire and Herefordshire.

F.

Faganus, 202; one of the missionaries sent by pope Eleutherius to Lucius: Ffagan of Welsh traditions. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, p. 82, &c. Giraldus, following Geoffrey (IV., 19), names only two missionaries, Faganus and Duvianus. According to Welsh traditions there were four.

G.

Galfridus Arthurus, 58, 179 ; Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Germanus Autisiodorensis, or Altisiodorensis, 120, 202 ; Germanus of Auxerre, called Garmon by the Welsh. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 119, &c.

Glasbiria, 21 ; Glasbury, Brecknockshire.

Glascum, 18 ; Glascwm, Radnorshire.

Glovernia, 40, 55, 171 ; Gloucester. Called also Claudiocestria, 63, 69.

Goer, or Goher, 9, 72, 73, 138 ; Gwhyr, or Gower, a district comprising the western portion of the present Glamorganshire. In *Llywelyn's Survey* it is Gwyr, a comot of one of the cantrevs of Caermyrddin.

Griffinus, or Griphinus, a man's name ; Gruffudd, or Griffith. Occurs continually.

Gueneloc. *See* Gweneloc.

Guenliana. *See* Gwendoloena.

Guianus, bishop of Bangor ; Gwiawn in *Brut*, A° 1191. *See* 125, n. 3.

Guinta, or Winta, 52, 54, 165, 177 ; Gwent, a district between the Usk and Wye, formerly one of the six provinces of the principality of South Wales, now included in Monmouthshire and Herefordshire. It contained the two cantrevs of Gwent Uchcoed and Gwent Iscoed, the latter of which Giraldus calls "Winta inferior" at p. 60.

Guladmorgan, or Wlatmorgan, or Morgannoc, 63, n. 2 ; 138, 145, 172 ; Gwlad-Morgan, or Morganwg, *Anglice*, Glamorganshire. The antient Morganwg, however, did not at all exactly agree with the present Glamorganshire.

Gwendoloena, or Guenliana, 15, n. 1 ; 79, n. 1 ; Gwenllian, a woman's name.

Gweneloc, or Gueneloc, 11, 146 ; Wenlock, Shropshire.

H.

Haia, or Haya, 8, 20, 171 ; Hay, Brecknockshire. The Welsh name of the town is Tregelli.

HAVEREN, 171 ; Hafren, the Welsh name of the river Severn.

HAVERFORDIA, 82, 99, 172 ; Haverford West, Pembrokeshire. The Welsh name is Hwlfford ; Hawlfford of *Brut.*

HOELUS, or HOWELUS, 21, 60, &c. ; Howel, a man's name.

HOTHENI, 20 ; the river Honddu, or Hodni, Brecknockshire. And at p. 37, river of the same name, Monmouthshire.

HOVEDENE, 24 ; Howden, Yorkshire.

HYSMAEL, S. ; in province of Rhos, where was St. Caradog's place of seclusion, 86. According to Robt. Williams (*Eminent Welshmen*), this was St. Ismael's in Pembrokeshire, where St. Caradog remained until his death. Other authorities say that St. Caradog's last place of seclusion was at Haroldston East, the church of which is dedicated to St. Ismael ; and that he died there in 1124.

I.

IAGO, 167 ; a man's name. It is still the right Welsh spelling.

IEREVERDUS, 48, 60 ; Iorwerth, a man's name.

IERVERDUS TROYNDUN, 134 ; Iorwerth Drwyndwn, or the Broken-nosed, son of Owain Gwynedd.

IESTINUS, 21, 69 ; Iestin ab Gwrgant, prince of Morganwg, who was dispossessed by Fitzhamon, circa 1090.

K.

KAERARTHUR, 36 ; Cadair Arthur, a summit of the Brecknockshire hills ; now generally called the Van, or Bannau Brecheiniog.

KAERARVON, or KAIRARVON, i. e., CASTRUM DE ARVON, 10, 124 ; Carnarvon Castle. The province, now nearly represented by Carnarvonshire, is Caer yn Arvon in *Llywelyn's Survey*. *See* Arvon.

KAERDIF, KAIRDIF, or KERDIF, 9, 61, &c. ; Cardiff, Glamorganshire. It is Caer Dyf, or Kaer Dyf, in *Brut ;* and is now called in Welsh, Caerdydd.

Kaerleun, 55; Caerleon, Monmouthshire. Generally called by Giraldus, Legionum urbs.

Kaermerdyn, or Kairmerdin, &c., 62, 80, &c.; Caermarthen, the town; Caer Vyrdin in *Brut*; Caerfyrddyn of modern Welsh. The province is called "Caervyrddin" in *Llywelyn's Survey*.

Kamros, 10, 99; Camros, Pembrokeshire.

Kananus, 59; Cynan, a man's name. Elsewhere it is Cananus, or Chananus.

Kanaucus, 25, 112; St. Cynawg, or Cynog; the eldest of the many sons of Brychan; 5th century. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 138.

Kantrefmaur, 80, 81. *See* Cantrefmaur.

Kaoc, 34, 81. In the latter instance, it is clearly described as a comot of Cantrev Mawr in Caermarthen. There is no such name to a comot of Cantrev Mawr; but Caeo, which I suppose to be Giraldus's Kaoc, is a comot of Cantrev Bychan, Caermarthen, in *Llywelyn's Survey*.

Karadocus, or Karodocus, 85, 86; St. Caradawg, or Caradog, who spent his last years as a hermit in Pembrokeshire, and died in 1124. Giraldus wrote a life of him, which is not now known to be in being. The preface to it, however, is in the copy of Giraldus's *Symbolum Electorum*, in the library of Trin. Coll. Cambridge.

Karnmadrun, 123; Carn Madryn Castle, Carnarvonshire.

Kedweli, or Kedwely, 9, 78, 172; Cydweli, or Kidwelly, Caermarthenshire.

Keirdigan. *See* Keredigiaun.

Kemmeis, 10, 110; called "Kemeis" in *Brut*; "Kenmeis" in *Annal. Camb.* In *Llywelyn's Survey* it is "Cemaes," a cantrev of Dyved. Now Kemmes, a hundred of Pembrokeshire.

Kenarthmaur, 114; Cenarth, Caermarthenshire.

Kenewricus, 119; Cynvrig, a man's name.

Keredigiaun, Keredigan, Kerdigan, Keirdigan, or Keretica regio, 10, 114, 122, 173, 175, 176; Ceredigion, one of the six provinces of the principality of South Wales, which comprised the present Cardiganshire, and part of Caermarthenshire. The town Cardigan Giraldus calls by the Welsh name, Aberteivi.

KEVEILIAUC, 143, 144; Cyveiliog, a comot of cantrev Cynan in province of Powys Gwenwynwyn, in *Llywelyn's Survey;* now included in Montgomeryshire.

KILGARRAN, 114; Cilgerran, Pembrokeshire.

L.

LANAMDEVERI, 172; Llanymddyvri, or Llandovery, Caermarthenshire.

LANAVAN, 16; Llanafan Fawr, Brecknockshire.

LANDAPH, or SEDES LANDAVENSIS, 9, 67, 170; Llandaf.

LANDESTEPHAN, 80, 172; "Llan Ystyffan," in *Brut;* Llanstyffan, or Llanstephan, Caermarthenshire.

LANDEWI BREVI, 119. *See* Brevy.

LANDEWI NANTHOTHENI, 37; Llanddewi Nant Hodni, i.e., the church of St. David on the river Hodni; the Welsh name, Giraldus says, for Llantoni abbey, Monmouthshire.

LANDINEGATH, 52; Llaningad, or Dingatstow, near Monmouth.

LANDU, 20; Llandew, or Llanduw rather, near Brecknock. Giraldus says it means "Ecclesia Dei," 20, l. 15. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 325, note.

LANELVENSIS SEDES, 10, 136, 170; Llanelwy, so called from its site on the river Elwy; a cathedral church said to have been founded circa 550 by the famous Scotch saint Kentigern or Mungo; now St. Asaph, so called from Asaf, whom St. Mungo left as bishop, on his own return into Scotland. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 261.

LANHAMELACH, 28; Llanhamlech, or Llanamwlch, Brecknockshire.

LANMAYS, 23; Llanfaes, Brecknockshire.

LANMEIR, 122; Llanfair, Merionethshire.

LANPADERN MAUR, i. e., ECCLESIA PATERNI MAGNI, 120; Llanbadarn Fawr, Cardiganshire, near Aberystwyth; originally a cathedral see, afterwards a cell of St. Peter's, Gloucester. The church, to the architectural antiquary, is one of the most valuable and interesting in all Wales.

LANTODHENI, or LANTHOTHENI, or LANTHONEI, 9, 37; Llantoni abbey, Monmouthshire. *See* Landewi.

Lanwadein, 82, 172; Llanaeddan, or Llawhaden, Pembrokeshire.

Legionum urbs; so Giraldus generally calls Caerleon, Monmouthshire, 9, 55, 57, &c.; though "Kaerleun" also, at 55. And so he also calls Chester, at p. 217; though in other places "Cestria." The Welsh called the former place Caerleon ar Wysc (Usk); and the latter, Caerleon ar Dwfyr Dwy (Dee).

Leonis monasterium, 146; Leominster, Herefordshire.

Leudocus, 114; St. Llawddog, or Lleuddad. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 274.

Leveni, 21; the river Llyvni, or Llynvi, Brecknockshire.

Lewelinus, or Luelinus, 28, 134, &c.; Llywelyn, a man's name.

Lhein, 123, 124; Lleyn, a cantrev of Caer yn Arvon (Carnarvonshire); comprising the large promontory between the bays of Cardigan and Carnarvon.

Locher, or Lochur, 9, 78, 172; the river Llychwr, or Loughor; in part of its course the boundary between the present Glamorganshire and Caermarthenshire.

Loegria, 178; the part of Britain between the Humber and Severn.

Loholt, 172. So Giraldus calls the castle of Llychwr, or Loughor, Glamorganshire, on the river of the same name. In *Brut* it is called "Gastell Llychwr;" and in *Annal. Camb.*, "Castellum Lychur."

Lucius, king of Britain, 202; Lleurwg ab Coel, of the Welsh *Triads*, &c. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 82, &c.

Ludlawe, or Lodelawe, 11, 146; Ludlow, Shropshire.

Luel, 18; Llywel, Brecknockshire.

Lupus Trecensis, 202; Lupus of Troyes. In Welsh he is called Bleiddian, a name of like meaning with Lupus. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 126.

M.

Madocus, or Maidocus, 15, 142; Madog, a man's name.

Mahel, son of Bernard de Newmarch by a Welsh mother; 29. Mael occurs as a Welsh name.

Mailenia, Mailenith, or Mailennyth, 16, 19, 138, 146; Maelienydd; a cantrev of Rhwng Gwy a Havren, one of the

Mailenia, &c.—*cont.*
three provinces of the principality of Powys; now represented by a part of north Radnorshire, with some part of Montgomeryshire.

Mailgo, 16, 79, 119; Maelgwm, a man's name.

Mala Platea, Shropshire, 146 (?).

Malus Passus, 146; Malpas, Cheshire.

Mania, 127; the isle of Man.

Margan, 9, 67, 172; Margam, Cistercian abbey, Glamorganshire.

Marsilia, 151; Marseilles.

Mavia, or Mau, 122, 176; the river Maw, or Mawddach, Merionethshire.

Maximus, 166, 208; king of Britain, &c.; Maxen Wledig of Welsh traditions.

Maynaurpir, 92; Maenor Pyr, or Manorbeer, castle, Pembrokeshire.

Mediolanum, 33; Milan.

Meilerius, 57; Meilyr, a man's name.

Menevia, or Menevensis Ecclesia, or Menevensis sedes, 10, 101, 105, &c.; Mynyw, or St. David's; generally called "Menevia" in *Annal. Camb.*, but "Miniu" in two instances, A° 810 and 906. Menevensis portus, 108, l. 3, is "Porthmaur Meneviæ, i.e. Portus magnus," of p. 165.

Mereducius. *See* Moreducus.

Merionyth, or Meirionith, or Terra filiorum Chanani, or Terra Canani, 122, 134, 176, 177; Meirionydd, a province of the principality of North Wales. It did not agree at all exactly with the present Merionethshire. It contained the greater part of this county, but had much besides not included in it.

Merlinus; called Vyrdin in *Brut;* Merddin, or Myrddin, of modern Welsh. There are two prophets of this name of Welsh traditions; viz.:

Merlinus Ambrosius, 56, 80, 133, 196, &c.; Merddin Emrys; so called because the bard of Emrys Wledig, or Ambrosius. He is said to have prophesied about the middle of the 5th century. And

Merlinus Celidonius, or Silvester, 62, 124, 133, 196, 199; Merddin Wyltt, or the Wild; a bard who is said to have flourished in the 6th century. *See* Williams's *Eminent Welshmen*, under Merddin.

Mervinus, 166, 167; Mervyn, son of Rhodri Mawr; prince of Powys, end of 9th century. Giraldus, however, calls him prince of North Wales. *See* Anaraut.

Meuric, 167; Meurug, or Meirig, prince of North Wales, according to Giraldus.

Milverdicus portus, 89; Milford Haven.

Monemuta, or Munemuta, 51, 55; Monmouth.

Monia, 10, 81, 126, &c.; Ynys Mon, or simply Mon, Anglesey; Mon, or Von in *Brut;* Mon, or Monia in *Annal. Camb.*

Moreducus, or Mereducius, 21, 69, &c.; a man's name; Maredudd, *Anglice*, Meredith.

Morgannoc, 145. *See* Guladmorgan.

Morganus, 48, 69, &c.; Morgan, a man's name.

Moruge, 119, 170; so called, "quasi paludum cacumina," 170, l. 22; the English name of the Plinlimmon range of mountains. *See* Elennith.

N.

Nanhever, or Lanever, 111; Nefern, or Nevern, Pembrokeshire. *See* note 4, p. 111.

Nant Pencarn, 62; probably the river Ebwy, near Newport. *See* note 1, p. 62.

Nesta, 28, 91, 130; Nest, a woman's name. Anglicised into Anneis, Giraldus says, 29, l. 2.

Neth, 9, 72, 73, 172; Nedd, or Neath, Glamorganshire; river, and monastery.

Neugol, 10, 86, 100; the river Newgall, and sands, Pembrokeshire. This river, in part of its course, is the division of the cantrevs Rhos and Pebidiog.

Nevin, or Newein, 10, 124; Nefyn, or Nevin, Carnarvonshire.

Niweburia, 24; Newbury, Berkshire.

Norwallia, 122, and repeatedly afterwards; North Wales. Often called also Venedotia.

Novus Burgus, 9, 55, 61, &c.; Newport, Monmouthshire. Called "Castell Newyd ar Wysc," i.e., New Castle on Usk, in *Brut.*

O.

Oeneus, occurs repeatedly; a man's name. Owain, or Owen.

Oscha, or Osca, 9, 20, 33, 55, &c. Wyse, or Usk; river, town, and castle.

Oswaldestreo, or Oswaldestroe, i. e., Oswaldi arbor, 11, 138, 142, l. 16; Oswestry, Shropshire. It is called "Croes Hyswallt" in *Brut;* "Croes Oswald," and "Crux Oswalt" in *Annal. Camb.*

Oximense castrum, 19. Where described as five miles from Seez, Normandy.

P.

Paternus Magnus, 10, 120; St. Padarn, founder, and first bishop of Llanbadarn Fawr, Cardiganshire. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 215.

Pebidiauc, 127; Pebidiog, a cantrev of Dyved; one of the comots of which was Mynyw, or Menevia, the district of St. David's.

Pech, 182; the Derbyshire Peak district, I suppose, which was generally called "Pech," or "Pec;" for instance, *Ben. Abb.* II., 78, and *Hoveden*, 373*b*, 34. But Giraldus's words are "In borealibus insulæ finibus versus Pech," as if Pech was towards the extreme north.

Pembrochia, or Penbrochia, or Pembroch, or Provincia Pembrochiensis, 89, 91, 93, &c.; not the present town of the name, or county, but Penvro, one of the eight cantrevs of Dyved; now nearly represented by the hundred of Castle Martin, Pembrokeshire.

Pemmelesmere, 139, Pimble Mere, or Bala lake, Merionethshire. By the Welsh called Llyn Tegid.

Pencadeir, or Pencadeyr, 81, 138, 227; Pencader, Caermarthenshire.

Pengwern, or Penguern, 81, 169; according to Giraldus, the ancient Welsh name of Shrewsbury. But the *Brut* calls Shrewsbury "Amwythic."

Penwethig, 175; Penwedig, a cantrev of Ceredigion (Cardiganshire).

PISTILDEWI, i. e., FISTULA DAVID, 109. Pistyll is Welsh for a pipe, or spout. There was a chapel called Capel y Pistyll in connection with the cathedral of St. David's. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 350.

PONS STEPHANI, 10, 119; Llanbedr Pont Stephan, or Lampeter, Cardiganshire.

PORTHMAUR, 165; Porth Mawr, i.e., the great port, St. David's; called "Menevensis Portus" at p. 108, l. 3.

POWISIA, 138, 142, 143, 166; Powys, one of the three principalities into which Wales was antiently divided.

PRESSELEU, 111, 172; the Percelly mountains, in north of Pembrokeshire.

R.

RADENOURA, or RADENORA, 13, 138; Radnor, the town.

RAIDERGOE, 18; Rhaiadr Gwy, Radnorshire.

RENNI, or REMNI, 62, 65, 172; the river Rhymni, or Rumney; in part of its course the boundary between the present Monmouthshire and Glamorganshire.

RESUS, a man's name, Rhys: occurs continually.

RIDHELIC, i. e., VADUM SALICIS, or WILIFORD, 165; Sir R. C. Hoare supposed it to be Walford, Herefordshire.

ROS, or PROVINCIA DE ROS, or ROSENSIS PROVINCIA, or ROSENSE TERRITORIUM, 10, 80, 86, 89; Rhos, one of the cantrevs of Dyved; still the name of a hundred of Pembrokeshire.

ROTHERICUS, or RODERICUS, 126, 166; Rhodri, *Anglice* Roderic. "Rothericus Magnus," or, in the British tongue, "Rotheri Maur," of p. 166, was Rhodri Mawr, sovereign of Wales A.D. 844–877.

RUDLAN, RUDHELAN, or RUTHELAN, 10. 137, 176; Rhuddlan castle, Flintshire.

S.

SABRINA, 55, 171; the river Severn. *See* Haveren.

SAGIUM, 19; Seez, Normandy.

SANCTI CLARI CASTELLUM, 82, 172; St. Clare's, or St. Clear's, Caermarthenshire.

Seighenith, 170; where called the fourth part of a cantrev, in diocese of Llandaf. Seinghenydd, one of the four comots of Cantrev Breiniol in Morganwg.

Seisillus, 50, 111, 126; Seisyll, a man's name.

Slopesburia, 81, 142, 144; Shrewsbury; but in another instance it certainly means Shropshire, "Terra quæ Slopesburia dicitur," p. 169. "Slopesburiæ provincia" occurs at p. 221.

Stakepole, Eliodorus de, 96. There are two places called Stackpool in Pembrokeshire, one of which is Stackpool Elidyr, so called perhaps from this very Eliodorus.

Stratflur, or Estratflur, 10, 119, 126, 173; the Cistercian abbey of Ystrad Fflur, or Strata Florida, Cardiganshire.

Strigulense castrum, 139, 171; Striguil Castle, Chepstow, Monmouthshire.

Sudwallia, 34, 81, &c.; South Wales, called also "Deheubarth;" and, at 85, l. 31, "Dextralis Kambria." *See* Deheubarth.

Sweineshe, or Sweynesia, 73, 172; Swansea, Glamorganshire. *See* Abertawe.

T.

Talacharn, or Talachar, 80, 172; Talacharn, or Laugharne, Caermarthenshire. *See* Abercorran.

Talgarth, 36; mountains so called, Brecknockshire. *See* note 5, p. 36.

Taph, 82, 172; Tav, or Taf, river of Caermarthenshire. For the Glamorganshire Taf, *see* Thaph.

Tawe, 172; the river Tawe, or Tawy, Glamorganshire. It enters the sea in Swansea bay, whence Abertawe, the Welsh name of Swansea.

Tegengel, 137, 190; Tegeingl, Tegeingyl in *Llywelyn's Survey*, called Englefield by the English, was a cantrev of Perveddwlad, one of the provinces of North Wales. It contained the three comots, Consyllt (Coleshill), Prestatyn, and Rhuddlan, which now rank as three hundreds of the modern Flintshire.

Teivi. *See* Teyvi.

Teleaucus, 67; St. Teilo, second bishop of Llandaf.

TEVREDAUCUS, 129; St. Tyfrydog, founder of Llandyfrydog, Anglesey. *See* Rees's *Welsh Saints*, 276.

TEWEIN, 122; Tywyn, or Towyn, Merionethshire.

TEWI, or FLUVIUS TEWIENSIS, 9, 80, 81, 172, the river Tywi, or Towy, Caermarthenshire.

TEYVI, or TEIVI, 10, 114, 173; the river Teivi, or Teivy, Cardiganshire.

THAPH, or TAPH, 62, 67, 172; Tav, or Taf river, Glamorganshire.

THEODORUS, 34, 89; Tewdwr, a man's name; Tudor, *Anglice*.

TRAITMAUR, and TRAITBOCHAN, 123, 176; Traeth Mawr, and Traeth Bychan, two tracts of sand, or rather inlets of the sea, at the N.W. corner of Merionethshire. At p. 176 Giraldus gives these names to the rivers which run into the inlets.

U.

URCHENEFELD, 169. *See* Ergengel.

V.

VECTA, 127; the Isle of Wight.

VENEDOTIA, 122, 123, &c., frequently; Gwynedd, or North Wales.

W.

WAIA, or FLUMEN WAIENSE, 19, 20, 21, 33, and elsewhere; called "Vaga," and "Flumen Vagense," in some MSS. The river Gwy, or Wye.

WARTHRENNIAUN, 17, &c.; Gwrthrynion, a comot of cantrev Arwystli in Meirionydd, North Wales, in *Llywelyn's Survey*. Now part of Radnorshire, and represented by the present hundred of Rhayader.

WENDRAETH, or WENDRAITH, or WENDRAYTH, 9, 78, 172; the rivers Gwendraeth Fawr, and Gwendraeth Bach, Caermarthenshire.

WENLOCH, 62; Gwenllwg; formerly a cantrev of Morganwg (Glamorganshire); now part of Monmouthshire, co-extensive with the present deanery of Newport.

WILIFORD. *See* Ridhelic.
WINCHELECUMBE, 25 ; Winchcombe, Gloucestershire.
WINTA ; Gwent. *See* Guinta.
WLATMORGAN. *See* Guladmorgan.

Y.

YOIGER, 165 ; where described as a port on the north coast of Anglesey ; the mouth, I suppose, of the river Gwygir.
YTHEWAL, 167 ; Idwal, a prince of North Wales.
YVOR MODICUS, 63 ; Ivor Bach. *See* n. 3, p. 63.

INDEX.

INDEX.

[After proper names in this Index, whenever at all necessary, Giraldus's Latin rendering is added within brackets.]

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

H.

I.

J.

K.

N.

P.

Q.

R.

S.

U.

V.

W.

Y.

END OF VOL. VI.